The Colloquial Series

Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans
Albanian
Amharic
*Arabic (Levantine)
Arabic of Egypt
*Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia
*Basque
Breton
*Bulgarian
Cambodian
Cantonese
Catalan
Chinese
Croatian
Czech
Danish
Dutch
English
Estonian
Finnish
French
German
Greek
*Gujarati
Hebrew
Hindi
Hungarian
Icelandic
Indonesian
Italian
Japanese
Korean
Latvian
Lithuanian
Malay
Mongolian
Norwegian
*Panjabi
Persian
Polish
Portuguese
Portuguese of Brazil
Romanian
Russian
Scottish Gaelic
Serbian
Slovak
Slovene
*Somali
Spanish
Spanish of Latin America
Swahili
Swedish
Tamil
Thai
Turkish
Ukrainian
*Urdu
Vietnamese
Welsh

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs

Multimedia Language Courses

Chinese
French
Portuguese
Spanish

Accompanying cassette(s) and CDs are available for all the above titles (cassettes only for the titles marked with *). They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc, 270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016, USA.

COLLOQUIAL 2s Series

The Next Step in Language Learning

Dutch
French
Italian
Russian
Spanish
Spanish of Latin America

Colloquial Thai

The Complete Course for Beginners

John Moore and Saowalak Rodchue

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

First edition published in 1999
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016

Second edition published 2005

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

Typeset in Times by
Florence Production Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon

Printed and bound in Great Britain by
TJ International Ltd, Padstow, Cornwall

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Moore, John, 1941–
Colloquial Thai: the complete course for beginners/
John Moore and Saowalak Rodchue – 2nd edn.
p. cm – (Colloquial series)
English and Thai Roman alphabet.
Originally published: London, New York: Routledge, 1995
1. Thai language – Spoken Thai. 2. Thai language – textbooks for foreign speakers – English. I. Rodchue, Saowalak. II Title. III. Series
PL4163.M56 2005
495.9'183421–dc22 2004019526

ISBN 0–415–32959–0 (pbk)
ISBN 0–415–32978–7 (audio cassettes)
ISBN 0–415–32979–5 (audio CDs)
ISBN 0–415–32977–9 (pack)

Contents

Introduction

Thai language and people

Thai is without doubt one of the most rewarding languages to learn. Your efforts to speak Thai, however modest, will always be appreciated by Thai people, who have a justifiable reputation for friendliness. Although English is widely spoken in major cities and the tourist industry, Thais love small talk and it is easy to practise your Thai in shops, markets, buses and, especially, in the countryside. Spoken Thai is not grammatically complex and it is not difficult to understand many common signs and notices. With every bit of the language you learn you gain new glimpses into the distinctive way of life and culture of a fascinating people.

Thai is spoken by the vast majority of the 61 million population of Thailand and is the official national language, the language used in schools, businesses, the media and government affairs. Distinct dialects of Thai are in use in the north, northeast and south. In rural communities people may not use standard Thai themselves but will still understand it. Thailand has a population of around half a million hill tribe people who have their own languages: many have only limited Thai.

Origins of the language

Thai belongs to the Sino-Tibetan group of languages and shares some features with Chinese. The original tonal, monosyllabic language was augmented with Mon and Khmer words. Later, the Thais absorbed polysyllabic Sanskrit and Pali words. Foreign traders and Chinese immigrants made additions in later centuries. More recently, many English words have entered the language (see below, p. 10). The alphabet was created by King Ramkhamhaeng of Sukhothai in the late thirteenth century, basing it on Mon and

Khmer scripts which, in turn, were derived from a South Indian script. This alphabet, modified over the years, forms the basis of that used in modern Thai.

The spoken language has a similar structure to that of Laos and much vocabulary in common.

Characteristics of the language

In comparison with many languages, informal spoken Thai is uncomplicated. There are no tenses, verb or noun inflexions, agreements between nouns and verbs or nouns and adjectives, cases, genders or articles. Many words which can be understood from the context (such as pronouns, subjects, prepositions) can be omitted without offending any rules of grammar. Thai is a tonal language, in that each syllable is assigned one of five tones. Some monosyllabic words with different meanings are distinguished only by their tone. For example, the sequence of consonants and vowels in **mai** and **khao** each have five different meanings according to the tone given. The words for 'tiger' (**sěua**) and 'shirt' (**sêua**) are differentiated when spoken only by the tone, as are 'doctor' (**mǎw**) and 'cooking pot' (**mâw**).

The Thai script is alphabetic, with each symbol a letter with its own sound. Thai uses forty-four consonant letters for twenty-one consonant sounds (though some of these are very uncommon or even obsolete). Some sounds have more than one corresponding letter (the sound 'th', for example, has six). There are also thirty-two vowel symbols.

Transliteration

There is no universally accepted system for writing Thai in the Roman or phonetic alphabet and several different schemes are used in books for learners of Thai. The transliteration used in this book does not use phonetic symbols and is easy to grasp but it will not encompass all the subtleties of Thai pronunciation. As well as learning the letters used to represent Thai sounds you should study the description of each sound. Some sounds are more or less identical in English, some are close to English sounds, and some are quite different. The notes will give you a clearer idea of the

sound than the transliteration alone. To pronounce Thai accurately, however, there is no substitute for listening to the way Thai speakers say things.

Language and culture

No one learning Thai can avoid coming into contact with some of the terms that express the concepts and values of Thai culture. Evidence abounds of popular and distinctively Thai values. Thais value the ability to stay cool under pressure – **jai yen** (a cool heart) – and not lose one's temper. They often criticise **fàràng** (Caucasians) for their **jai ráwn** (hot heart). Thais typically accept adversity, stoically shrugging it off with an expression like **mâi pen rai** (it doesn't matter). Thais like things to appear decorous and orderly (**rîaprói**). Improper behaviour in public (such as displays of affection) shows a lack of respect and is **mâi sùphâap** (not polite). Respect (**khwaam náptheǔh**) is one of the most fundamental values, whether towards the monarchy, religion, government officials, one's parent and elders, one's boss or one's teacher. The family is especially important and many younger Thais make sacrifices to support their parents. Thais are typically more concerned with proper status than equality. Respect goes hand in hand with deference, consideration for the feelings of others (**krayngjai**). Thais will often hesitate to do or say something if they think it will annoy or bother someone. This extends to expressing disagreement, particularly with someone in a superior position. Thai people appreciate anything that is fun (**sanùk**) and typically hold that work should also be fun (the same word – **ngaan** – is used for 'work' and 'a party'). Ceremonies such as weddings (**ngaan tàeng ngaan**) and funerals (**ngaan sòp**) are also important and poor people will spend beyond their means to provide one that is appropriate. There is still a widespread belief in the importance of not losing face (**sǐa nâa**) or causing others to lose face.

Religion and special occasions

Thai people's values show the strong influence of Buddhism with its emphasis on worldly impermanence and the middle path. Thais may not visit temples regularly but many will make early morning

offerings of food to monks (**sài bàat**) and in the process hope to gain merit (**tham bun**). Many Thai men ordain as a monk (**phrá**) in a temple (**wát**), a practice known as **bùat**. Belief in ghosts and spirits (**phěe**) is also strong.

Many of the festivities in the Thai calendar are religious, others have to do with the monarchy or national occasions. Among the most important are the Thai New Year, (**sǒngkraan**) in April, and the candle floating festival (**loi kràthong**) in November.

Grammar and vocabulary: an overview

As Thai is not inflected, notions of case, tense and number are expressed by separate words. Enumerating or referring to things is done with the use of classifiers (e.g. 'I have children two people'). Many Thai words are formed by juxtaposing constituent words: 'curiosity', for example is 'want to know want to see'. On the other hand, in informal speech most sentence elements can be omitted if clear from the context. The subject of a sentence can be omitted, as can conjunctions and prepositions; pronouns are not obligatory and are often replaced by titles ('doctor') or relationship words ('elder person'). Stand-alone sentences can consist of just one word, for example **ráwn** ('It's hot'). A wide range of meanings can be expressed by sentence final particles, including polite particles (separate for men and women), used especially in asking and answering questions, thanking and apologising. Particles are used where stress might be in English to show attitude toward a situation or listener. Other particles are question markers which convey a range of meanings, some of which are expressed in question tags in English, as, for example:

ráwn ná/ráwn rěuh	It's hot isn't it?
ráwn mái	Is it hot?

Many Thai words are formed by derivation, either by the use of prefixes and suffixes or by compounds. The prefix **khwaam-**, for example, makes an abstract noun out of a verb or adjective. If you know the words for 'mother' and 'father' you don't need to learn a new word for 'parent' – Thai uses the compound 'father-mother'.

Communicating with Thais

Typically, Thais speak quietly and calmly and stay smiling even when they are seething inside. A nervous laugh or giggle, though, is often a sign of embarrassment, not of amusement. Thais have a ready sense of humour and enjoy teasing each other in conversation. Bargaining, for example, is always carried out with good humour.

Thais are less inhibited than some cultures about asking personal questions, such as your age, your salary or why you don't have any children.

They normally greet each other with a gesture, involving putting the palms of both hands together, known as a **wâi**. This is also used as an expression of thanks or apology, or as a sign of respect, and is initiated by the younger or lesser status person. A foreigner is usually excused for not making a **wâi**, but it would be appreciated if you are meeting a friend you haven't seen for a while, or someone formally for the first time. You do not need to respond with a **wâi** to staff in shops or restaurants, though.



Informally, Thais who know each other well may give each other a light touch on the arm by way of greeting, but the sort of social kissing often used in the West is definitely out! Although Thais appreciate your efforts to speak their language, some are not used to hearing foreigners speak it and may have more difficulty understanding you than you expect.

Pronunciation

Consonants

Consonants pronounced the same as in English are **b**, **m**, **d**, **n**, **s**, **ng**, **f**, **h**, **l**, **w**, **y**. Thai distinguishes some aspirated from unaspirated consonants – **p** as in 'spin' and **ph** as in 'pin' are different consonants; **th** as in 'tank' and **t** as in 'star' are different; so are **kh** as in 'cold' and **k** as in 'skin'. The consonant **j** is between the English **j** and **ch** and close to the **j** in 'Jack'; the consonant **ch** is between the English sounds **ch** and **sh** and close to the **ch** in 'Charlie'. The consonant **ng**, which in English can only come at the end of a syllable, in Thai can come at the beginning, as in **ngâi:** (easy – which it is when you practise it). There are few consonant clusters, the most common being **tr**, **kr**, **pr**, **khr**, **phr**, **khl**, **kl**, **phl**, **pl** and **khw**. They occur only at the beginning of the syllable. In informal speech the second consonant is often omitted so that **plaa** (fish) is pronounced **paa**.

Only six consonant sounds can be syllable final (**ng**, **n**, **m**, **k**, **t** and **p**). The final **p**, **t** and **k** in a syllable are not fully pronounced: the mouth just moves into the position to make the sound without releasing any air. This can make the final sounds difficult to tell apart so you have to listen carefully to tell words like **rák** (to love) and **ráp** (to receive) apart.

Vowels

Thai vowels are commonly divided into long vowels (e.g. **oo** as in 'boot') and short vowels (e.g. **u** as in 'book'). Vowel length can sometimes determine the tone of a syllable. Where a similar distinction exists in English, the transliteration uses separate letters (as in the example above). In the case of the vowels **ao** and **ai** the long form is shown in the transliteration with a colon (:), for example **khâo:** and **khâo**, **pâi:** and **pai**. Vowel sounds with the same pronunciation as in English include the sounds in the English words 'fern', 'lose', 'loose', 'fee' and 'hen'. The sounds that are most different in Thai from English are **euh** and its short form, **eu**. This is a little like the sound in 'ugh!' (when something disgusts you). Some Thai diphthongs use vowels in unfamiliar combinations: for example **aeo** (pronounced 'air-o' without the 'r'), **ayo** (as in 'say oh') and **oei** (pronounced 'er-ee' without the 'r'). As in any language, the pronunciation of a vowel can vary according to the sounds surrounding it.

The tones

In English we use the same five tones as are found in Thai but we use them to add meaning to words in a sentence – for example, to express our attitude or make it a question. Try saying this:

A: John doesn't like the coffee here.
B: Well I do, don't you?

You probably used these tones – mid, falling, low, high, rising:

Well	I	do,	don't	you?
mid	falling	low	high	rising

The same tones are used in Thai words:

khun	**mâi**	**phèt**	**khráp**	**phŏm**
mid	falling	low	high	rising

The tones are shown in the transliteration with a symbol over the vowel in a syllable (when the vowel sound is represented by more than one letter, the tone mark is on the first vowel letter).

Thai uses the tones as an integral part of the pronunciation of each word, each syllable having its own tone. Two words with the same order of consonants and vowels but different tones will have different meanings. When you learn a new word you need to learn its tone as part of the pronunciation. This is particularly important in words of one syllable. If you give the wrong tones to a three- or four-syllable word you will probably be understood. But with a one-syllable word you can easily be misunderstood. This is especially true where the context does not help. 'Forty' (**sèe sìp**), for example may be heard by Thais as 'twenty' (**yêe sìp**) if you give the wrong tone; 'one' (**nèung**) could be understood as 'half' (**khrêung**). You must also be careful not to use tone in the way you use intonation in English – to emphasise a word, for example, or make a sentence into a question.

The writing system

Thai is written from left to right without any spaces between words. So the first thing you need to do when reading Thai is to divide a string of text up into its constituent words. There is usually a space after a sentence but very little punctuation. Some vowel symbols are written after the consonant they follow phonetically; some are written before it; some above, some below, and some are a combination of vowel symbols in different positions.

This book uses a font which is similar to those used in most newspapers, forms, signs and notices. Unfortunately many advertisements and some signs and notices use a different font which takes time to get used to. This is, however, beyond the scope of this book, as is showing examples of handwritten Thai.

Tone rules

There are precise, if complicated, rules for the pronunciation of each syllable, including the tone, with few exceptions.

The tone of a syllable is determined by a combination of factors:

1 the final syllable sound;
2 the class of consonant at the beginning of the syllable;
3 the length of the vowel in the middle;
4 any tone marks.

(1) Syllables can end in a 'hard' sound (**p**, **t**, **k** and short vowels) or a 'soft' sound (**m**, **n**, **ng**, **y** or a long vowel).
(2) Consonants are divided into three classes: high, mid and low (these terms have nothing to do with tone!). The class of consonants is given in the table on pages 17 to 19.
(3) Vowel length (long or short) is shown in the table on page 19.
(4) Some syllables have tone markers shown above the initial consonant.

There are four tone markers:

◌่	as in	อร่อย	(first)
◌้	as in	น้ำ	(second)
◌๊	as in	รถตุ๊กตุ๊ก	(third)
◌๋	as in	ตั๋ว	(fourth)

The third and fourth tone markers are not often used but they are found in several common words.

How do you tell the tone of a syllable from the way it is written?

(1) *The syllable has a tone marker*

If the syllable has the third tone marker it has a high tone: รถตุ๊กตุ๊ก **rót túk túk** ('three-wheel taxi'), โต๊ะ **tó** ('table').

If the syllable has the fourth tone marker it has a rising tone: ตั๋ว **tŭa** ('ticket') กระเป๋า **krapăo** ('bag').

Unfortunately there are not many common words which use the third and fourth tone markers.

If the syllable has the first or second tone markers you need to look at the class of the initial consonant:

Class of initial consonant	*First tone marker*			*Second tone marker*		
Low	*Falling tone*			*High tone*		
	mâi	ไม่	'not'	**ráan**	ร้าน	'shop'
Mid or high	*Low tone*			*Falling tone*		
	tàang	ต่าง	'different'	**tâwng**	ต้อง	'must'
	khài	ไข่	'egg'	**khâo:**	ข้าว	'rice'

(2) *The syllable has no tone marker*

First look at the syllable ending.

(a) 'Soft' syllable endings – look at the initial consonant:

Class of initial consonant	*Tone*		
Low, mid	*Mid tone*		
	maa	มา	'to come'
	taa	ตา	'eye'
High	*Rising tone*		
	khăi:	ขาย	'to sell'

(b) 'Hard' syllable endings:

If the initial consonant in the syllable is mid or high the tone is low; with initial low class consonants you also need to look at the vowel length:

Class of initial consonant	*Vowel length*	*Tone*	*Examples*		
Mid or high	Long or short	*Low*	**tàt** **sòop**	ตัด สูบ	'to cut' 'to smoke'
Low	Long	*Falling*	**mâak**	มาก	'very'
Low	Short	*High*	**rák**	รัก	'love'

This description of the tone rules will help you understand how the language works. You can read and understand Thai, however, without knowing the tone rules and it is easier to learn the tone of a word by referring to the transliteration.

Stress

Unlike English, Thai does not have complex stress patterns. However, one difference is that in two-syllable words the stress is placed on the second syllable as in **aahăan thalay** ('seafood'). The stress is not as marked as in English, though, and unstressed syllables are not as short as in English.

English words in Thai

Many English words have been introduced into Thai: **ae** ('air-conditioning'), **fernijêr** ('furniture') and **khawmpiutêr** ('computer') are examples. Sometimes words are shortened in colloquial speech (e.g. **khawm** for **khawmpiutêr**); sometimes they have a different connotation. For example, the English word 'serious' has entered the Thai language, but with a derogatory meaning, being applied to someone who gets stressed by things. Words borrowed are given a Thai pronunciation which can easily catch you out. The vowel sound 'v', for example, is replaced by 'w' as it does not exist in Thai. So 'TV' becomes **thee wee**. If there is a consonant cluster at the beginning or in the middle of the English word, for example 'Sweden' or 'disco', Thais will put the vowel sound 'a' between the consonants so that they become **sàweedayn** and **ditsàkôh**. Consonants at the ends of words are often changed to fit Thai rules of pronunciation so words like 'hotel' and 'ball' will be pronounced in Thai as **hohtèn** and **bawn**; 'tennis' is pronounced **thayn-nít**. In final consonant clusters either one consonant is chosen (e.g. **apháatmén**) or a different one given (e.g. 'golf' becomes **káwp**).

Using this course

By the end of the course you will be able to:

- handle the full range of Thai basic grammar and an active vocabulary of around 1,100 words;
- handle common social courtesies such as greetings, thanks and apologies;
- engage in casual social conversation, share personal information and make arrangements with casual acquaintances;
- discuss and order food, buy things and ask your way;
- make and answer enquiries over the phone;
- ask for advice or information from strangers;
- read simple notices, signs and advertisements such as those found in shops, public places, streets and newspapers;
- write a short note with a simple request, message or piece of information.

Each unit consists of:

1 dialogues introducing new grammar and key vocabulary in useful situations;
2 an explanation of language points;
3 exercises to help you use new language in communicating and revise vocabulary introduced earlier;
4 exercises to extend your vocabulary;
5 a reading exercise;
6 a writing exercise.

Dialogues

Practise dialogues until you can repeat them fluently. Spend as much time on getting the pronunciation (including the tone) right

as in practising the grammar. Learning new vocabulary takes time. With short words the best way is to try using them in different patterns and different situations, making sure that you keep the correct tone and pronunciation. With longer words, say them over and over again until your tongue remembers them. In Units 1 to 5 the English translation is given after each dialogue. From then on, only new words and expressions are given and there is a comprehension question to guide you to a key point in the dialogue. Many words have several meanings – if these are related they are not always given when the word is used again. Use the Thai–English Glossary at the end of the book to see the range of meanings. Many words are formed from component words and when these are useful their meaning is also given after the dialogues along with the compound word.

Grammar exercises

Use the Key at the end of the book to check your answers. Some exercises can be answered in different ways; your answers should only use words you have learned so far. When a question or exercise has a number of acceptable answers study the suggestions that are given in the Key. From time to time do exercises from earlier units again to help fix your command of the pattern. You can also vary exercises – for example, look at the Key and then reconstruct the original exercise. You can make similar exercises for yourself. For example, if you have learned 'I went to the bookshop to buy a dictionary', practise the same pattern about different shops and different things to buy.

Vocabulary-building exercises

Each unit contains exercises related to common topics of conversation to help you extend your vocabulary. You can also use these exercises to revise words introduced previously. For example, before doing the exercise introducing words to do with education, make a list of the words you already know (e.g. 'school', 'learn'). It is important to revise vocabulary often so that words remain at the tip of your tongue and not buried in the recesses of your memory. Keep a vocabulary notebook and write words together with similar or opposite meanings or which relate to a common theme (e.g. 'leisure' or 'describing people').

Reading exercises

Exercises introduce the Thai script progressively with words you already know. Practice in reading sentences leads quickly to reading extracts from real notices, signs and advertisements. In later units some new words are introduced in reading passages and these are given in translation after the passage (except for some words borrowed from English). Do exercises from earlier units again to improve your reading fluency. For extra reading practice, study the sample dialogues given in Thai script; write the transliteration and translation of words used in reading exercises.

Study the photographs as these show real posters, which use many words you will be able to read.

Writing exercises

Writing exercises mainly use words you can already read. Other words can be found in the glossary. For extra writing practice, copy out letters, words and phrases from the reading exercises and dialogues in Thai script. See the section at the end of the book for guidance on writing the Thai letters.

Recorded material

Dialogues and exercises that are recorded are accompanied in the book with the symbol . Recorded material includes:

- the longer dialogues from each unit;
- pronunciation exercises focusing on common difficulties, especially words which are differentiated mainly by the tone;
- role play; and
- comprehension exercises.

When you repeat sentences spoken by someone of the opposite sex, try to change the polite particle to **khráp**, **khá** or **khâ** as appropriate.

Other learning resources

David Smyth (2002), *Thai – An Essential Grammar*, Routledge.
James Higbie and Snea Thinsan (2002), *Thai Reference Grammar*, Orchid Press.
Mary Haas (1964), *Thai–English Student's Dictionary*, Stanford University Press. (Out of date but still the most reliable.)
Richard G. Robertson (1989), *Practical English–Thai Dictionary*, Charles E. Tuttle. (Also useful.)

Thai fonts can be downloaded from several internet sites. You can also find some Thai online dictionaries and language learning guides as well as websites of Thai newspapers and magazines. Use a search engine to guide you to these.

Transliteration used in this book

Letters	*Description/similar sound in English*	*Examples*	
		Thai	*Transliteration*
Vowels			
a	'mad' (sometimes like 'cup')	มัน จะ ตลาด	man ja talàat
aa	'father'	มา	maa
e	'hen'	เป็น เล่น	pen lên
ay	'say' (sometimes closer to 'said')	เพลง	phlayng
er	'fern' (don't pronounce the 'r'):		
	short	เยอะ เงิน	yér ngern
	long	เดิน เจอ	dern jer
ae	'air' (without the 'r'):		
	short	แข็ง	khăeang
	long	แปด	pàet
i	'sit'	กิน	kin
ee	'fee'	ดี	dee
aw	'saw' but a little more open:		
	short	เกาะ	kàw
	long	ชอบ	châwp
o	'Don'	รถ โต๊ะ	rót tó
oh	between 'choke' and 'chalk'	โชค	chôhk
u	'book', but often close to 'loose'	คุณ	khun
oo	'lose'	หมู	mŏo
eu	no English equivalent but rather like a short ugh!	ตึก	tèuk
euh	long form of sound above, a little like the American 'good'	ลืม	leuhm
am	'am' (the 'm' is pronounced)	ทำ	tham
aam	'arm' but more open (the 'm' is pronounced)	น้ำ	náam

Letters	*Description/similar sound in English*	*Examples* *Thai*	*Transliteration*
Vowel combinations			
ao	'cow':		
	words with เ_า short	เอา	ao
	words with าว long	ลาว	lao:
euey	euh-ey (no English equivalent)	เหนื่อย	nèuey
eua	euh-er (no English equivalent)	เดือน	deuan
iu	'hue'	หิว	hĭu
oi	as in 'boy'	ดอย	doi
ohi	between 'boy' and 'Chloe'	ขโมย	khàmohi
ia	'ear' (without the 'r')	เรียน	rian
aeo	no English equivalent: a little like 'aero' (without the 'r')	แมว	maeo
io	'Rio'	เดียว	dio
ua	'doer' (without the 'r')	ตั๋ว ขวด	tŭa khùat
uey	vowel sounds as in 'two way' with the first vowel more prominent	รวย	ruey
ui	'chewy'	คุย	khui
ayo	'say oh' (but shorter)	เร็ว	rayo
oei	combines the two vowel sounds in 'early' (without the 'r')	เคย	khoei
ai	as in 'Thai' short	ไปให้ นิสัย	pai hâi nísăi
	words with _าย long	ขาย	khăi:
Consonants			
b	book	บิน	bin
j	between chest and jest (harder than 'j' in English)	จาก	jàak
d	die	ดี	dee
f	fish	ไฟฟ้า ฝรั่ง	fai fáa fàràng
h	hand	หา	hăa
k	ski (no puff of air)	ไก่	kài
kh	Korea (with puff of air)	ข้าว คน ฆ่า	khâo: khon khâa
l	luck	เล่น กีฬา	lên keelaa
m	moon	มี	mee
n	nine	นา	naa

Letters	*Description/similar sound in English*	*Examples* *Thai*	*Transliteration*
ng	sing. (as in English but also syllable initial)	งู	ngoo
p	spy (no puff of air)	ไป	pai
ph	pie (with puff of air)	ผม แพง ภาษา	phŏm phaeng phaasăa
r	ring (often pronounced 'l')	ร้อน	ráwn
s	say	สิบ ซื้อ ภาษา	sìp séuh phaasăa
		ศพ	sòp
ch	between sheet and cheat	ชอบ	châwp
t	sty (no puff of air)	ตลาด	talàat
th	tie (with puff of air)	ไทย ธนาคาร ถนน	thai thanaakhaan thanŏn
w	wait	วัด	wát
y	yes	เย็น	yen

Thai letters arranged alphabetically

In a Thai dictionary words are ordered first by the initial consonant, then by the vowel in the first syllable.

Letter	*Class*	*Initial*	*Final*	*Examples* *Thai*	*Transliteration*	*Translation*
Consonants						
ก	mid	k	k	ไก่	kài	chicken
ข	high	kh	k	ขวด	khùat	bottle
ค	low	kh	k	คน	khon	person
ฆ	low (*uncommon*)	kh	k	ฆ่า	khâa	to kill
ง	low	ng	ng	งู	ngoo	snake
จ	mid	j	t	จาน	jaan	plate
ฉ	high	ch	t	ฉีด	chèet	inject
ช	low	ch	t	ชม	chom	to admire
ซ	low	s	t	ซื้อ	séuh	to buy

Letter	Class	Initial	Final	Examples: Thai	Transliteration	Translation
ฌ	low	ch	t			
	(rare; not used in this book)					
ญ	low	y	n	ญี่ปุ่น	yêepùn	Japan
ฎ	mid	d	t	กฎหมาย	kòtmăi:	law
	(uncommon)					
ฏ	mid	d	t			
	(rare; not used in this book)					
ฐ	high	th	t	รัฐบาล	rát-thabaan	government
	(uncommon)					
ฑ	low	th	t	พิพิธภัณฑ์	phiphít-tháphan	museum
	(uncommon)					
ฒ	low	t	t			
	(rare; not used in this book)					
ณ	low	n	n	คุณ	khun	you
ด	mid	d	t	ดี	dee	good
ต	mid	t	t	ตลาด	talàat	market
ถ	high	th	t	ถนน	thanŏn	street
ท	low	th	t	ไทย	thai	Thai
ธ	low	th	t	ธนาคาร	thanaakhaan	bank
น	low	n	n	น้ำ	náam	water
บ	mid	b	p	บาท	bàat	baht *(unit of currency)*
ป	mid	p	p	ไป	pai	to go
ผ	high	ph	p	ผม	phŏm	hair
ฝ	high	f	p	ฝน	fŏn	rain
พ	low	ph	p	พูด	phôot	to speak
ฟ	low	f	p	ฟัง	fang	to listen
ภ	low	ph	p	ภูเขา	phookhăo	mountain
ม	low	m	m	มาก	mâak	very
ย	low	y	i	เย็น	yen	cool
ร	low	r	n	ร้อน	ráwn	hot
	(often pronounced 'l')					
ฤ		ri or reu		อังกฤษ	angkrìt	England
ล	low	l	n	เล่น	lên	to play
ว	low	w	w	วัด	wát	temple
	(syllable final used in vowel combinations)					
ศ	high	s	t	ศึกษา	sèuksăa	to study

Letter	Class	Initial	Final	Examples: Thai	Transliteration	Translation
ษ	high	s	t	ภาษา	phaasăa	language
ส	high	s	t	สนุก	sanùk	fun
ห	high	h	–	หา	hăa	to visit
ฬ	low	l	n	กีฬา	keelaa	sport
	(only used in two common words)					
อ	mid	zero		อาหาร	aahăan	food
	(syllable initial)					
ฮ	low	h	–	ฮ่องกง	hâwng kong	Hong Kong
	(used mainly in imported words)					

Letter		Examples: Thai	Translit.	Translation	Length
Vowels					
อ	aw	บอก	bàwk	to tell	long/short
_ะ	a	จะ	ja	will	short
_ั	a	มัน	man	it	short
_ัว	ua	ตัว	tua	classifier	long
_า	aa	หา	hăa	to visit	long
_ำ	am /aam	น้ำ	náam	water	short/long
_ิ	i	บิน	bin	to fly	short
_ี	ee	ดี	dee	good	long
_ึ	eu	ตึก	tèuk	building	short
_ื	euh	ลืม	leuhm	forget	long
_ุ	u	คุณ	khun	you	short
_ู	oo	หมู	mŏo	pork	long
เ_	ay	เพลง	phlayng	song	long
เ_็	e	เด็ก	dèk	child	short
เ_ย	oei	เคย	khoei	ever	long
เ_อ	er	เจอ	jer	to meet	long
เ_อะ	er	เยอะ	yér	a lot	short
เ_า	ao	เอา	ao	to want	short
เ_าะ	aw	เกาะ	kàw	island	short
เ_ิ	er	เดิน	dern	to walk	short/long
เ_ีย/เ_ียว	ia/io	เรียน เดียว	rian dio	to study, just one	long

Letter		Examples			Length
		Thai	Translit.	Translation	
เ–ื		เดือน, เหนื่อย	deuan nèuey	month, tired	long
แ	ae	แปด	pàet	eight	long
แ–็	ae	แข็งแรง	khăeng raeng	strong	short
แ–ะ	ae	และ	láe	and	short
โ	oh	โชค	chôhk	luck	long
โ–ะ	o	โต๊ะ	tó	table	short
ใ	ai	ให้	hâi	to give	short
ไ	ai	ไป	pai	to go	short

Tone marks and vowel shortening sign

Letter	Examples			Comment
	Thai	Translit.	Translation	
–็	เจ็ด	jèt	seven	shortens some vowels
–่	อร่อย	aròi	delicious	first tone marker
–้	น้ำ	náam	water	second tone marker
–๊	ตุ๊กตุ๊ก	túk túk	three-wheel taxi	third tone marker
–๋	ตั๋ว	tŭa	ticket	fourth tone marker

1 Making contact

In this unit you will take part in some of the first conversations that Thais might initiate.

You will learn how to:

- exchange common greetings
- offer, accept and refuse something to eat or drink
- comment on the weather and the temperature
- use basic sentence patterns
- use the personal pronouns
- ask and answer some yes/no questions
- talk about common dishes and drinks

Dialogue 1

Ken is finishing his meal and listening to the singers in an outdoor restaurant when the woman owner comes over to talk to him.

OWNER: sanùk mái khá?
KEN: sanùk khráp.
OWNER: aahăan aròi mái khá?
KEN: aròi mâak khráp.
OWNER: phèt mái khá?
KEN: mâi phèt khráp.
OWNER: ao phŏnlamái mái khá?
KEN: ao khráp. khàwpkhun mâak khráp.
OWNER: mâi pen rai khâ. khun châwp aahăan thai mái khá?
KEN: châwp mâak khráp.

OWNER: *Are you enjoying yourself?*
KEN: *Yes.*

OWNER:	*Is the food nice?*
KEN:	*(It's) delicious.*
OWNER:	*Is (it) spicy?*
KEN:	*(It's) not spicy.*
OWNER:	*Would you like some fruit?*
KEN:	*Yes, I would. Thank you very much.*
OWNER:	*That's all right. Do you like Thai food?*
KEN:	*I like it very much.*

Vocabulary

sanùk	enjoyable, (to be) fun		
mái	question marker		
khá, khâ	(polite particle used by women)		
khráp	(polite particle used by men)		
aahǎan	food	**aròi**	delicious
mâak	very, very much	**phèt**	spicy
mâi	negative marker	**ao**	to get, to want
phǒnlamái	fruit	**khàwpkhun**	thank you
mâi pen rai	that's all right, it doesn't matter	**khun**	you
châwp	to like	**thai**	Thai



Language points

Yes/no questions with mái

Put **mái** at the end of a statement:

Statement	*Question*
sanùk	**sanùk mái**? Is it fun?
châwp aahǎan thai	**châwp aahǎan thai mái**? Do you like Thai food?

Polite particles

Female speakers:	**khâ** (for statements), **khá** (for questions)
Male speakers:	**khráp**

Use the polite particles when you ask or answer a question, thank someone, apologise, or make a request (there is no single equivalent for 'please' in spoken Thai). At first, use them in almost every sentence: later you will get a better idea of when to drop them. (The particles are not normally given in the example sentences in this book.)

Short answers

Give a short 'yes/no' answer by repeating the adjective or verb:

sanùk mái? Is it fun?	**sanùk** Yes (it's fun)	**mâi sanùk** No (it's not fun)
châwp mái? Do you like it?	**châwp** Yes (I do)	**mâi châwp** No (I don't)

There are no single words in Thai which correspond to either 'yes' or 'no'.

Affirmative sentences

aahăan aròi	(The) food (is) delicious

The subject of a sentence is often omitted if it can be understood from the context:

sanùk	(It's) fun

The object of a sentence can also be omitted if it can be understood from the context:

châwp mâak	(I) like (it) very much

Negative sentences

Make affirmative sentences negative by adding **mâi** immediately before the adjective or verb:

Affirmative	*Negative*	
aahăan aròi	**aahăan mâi aròi**	(The) food (is) not nice
sanùk	**mâi sanùk**	(It's) not fun
châwp	**mâi châwp**	(I) don't like (it)

mâak

Use **mâak** after the adjective or verb:

sanùk mâak	(It's) very enjoyable
châwp mâak	I like it very much

Adjectives

Adjectives follow the noun they describe:

aahăan thai	Thai food

Thai does not use a verb 'to be' to join a noun subject and its adjective complement:

aahăan aròi	The food is delicious

Personal pronouns

khun châwp aahăan thai mái khá?
Do you like Thai food?

Although Thai has over forty pronouns, used according to the age, status and relationship of the speakers, few are commonly used. Learners can use these pronouns in any situation:

I	**phŏm**	(male speaker)
	chán	(female speaker)
you (sing./pl.)	**khun**	
he, she, they	**kháo**	
we	**ráo**	
it, they (for things)	**man**	

Pronouns can be omitted when the meaning is clear but are often added for politeness or emphasis.

Use the same words as object pronouns:

chán mâi châwp kháo	I don't like him

Culture points

sanùk

The word **sanùk** is one of the words or expressions often used to sum up aspects of Thai culture. It covers 'fun', 'enjoyable' or 'entertaining'.

mâi pen rai

If you are only going to learn one Thai phrase, this should be it! Use it as a response when someone thanks you for something or apologises. It is used more generally to show that you are not upset by something, meaning 'it doesn't matter' or 'there's no need to worry about it'.

Food

Most dishes in Thailand contain fiery chillies. Those that do not, such as noodles or fried rice, will often be supplemented with raw

chillies or chilli-based sauces. Foreigners are regularly asked if they can eat spicy food and you may well want to ask for the food *not* to be spicy.

Exercise 1

Give short answers to these questions using the cues. Include **khâ** or **khráp**:

Example: 1 **sanùk mái khráp?** (yes)
sanùk khráp (or **khâ**)

2 aahăan aròi mái khráp? (yes)
3 phŏnlamái aròi mái khá? (no)
4 aahăan phèt mái khá? (yes)
5 sanùk mái khá? (no)
6 khun châwp aahăan phèt mái khá? (no)
7 khun châwp phŏnlamái mái khá? (yes)
8 ao phŏnlamái mái khá? (no)

Exercise 2

Here are some short answers. Find appropriate questions.

Example: 1 **aròi khráp**
aròi mái khráp?

2 sanùk khâ
3 mâi phèt khâ
4 mâi sanùk khráp
5 mâi aròi khâ
6 ao khâ
7 mâi châwp khráp
8 mâi ao khráp

Exercise 3

Rewrite Dialogue 1. Two friends, Dùsìt and Ann, are at a restaurant. Ann is not enjoying it, as she doesn't like the food and doesn't like fruit.

Example: DÙSÌT: **sanùk mái khráp?**
ANN: **mâi sanùk khâ.**

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: some common drinks.

A: khun châwp kaafae mái khá?
B: châwp khâ.
A: khun châwp chaa mái khá?
B: mâi châwp khâ.

Vocabulary

kaafae	coffee	**chaa**	tea
Some other drinks			
bia	beer	**náam**	water
nom	milk		



Exercise 4

1 Offer someone each of the drinks listed above.
2 Accept two of them; refuse the others saying you don't like them.

Example: 1 **ao kaafae mái khá?**
2 **mâi ao khâ. mâi châwp kaafae khâ.**

Dialogue 3

Joe's boss, Maalee, has invited him out for a meal in a fast food restaurant.

MAALEE:	khun châwp meuang thai mái khá?
JOE:	châwp mâak khráp. meuang thai sŭey khráp. khon thai jai dee.
MAALEE:	khun châwp aakàat meuang thai mái khá?
JOE:	châwp khráp.
MAALEE:	aakàat ráwn. wan née ráwn mâak khâ. thêe nêe ae mâi yen khâ. khun ráwn mái khá?
JOE:	mâi ráwn khráp.
MAALEE:	năo: mái khá?
JOE:	mâi khráp.
MAALEE:	ao kaafae mái khá? thêe nêe aròi.
JOE:	ao khráp. khàwpkhun khráp.
MAALEE:	khun châwp aahăan thai mái khá?
JOE:	châwp mâak khráp.
MAALEE:	chán mâi châwp khâ. phèt mâak. chán châwp aahăan fàràng khâ.

MAALEE:	*Do you like Thailand?*
JOE:	*Yes, very much. Thailand is beautiful. Thai people are kind.*
MAALEE:	*Do you like the weather in Thailand?*
JOE:	*Yes, I do.*
MAALEE:	*The weather's hot. Today it's very hot. The air-conditioning is not cool here. Are you hot?*
JOE:	*No, I'm not.*
MAALEE:	*Are you cold?*
JOE:	*No.*
MAALEE:	*Would you like some coffee? It's delicious here.*
JOE:	*Yes, I would, thank you.*
MAALEE:	*Do you like Thai food?*
JOE:	*(Yes) I like it very much.*
MAALEE:	*I don't like it. It's very spicy. I like Western food.*

Vocabulary

meuang	country, town	**sŭey**	pretty, beautiful
khon	person, people	**jai dee**	kind, good natured

jai	heart (used in noun compounds)		
dee	good	**aakàat**	weather, air
ráwn	hot	**wan née**	today
wan	day	**née**	this, these
thêe nêe	here (sometimes shortened to **nêe**)		
ae	air-conditioning	**yen**	cool
năo:	cold	**fàràng**	Western, Westerner

Culture point

jai dee

The expression **jai dee** is the most common compliment in Thai. It covers 'good', 'kind' and 'good natured'. For the opposite, Thais would normally say **khon mâi dee**, not **jai mâi dee**.

Note: **dee jai** means 'happy'.

Talking about the weather

Thais do comment on the weather, though not as frequently as in some countries. They will complain if it is exceptionally hot and remark favourably if it is cool – though in the north and especially in the mountains winter nights can be cold with the temperature falling to 10 degrees Celsius or less.

Language points

Hot and cold

Use **năo:** to refer to a person or the weather. To say something is cold, for example the beer or the room you are in, use **yen**. **ráwn** can refer to people or things. **aahăan ráwn** means the food is hot in temperature, not that it is spicy (**phèt**).

Short answers with mâi

You can use **mâi khráp** (or **khâ**) to give a short negative answer:

phèt mái? **mâi khâ/khráp**

Word order

thêe nêe aròi	It's delicious here
wan née aakàat yen	The weather's cool today

Thai usually gives the time or place something happened first and the key information later.

dee

dee means morally good or of good quality: 'bad' is usually expressed by **mâi dee**. Use **aròi,** not **dee**, to say food is good. **dee** is often used with another adjective, e.g. **sanùk dee**, 'good fun'; **yen dee,** 'nice and cool'.

Culture point

fàràng

When referring to people the word **fàràng** means 'Caucasian'; when referring to things it corresponds to 'Western'. You will hear it used frequently.

Exercise 5

Say whether you like these:

Example: 1 spicy food
mâi châwp aahăan phèt

2 Thai food
3 Thai fruit
4 tea
5 coffee
6 iced coffee (use the word for 'cool')
7 iced tea
8 cold beer
9 milk

Exercise 6

Give a short answer or agree with the statements using **mâak**:

Example: 1 **kháo jai dee mái khá?**
jai dee mâak khráp

2 thêe nêe sŭey mái khá?
3 khun châwp phŏnlamái mái khá?

4 khun dee jai mái khá?
5 aahăan thai aròi khráp.
6 kaafae ráwn khráp.
7 khon thai jai dee khráp.
8 meuang thai sŭey khráp.

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: common dishes.

A: ao khâo: phàt mái khá?
B: phŏm mâi châwp khâo: phàt khráp.
A: khun châwp phàt thai mái khá?
B: châwp khráp.
A: thêe nêe aròi.

Vocabulary

khâo: phàt	fried rice	**khâo:**	rice
phàt	fried		
phàt thai	fried noodles, Thai-style		

Some ingredients

mŏo	pork	**kài**	chicken
kûng	prawn		
phàt phàk	stir-fried vegetables		
phàk	vegetable(s)		

Kinds of fried rice: say **khâo: phàt** then the main ingredient, for example **khâo: phàt kài** ('chicken fried rice').

Exercise 7

Rewrite Dialogue 4 using these cues:

Example: 1 fried noodles, chicken fried rice
A: **ao phàt thai mái khá?**
B: **phŏm mâi châwp phàt thai khráp.**
...

2 fried vegetables, fried rice
3 pork fried rice, prawn fried rice

Reading and writing

Some consonants

ม	น	ก	ด	ค	จ	ท	ย
m	**n**	**k**	**d**	**kh**	**j**	**th**	**y**

Some vowels

Vowels written above the consonant:

◌ี	ee	ดี	**dee**	'good'

Vowels written after the consonant:

า	**aa**	มาก	**mâak**	'very', 'very much'

Vowels written before the consonant:

ใ	**ai**	ใจ	**jai**	'heart'
ไ	**ai**	ไทย	**thai**	'Thai'

The ย sound is not pronounced here.

If a written syllable consists of two consonants, the vowel sound 'o' is inserted:

คน		นม	
khon	'person'	**nom**	'milk'

Tone marker

The tone marker ◌่ changes the tone to a low or falling tone:

ไม่		ไก่		ที่นี่	
mâi	'not'	**kài**	'chicken'	**thêe nêe**	'here'

Exercise 8 Word study

Write these words in transliteration then translate them:

1 ดี
2 มาก
3 ใจดี
4 ไทย
5 คน
6 นม
7 ไม่
8 ไก่
9 ที่นี่

Exercise 9 Reading

Draw a line like this / to mark the separate words in these phrases. Then write them in transliteration and translate them.

1 คนดี
2 คนไทย
3 ดีมาก
4 ใจดีมาก
5 ดีใจมาก
6 ที่นี่คนไม่ดี
7 คนไทยใจดีมาก

Exercise 10 Writing

(a) Write the letters missing from these words and phrases:

1 _ก่
2 _จ
3 ม_ก
4 _ ม่
5 _า_
6 ค_
7 ไ_ _
8 _ ม
9 ที่_ _ นดี _ าก
10 ค _ _ ท _ _ จ _ ม _ _

(b) Write these words and phrases in Thai letters:

1 chicken
2 very good
3 Thai people
4 happy
5 milk
6 very happy
7 not good

2 Finding out

In this unit you will ask for information.

You will learn how to:

- exchange greetings and leave-takings
- find out someone's whereabouts
- ask the way
- ask confirmation questions
- ask questions with 'who' and 'where'
- say where something or someone is
- use numbers
- talk about places around town

Dialogue 1

Ken is looking for some business contacts and calls at their office.

KEN:	sawàtdee khráp.
RECEPTIONIST:	sawàtdee khâ. maa hăa khrai khá?
KEN:	maa hăa khun Sùnee khráp.
RECEPTIONIST:	khun Sùnee mâi yòo khâ. pai sanăambin khâ.
KEN:	khun Kàmon yòo mái khráp?
RECEPTIONIST:	wan née mâi maa tham ngaan khâ. mâi sabai: khâ.
KEN:	láe khun Ùdom yòo mái khráp?
RECEPTIONIST:	khun Ùdom yòo thêe krungthâyp khâ. kháo pai tham ngaan thêe krungthâyp khâ.
KEN:	âo:! mâi mee khrai maa tham ngaan rĕuh khráp?
RECEPTIONIST:	chán yòo khon dio khâ.
KEN:	khàwpkhun mâak khráp.
RECEPTIONIST:	mâi pen rai khâ.
KEN:	sawàtdee khráp.
RECEPTIONIST:	sawàtdee khâ.

KEN:	*Good morning.*
RECEPTIONIST:	*Good morning. Who have you come to see?*
KEN:	*I've come to see Ms Sùnee.*
RECEPTIONIST:	*Ms Sùnee's not here. She went to the airport.*
KEN:	*Is Mr Kàmon here?*
RECEPTIONIST:	*Mr Kàmon didn't come to work today. He's not well.*
KEN:	*And is Mr. Ùdom here?*
RECEPTIONIST:	*Mr. Ùdom is in Bangkok. He went to work in Bangkok.*
KEN:	*Oh! Nobody came to work then?*
RECEPTIONIST:	*I'm on my own.*
KEN:	*Thank you very much.*
RECEPTIONIST:	*That's all right.*
KEN:	*Goodbye.*
RECEPTIONIST:	*Goodbye.*

Vocabulary

sawàtdee	hello, goodbye, any polite greeting		
maa	to come		
hăa	to look for, visit, go and see		
khrai	who	**khun**	(polite title)
yòo	to be somewhere, stay, live	**pai**	to go
sanăambin	airport	**sanăam**	field
tham ngaan	to work	**tham**	to do
ngaan	work	**mâi sabai:**	to be ill
sabai:	to feel good, well	**láe**	and
thêe	at, in	**krungthâyp**	Bangkok
âo:!	oh!	**mâi mee khrai**	nobody
mee	to have, there is	**rĕuh**	question marker
khon dio	alone	**dio**	just one

Culture points

Greetings

Use **sawàtdee khráp** (or **khâ**) to greet or take leave of someone. Use it at any time of day or night (there are no separate words for 'Good afternoon' etc.).

The polite title khun

Use **khun** with the first name to address people or refer to them formally (whether they are male or female). Ùdom would normally address Ken as **khun** Ken, for example.

Thai names

Thais usually have a surname, a given (first) name and a nickname. Surnames are used for official purposes, not to refer to someone or address them in conversation. Nicknames are often common one-syllable words. Someone's nickname might, for example, mean 'pig', 'small', 'big', bird' or 'red'. The names used in the dialogue above are given names. Surnames are often long, especially those of Chinese immigrants.

Language points

Questions with khrai

khrai has the same position in the sentence as the word it replaces:

maa hǎa khun Ùdom.	**maa hǎa khrai?** Who have you come to see?
Ùdom maa.	**khrai maa?** Who came?

Saying where something or someone is

thêe means 'at' but is often used when in English we would say 'in':

Ùdom yòo thêe krungthâyp.
Ùdom is in Bangkok.

In informal speech it is often omitted:

Kàmon yòo krungthâyp.
Kàmon is in Bangkok.

For 'go to' use **pai** without a preposition:

Sùnee pai sanǎambin.
Sùnee went to the airport.

Ask where someone is with **thêe nǎi** (sometimes shortened to **nǎi**):

Ùdom yòo thêe nǎi?
Where is Ùdom?

Sùnee tham ngaan thêe nǎi?
Where does Sùnee work?

thêe nǎi, like other question words, usually comes after the verb it relates to.

Confirmation questions with rěuh

Use **rěuh** when you anticipate the answer to your question:

mâi pai rěuh?
So you're not going then?

rěuh is often equivalent to a question tag in English:

tham ngaan rěuh?
You're working, are you?

Exercise 1

Complete the conversation using the cues. Ken calls at Ùdom's house and Ùdom's wife, Nee, opens the door:

Example: NEE: (greets Ken) **sawàtdee khâ**

KEN: (greets Nee; asks if Ùdom is here)
NEE: (no)
KEN: (asks where he went)
NEE: (to work)
KEN: (thanks her and says goodbye)
NEE: (says goodbye)

Exercise 2

Ask a question with **rěuh** to check what you think.

Example: 1 Check that your friend is enjoying his food.
aròi rěuh? *or* **khun châwp rěuh?**

Check whether:

2 the food is spicy
3 the coffee's hot
4 your friend is cold
5 he's working
6 he's not going to the airport
7 he's not well
8 Ùdom is not here

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: places around town – 1.

A: khun Kàmon yòo mái khráp?
B: mâi yòo khâ. pai tàlàat khâ.
A: láe khun Ùdom yòo mái khráp?
B: mâi yòo khâ. pai thanaakhaan khâ.

Vocabulary

tàlàat	market
thanaakhaan	bank

Other places

wát	Buddhist temple
thêe tham ngaan	office, place of work
ráan aahǎan	restaurant
ráan	shop
sathǎanee tamrùat	police station
tamrùat	police
sathǎanee	station
rohng raem	hotel
praisànee	post office
chieng mài	Chiang Mai (city in northern Thailand)

Exercise 3

(a) Tell someone where these people went:

Example: 1 her office
pai thêe tham ngaan

2 the temple
3 the airport
4 Chiang Mai
5 the restaurant
6 the market
7 the bank
8 the police station
9 the hotel
10 the post office

(b) Now write some conversations like this:

A: Ùdom yòo thêe nǎi?
B: yòo thêe thanaakhaan.
A: tham ngaan thêe thanaakhaan rěuh?
B: tham ngaan thêe tàlàat.

Dialogue 3

Ken needs to change some money and is looking for a bank in an unfamiliar area.

KEN: khǎwthôht khráp. thǎeo née mee thanaakhaan mái khráp?
PASSER-BY: mee khâ. pai thaang née khâ.
KEN: klai mái khráp?
PASSER-BY: mâi klai khâ. pramaan hâa sìp máyt. yòo sái: meuh khâ.
KEN: thaang née châi mái khráp?
PASSER-BY: châi khâ.
KEN: khǎwthôht khráp. wan née thanaakhaan pèrt mái khráp?
PASSER-BY: mâi pèrt khâ. wan née yùt khâ.

KEN: *Excuse me, is there a bank around here?*
PASSER-BY: *Yes, there is. This way.*
KEN: *Is it far?*
PASSER-BY: *No, it's not far. About fifty metres. It's on the left.*
KEN: *This way, right?*
PASSER-BY: *That's right.*

KEN:	*Excuse me, are the banks open today?*
PASSER-BY:	*No, they are not open today. They're on holiday today.*

Vocabulary

khăwthôht	excuse me, to be sorry	**thăeo**	area
thaang	way	**klai**	far
pramaan	about	**hâa sìp**	fifty
máyt	metre	**sái:**	left
meuh	hand	**châi mái**	question tag
châi	that's right	**pèrt**	to open, to be open
yùt	to stop		

Language points

'There is'

Use **mee** plus a noun:

mee praisànee
There's a post office

thăeo née mâi mee praisànee
There isn't a post office around here

mee bia
There is some beer

mâi mee kaafae
There is no coffee

Asking the way

thăeo née mee thanaakhaan mái?
Is there a bank around here?
thăeo née mee + noun + **mái**?

You can also use:

thanaakhaan yòo thêe năi?
Where is the bank?
noun + **yòo thêe năi?**

Giving directions

Use the verb without a subject as an imperative form:

pai!	Go away!
pai thaang née.	Go this way.
maa (thêe) nêe!	Come here!

Numbers

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
nèung	**săwng**	**săam**	**sèe**	**hâa**	**hòk**	**jèt**	**pàet**

9	10	11	20	100
kâo	**sìp**	**sìp èt**	**yêe sìp**	**rói**

The other numbers are all formed on these patterns:

sìp săwng, sìp săam	12, 13, etc.
săam sìp, sèe sìp	30, 40, etc
săam sìp èt, sèe sìp èt	31, 41, etc.
pàet rói kâo sìp èt	891, etc.

Confirmation questions with châi mái

Use **châi mái** like **rĕuh** to check what you think to be true. Like **rĕuh** you can use it to confirm affirmative or negative statements:

mâi mee thanaakhaan châi mái?
There isn't a bank, is there?

Short answers to questions with châi mái

Question	*'yes'*	*'no'*
khun Ùdom yòo châi mái?	**yòo.**	**mâi yòo.**

To make your answer stronger use **châi** or **mâi châi.**

Notice how you answer a negative question:

Question	**khun Ùdom mâi yòo châi mái?**
châi	confirms the statement: 'Ùdom is not there'
mâi châi	contradicts the statement: 'Ùdom is there'

Use **châi** alone to confirm what someone has said:

thêe nêe ae yen mâak. **châi.**

Culture points

Distances

Distance is measured in kilometers (**kilohmáyt**, often shortened to **kiloh**) or metres (**máyt**).

khăwthôht

Use **khăwthôht** for 'excuse me' and in some situations for 'I'm sorry' (for example, if you have inconvenienced someone, been discourteous or made a mistake). Do not use **khăwthôht** to express sorrow or sympathy, though.

Exercise 4

Ask directions to the following places (use **thăeo née mee . . . mái?** or . . . **yòo thêe năi?**):

Example: 1 a hotel
thăeo née mee rohng raem mái khráp?

2 a restaurant
3 a temple
4 a market
5 a bank
6 a police station
7 a post office
8 the airport

Exercise 5

Match the numbers on the left with the figures on the right:

kâo	10
sìp	3
pàet	9
săwng	5
sèe	6
hòk	2
săam	4
hâa	7
jèt	1
nèung	8

Exercise 6

From these extracts make a note of the distances to the:

(a) airport (b) police station (c) temple
(d) hotel (e) post office

1 rohng raem klai mái khráp?
pramaan sèe sìp máyt khâ.

2 sanăambin klai mái khráp?
pramaan pàet kilohmáyt khâ.

3 praisànee klai mái khráp?
pramaan nèung rói máyt khâ.

4 wát klai mái khráp?
pramaan săwng rói máyt khâ.

5 sathăanee tamrùat klai mái khráp?
pramaan săam sìp kilohmáyt khâ.

Exercise 7

Ask a question to check if these facts are true (use **châi mái**):

Example: 1 Ùdom works in London.
Ùdom tham ngaan thêe London châi mái khá?

2 There's no coffee.
3 Ùdom is not in his office.

4 Ùdom is not going to work today.
5 Ùdom has gone to Bangkok.
6 The police station is on the left.
7 The banks are closed today.
8 The post office is not far.

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: Places about town – 2.

A: khăwthôht khráp. thăeo née mee khlíník mái khráp?
B: mee khâ.
A: klâi mái khráp?
B: pramaan nèung kilohmáyt khâ. yòo khwăa meuh khâ.
A: wan née pìt mái khráp?
B: pìt khâ. wan née wan yùt khâ.



Vocabulary

khlíník	clinic	**klâi**	near

The words for 'near' and 'far' are distinguished only by their tone:

klai	far (mid tone)	**klâi**	near (falling tone)
khwăa	right	**pìt**	to close, closed

Other places

sanăam keelaa	sports field	**keelaa**	sport
rohng phayaabaan	hospital	**hâang**	department store
sà wâi: náam	swimming pool	**wâi: náam**	to swim
hâwng náam	toilet	**hâwng**	room

Exercise 8

Write short dialogues using these cues:

Example: 1 The clinic is on the right.

A: **khăwthôht khâ. khlíník yòo thêe năi?**
B: **yòo khwăa meuh khâ.**
A: **klâi mái khá?**
B: **khâ.**

2 There isn't a hospital near but there's a clinic nearby on the right.
3 There's a store in the area but it's not near.
4 The toilet's on the left.
5 There isn't a swimming pool nearby but there's a stadium 100 metres away on the right.

Reading and writing practice

Consonants



p s b h ng t l r w

Vowels

Above the consonant:

 **i** ปิน **bin**

ั **a** วัด **wát**

Before the consonant:

โ **oh** แ **ae** โรงแรม **rohng raem**

After and above the consonant:

ำ **am (aam)** ทำ **tham**

If a written syllable consists of a single consonant, the vowel sound 'a' is sometimes added: ตลาด **tàlàat**

Final consonants

These consonants change their pronunciation in final position in a syllable:

	Initial	*Final*		
บ	**b**	**p**	สิบ	**sìp**
ด	**d**	**t**	ตลาด	**tàlàat**
ค	**kh**	**k**	คลินิค	**khlíník**

Examples from this unit are:

ไป **pai**	สาม **săam**	หา **hăa**
งาน **ngaan**	ไกล **klai**	กิโล **kiloh**
แปด **pàet**	ปิด **pìt**	สนามบิน **sanăambin**

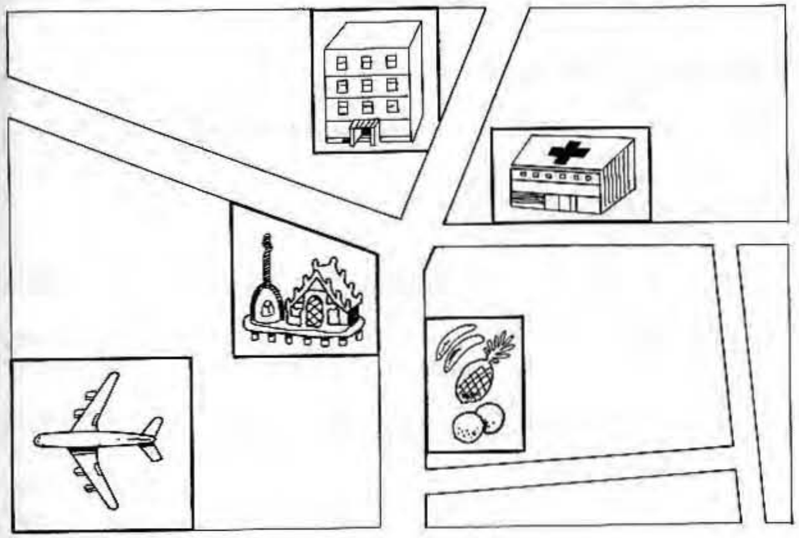
Exercise 9 Word study

Circle the words which don't belong in these groups:

1 วัด สนามบิน โรงแรม กิโล คลินิค ตลาด
2 สาม ไกล สิบ แปด
3 ทำ ไป บิน มา ปิด สิบ
4 แปด สิบ สามสิบ แปดสิบ สิบสาม

Exercise 10 Reading

(a) Number these locations on the town plan following the key given:



Key

1 คลินิค
2 สนามบิน
3 โรงแรม
4 วัด
5 ตลาด

(b) Draw a line like this / to mark the separate words in these phrases; then write them in transliteration and translate them:

1 ไปวัด
2 ไปตลาด
3 ไปโรงแรม
4 ไม่ไปคลินิค
5 ไม่ไปสนามบิน
6 ที่ตลาดไม่มีไก่
7 โรงแรมมีคลินิค
8 ทำงานที่คลินิค
9 โรงแรมปิด
10 ทำงานที่สนามบิน
11 ที่สนามบินไม่มีโรงแรม

Exercise 11 Writing

Write these sentences in Thai letters (without the pronoun):

1 (I'm) going to the market.
2 (I'm) going to the office.
3 (She) works in a clinic.
4 (I'm) going to the airport.
5 (She) isn't coming to the hotel.
6 (She) didn't come to work.
7 (He's) going to the temple.
8 Fifty people came to work.
9 (She's) going to the clinic in the airport.
10 The clinic is closed.

3 Going places

In this unit you will you will take part in some more conversations that Thais might initiate.

You will learn how to:

- answer questions about where you are going and what you are going to do
- use expressions for meeting people
- use **ja** to express future time
- ask questions with **arai**, **kèe**, **yang-ngai** and **mêuarài**
- use **kwàa** to make a comparison
- talk about leisure and forms of transport

Dialogue 1

Ann is about to leave home when one of her neighbours calls out to her.

NEIGHBOUR:	Ann sabai: dee rĕuh khráp?
ANN:	sabai: dee khâ.
NEIGHBOUR:	khun pai năi khráp?
ANN:	pai thîo khâ.
NEIGHBOUR:	ja pai thîo thêe năi khráp?
ANN:	pai námtòk khâ.
NEIGHBOUR:	khun pai tham arai khráp?
ANN:	pai dern lên láeo kô ja thài: rôop dûey khâ.
NEIGHBOUR:	pai kàp phêuan rĕuh khráp?
ANN:	pai khon dio khâ.
NEIGHBOUR:	pai khon dio antarai: ná khráp. ráwang ná khráp.
ANN:	khàwpkhun khâ. chán pai kàwn ná khá.
NEIGHBOUR:	láeo jer kan ná khráp. chôhk dee khráp.
ANN:	khâ.

NEIGHBOUR:	*How are you? (Is Ann well?)*
ANN:	*I'm fine.*
NEIGHBOUR:	*Where are you going?*
ANN:	*I'm going out (for fun).*
NEIGHBOUR:	*Where are you going?*
ANN:	*To the waterfall.*
NEIGHBOUR:	*What are you going to do?*
ANN:	*I'm going for a walk and I'll take some photographs as well.*
NEIGHBOUR:	*You're going with a friend, are you?*
ANN:	*I'm going on my own.*
NEIGHBOUR:	*It's dangerous to go on your own. Be careful!*
ANN:	*Thank you. Well, I'm off.* (lit. 'I go first')
NEIGHBOUR:	*See you. Good luck!*
ANN:	*(acknowledges)*

Vocabulary

ná	particle (softens warnings or invites agreement, e.g. '. . . okay?')
sabai: dee	to be well
(pai) thîo	to go somewhere for pleasure
námtòk	waterfall
arai	what
dern	to walk
lên	to play
láeo	already, so (in responses)
thài: rôop	take photographs
rôop	picture
dûey	also, as well
kàp	with
phêuan	friend
antarai:	dangerous
ráwang	to be careful, to beware of
kàwn	first, before
láeo jer kan	see you!
jer	to meet
kan	each other
chôhk	luck
năi	where
ja	will (future time)
thêe năi	where
tòk	to fall from something
dern lên	to walk for pleasure
láeo kô	and, and then



Culture points

Greetings

sabai: dee rěuh is a polite conversation opener for use with someone you have not seen for a while.

pai năi? (where are you going?) is a common way of greeting people and initiating conversation.

chôhk dee ('good luck') is a common way of taking leave of someone.

pai thîo

pai thîo indicates you are going somewhere for pleasure. 'To go somewhere on business' is **pai thúrá**. Both are useful vague answers to the question **pai năi?**. **thêe thîo** means 'places to visit'.

Language points

ja *indicating future time*

ja before a main verb indicates future time. Like other time markers, it can be omitted if the meaning is clear from the context (as in Ann's reply). **ja** is usually dropped in the negative.

Questions with 'what'

The question word **arai** occupies the same position in the sentence as the noun it replaces.

ao arai?	What do you want?
arai tòk?	What fell?

Joining verbs

Thai often puts two or more verbs together without any connecting words:

khun pai tham arai khráp?
What are you going to do?

You can also use **maa** and **châwp** before another verb.

dûey

With negative sentences, **dûey** means 'not . . . either':

Ann mâi pai námtòk. phŏm mâi pai dûey.
Ann is not going to the waterfall. I'm not going either.

dûey kan is 'together':

pai dûey kan mái khráp?
Shall we go together?

Uses of khráp *and* khâ

You can use the polite particles on their own to confirm or acknowledge what someone has said. Note that **ná** is followed by **khá,** not **khâ.**

Exercise 1

Find questions to fit these answers:

Example: 1 **pai thúrá khráp.**
khun (ja) pai năi khráp?

2 mâi khâ. pai kàp phêuan khâ.
3 ja thài: rôop khráp.
4 mâi sabai: khâ.
5 châwp dern lên khâ.
6 tham ngaan thêe rohng phayaabaan.
7 mâi châi khâ. pai thîo.
8 jer kan thêe thanaakhaan khâ.

Exercise 2

Your friend asks you where you are going. Tell him you are going to the places shown. For questions 1, 2 and 3 suggest he comes with you; for questions 4 and 5 add that you're going on your own; and for questions 6 and 7 add that you're going with a friend.

Example: 1 market
(ja) pai talàat. pai dûey kan mái khá?

2 office
3 hotel

4 police station
5 bank
6 restaurant
7 temple

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: places to go.

DÙSIT: ja pai năi khráp?
ANN: klàp bâan khâ. láeo kô ja pai doo năng.
DÙSIT: mâi pai hăa phêuan rĕuh khráp?
ANN: mâi pai khâ.

Vocabulary

klàp	return	**bâan**	house, home
doo	to see	**năng**	film (movie)
hăa	to look for, visit, go and see		

Other places to go and things to do

séuh khăwng	to go shopping	**séuh**	to buy
khăwng	thing	**kin khâo:**	to have something to eat
kin	eat, drink	**rohng năng**	cinema
wiu	view	**chai: thalay**	seaside
thalay	sea	**bon doi**	on the mountain
bon	on	**doi**	mountain
sŭan sàt	zoo	**sŭan**	park, garden, orchard
sàt	animal		

Exercise 3

(a) Match the activities on the left with the appropriate place on the right (there can be more than one answer):

kin khâo:	chai: thalay
doo năng	bon doi
hăa phêuan	wát
séuh khăwng	sŭan sàt
dern lên	ráan aahăan

doo wiu	rohng năng
thài: rôop	hâang
doo sàt	námtòk
wâi: náam	krungthâyp

(b) Now use the same activities and places to write dialogues like this:

Example: A: **ja pai bon doi.**
B: **ja pai tham arai?**
A: **pai thài: rôop.**

Dialogue 3

Tony is chatting to a colleague Dao: about his forthcoming trip to Bangkok.

DAO: ja pai krungthâyp mêuaràì khá?
TONY: pai aathít nâa khráp.
DAO: pai kèe wan khá?
TONY: pai săam wan khráp.
DAO: pai kèe khon khá?
TONY: pai săwng khon khráp.
DAO: ja pai yang-ngai khá?
TONY: pai khrêuang bin khráp.
DAO: rĕuh khá? khrêuang bin chái waylaa naan mái khá?
TONY: nèung chûamohng khráp.
DAO: dee. mâi naan ná khá. rayo kwàa rót fai. tŭa khrêuang bin phaeng mái khá?
TONY: phaeng mâak khráp. hâa phan bàat khráp.
DAO: phaeng jing jing.

DAO: *When will you go to Bangkok?*
TONY: *Next week.*
DAO: *How many days are you going?*
TONY: *Three.*
DAO: *How many (of you) are going?*
TONY: *Two (of us).*
DAO: *How will you go?*
TONY: *By plane.*
DAO: *Really? Does the plane take long?*
TONY: *One hour.*

DAO: *(That's) good. Not long. Quicker than the train. Is the plane ticket expensive?*
TONY: *Very expensive. Five thousand baht.*
DAO: *(That's) really expensive.*

Vocabulary

mêuaràì	when	**aathít**	week
nâa	next	**kèe**	how many
yang-ngai	how	**khrêuang bin**	plane
khrêuang	machine	**bin**	to fly
rĕuh	polite response	**chái**	to use
waylaa	time	**naan**	a long time
chûamohng	hour	**rayo**	fast
kwàa	more	**rót fai**	train
tŭa	ticket	**phaeng**	expensive
phan	thousand	**bàat**	baht, unit of Thai currency
jing	true	**jing jing**	really

Culture points

Names

Dao: is a common female nickname, meaning 'star'.

Bangkok

The literal meaning of **krungthâyp** is 'city of angels'; it is actually an abbreviation, the full name being the longest place name in the world!

Language points

Questions with mêuaràì *and* yang-ngai

Like other question words, **mêuaràì** normally comes at the end of the question. It can be used for past, present or future time. **yang-ngai** also follows the verb it relates to.

Periods of time

pai săam wan.
I'm going (for) three days.

Use the same construction with **aathít** (week), **deuan** (month) and **pee** (year):

ja yòo săam deuan.
I'll stay three months.

Future time expressions

To say 'next week' etc. use **nâa** plus the time word (week, month, year). **wan nâa** means 'one day . . . '(in the future). 'Tomorrow' is **phrŭng née**.

kèe – *how many*

With periods of time and people, **kèe** immediately precedes the noun it relates to:

kèe wan (aathít, deuan, pee, chûamohng, khon)?

In Unit 4 you will see how **kèe** is used with other nouns.

Using kwàa *to make a comparison*

Use **kwàa** after an adjective or adverb to make a comparison:

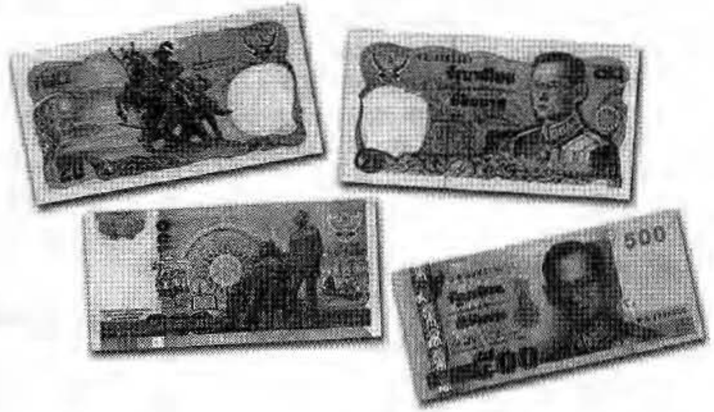
khrêuang bin phaeng kwàa rót fai.
The plane is more expensive than the train.

Culture point

Prices and money

bàat is the unit of Thai currency. There are coins for one, five and ten baht and twenty, fifty, one hundred, five hundred and one

thousand baht banknotes As banknotes have the picture of the monarch on them, Thais do not like to see them crumpled up.
The opposite of **phaeng** is **thòok** (cheap).



Exercise 4

Use the table below to write questions and answers like this:

pai kèe wan?
pai săam wan

(Your questions should use **kèe wan**, **kèe aathít**, **kèe deuan** or **kèe pee**.)

		Leave	*Return*
Example:	1	Sept 3 **pai kèe aathít?**	Sept 17 **pai săwng aathít.**
		Leave	*Return*
	2	Dec 1	Dec 19
	3	Jan 1	May 30
	4	Feb 1	Oct 31
	5	2005	2009
	6	2006	2112
	7	Mar 1	Mar 8
	8	2007	2017

Exercise 5

Make a note of the items on this menu and their price:

1 phàt thai	yêe sìp èt bàat
2 khâo: phàt kài	săam sìp hâa bàat
3 khâo: phàt mŏo	yêe sìp kâo bàat
4 khâo: phàt kûng	sèe sìp jèt bàat
5 kaafae yen	săam sìp bàat
6 chaa ráwn	yêe sìp èt bàat

Exercise 6

Here are some answers. Find the questions:

Example: 1 **pai sìp wan.**
pai kèe wan khá?

2 pai săam khon.
3 ja pai phrûng née.
4 pai khrêuang bin.
5 pai krungthâyp.
6 sìp săwng chûamohng.
7 pàet rói bàat.
8 mâi châi khráp. pai săwng khon.

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: some other forms of transport.

A: ja pai yang-ngai?
B: ja khàp rót pai.
A: mâi nâng rót bát rĕuh?
B: nâng rót bát phaeng kwàa.

Vocabulary

khàp to drive
rót vehicle (used on its own usually means a car)
nâng to sit, to travel as a passenger
rót bát bus

Other words
reua boat

Exercise 7

Rewrite Dialogue 4 using the cues:

Example: 1 **reua khrêuang bin sanùk**
A: **ja pai yang-ngai?**
B: **ja nâng reua.**
A: **mâi pai khrêuang bin rĕuh?**
B: **nâng reua sanùk kwàa.**

2 khàp rót reua rayo
3 khrêuang bin rót fai chái waylaa naan
4 rót bát khàp rót rayo

Reading and writing

From this point on the reading practice will contain some words you know but have not seen written. You should be able to work them out, though. Refer to 'How to write Thai letters' (pp. 270–1) at the end of the book for help in writing the letters.

Consonants

ช	พ	ผ	ฟ	ข	ถ
ch	**ph**	**ph**	**f**	**kh**	**th**

Vowels

Under the consonant:

-ู	ดู	-ุ	สนุก
oo	**doo**	**u**	**sanùk**

After the consonant:

อ	ชอบ	าย	สบาย	าว	ข้าว	ะ	ค่ะ
aw	**châwp**	**ai:**	**sabai:**	**ao:**	**khâo:**	**a**	**khâ**

Before the consonant:

เ	เวลา
ay	**waylaa**

The second tone marker ้ changes the tone of a word to falling or high:

บ้าน **bâan**

Examples

โชค **chôhk**	แพง **phaeng**	รถ **rót**	ของ **khăwng**	ผม **phŏm**
ผลไม้ **phŏnlamái**	รถไฟ **rót fai**	ร้าน **ráan**	ห้อง **hâwng**	ทะเล **thalay**
น้ำ **náam**	ขวา **khwăa**			

Exercise 8 Word study

Find the words which can be combined:

For example: ใจ สิบ ดี *Answer*: ใจดี

น้ำ สนาม ทำ หก รถไฟ ผลไม้ งาน บิน

ยี่สิบ ห้อง ตก ทะเล สถานี

Exercise 9 Reading

Translate:

1 A menu

ข้าวผัดไก่	35 บาท	ข้าวผัดกุ้ง	40 บาท
ผัดไทย	25 บาท	ผัก	20 บาท
กาแฟ	15 บาท	ชา	10 บาท
น้ำผลไม้	22 บาท		

2 ห้องน้ำปิด

3 ถูกมาก!!!

4 ห้องน้ำ 5 บาท

5 ระวัง น้ำตกอันตราย!

6 ถ่ายรูปน้ำตกสนก

7 ผมชอบว่ายน้ำที่ทะเล

8 ผมไม่มีเวลาไปสถานีรถไฟ

9 บ้านแพง

10 ผมชอบผลไม้ไทย

Exercise 10 Writing

Make some notes to include in a letter to a friend:

1 I am well.
2 I went by train.
3 There's no airport.
4 I went swimming in the sea.
5 It was a lot of fun.
6 I like watching the sea.
7 The fruit is expensive.
8 I have no time to go to the market.
9 Good luck!

Hints: for 'I' either use ผม or omit it. Translate the verbs that are in the past in English with the verb you already know in Thai (Thai verbs do not have a past form).

4 Shopping

In this unit you will learn how to ask for things and bargain in shops.

You will learn how to:

- use the classifier **an** to refer to or count things
- ask questions with **năi** and **thâoràì**
- refer to quantities and units of measurement
- express ability
- talk about colours, fruits and fruit juices, common purchases and shops

Dialogue 1

Joe wants to buy some souvenirs and has asked Sùnee to help him choose them.

JOE:	khun châwp an năi khráp?
SÙNEE:	chán châwp an née khâ.
JOE:	an née thâoràì khráp?
SÙNEE:	sèe rói bàat khâ.
JOE:	ao sěe arai dee khráp? sěe khĭo rěuh sěe chomphoo?
SÙNEE:	ao săwng an khâ.
JOE:	ngern mâi phaw khráp. mâi séuh dee kwàa. pai kin khâo: kàwn khráp.

(at the food stall)

JOE:	ao bia săwng khùat khráp.
STALLHOLDER:	ao khùat yài rěuh khùat lék khá?
JOE:	ao khùat năi dee?
SÙNEE:	ao khùat lék khâ.
STALLHOLDER:	khùat lék mòt láeo khâ.
SÙNEE:	ao khùat yài kô dâi: khâ.

JOE:	*Which one do you like?*
SÙNEE:	*I like this one.*
JOE:	*How much is it?*
SÙNEE:	*Four hundred baht.*
JOE:	*What colour should I get (is it good to get)? Green or pink?*
SÙNEE:	*Get both of them.*
JOE:	*I don't have enough money. I'd rather not get one. Let's go and have something to eat first.*

(at the food stall)

JOE:	*Two bottles of beer.*
STALLHOLDER:	*Large or small bottles?*
JOE:	*Which shall we get?*
SÙNEE:	*Small ones.*
STALLHOLDER:	*The small bottles are finished.*
SÙNEE:	*The large bottles will be all right.*

Vocabulary

an	general classifier for things	**năi**	which
thâoràì	how much	**sěe**	colour
sěe khĭo	green	**rěuh**	or
sěe chomphoo	pink	**ngern**	money
phaw	enough	**khùat**	bottle
yài	large	**lék**	small
mòt	finished, used up	**láeo**	already
kô dâi:	(that's) all right		

Language points

The classifier an

Thai normally uses words called classifiers to refer to or count things. **an** can refer to any object. In Unit 8 you will learn classifiers for specific kinds of objects.

Use **an**:

- to refer to a noun:

an nǎi	which one?
an yài	the big one

- with **kèe**:

ao kèe an?	how many do you want?

- when counting:

ao sǎam an	I want three

- with the demonstrative adjectives:

an née	this one

Questions with thâorài

Use **thâorài** to ask about prices:

bia khùat lék thâorài?
How much are the small bottles of beer?

thâorài comes after the word(s) it refers to and normally at the end of the sentence.

Using dee

Use **dee** at the end of a question to ask for advice:

ao an nǎi dee?
Which one should I get?

Use **dee kwàa** at the end of a statement to mean 'I'd rather' or 'you should':

A: **séuh an lék mái?**
Shall we get the small one?

B: **séuh an yài dee kwàa.**
You should buy the large one.
(It would be better to buy the large one.)

Colours

Colours in Thai begin with the general word for 'colour' (**sěe**).

sěe daeng	red	**sěe nám ngern**	blue
sěe fáa	light blue (**fáa** sky)	**sěe thao**	grey
		sěe lěuang	yellow
sěe nám taan	brown	**sěe mûang**	purple
sěe sôm	orange	**sěe khǎo:**	white
sěe dam	black		

Saying something is enough

Use **phaw** after the noun:

ngern phaw.
I have enough money.

ngern phaw mái?
Do you have enough money?

phaw can also be used with adjectives:

lék phaw mái?
Is it small enough?

Uncountable nouns

The noun you are counting comes before the unit of measurement:

ao bia sǎwng khùat.
I want two bottles of beer.

ao bia kèe khùat?
How many bottles of beer do you want?

Using láeo *'already'*

láeo indicates that an action is completed and is used in several expressions to indicate that something is true now:

dee láeo	**phaw láeo**
it's okay (now)	I've had enough (now)

Culture point

Colours

Each colour is associated in Thai popular beliefs with a day of the week and it is lucky to wear clothes with the appropriate colour. Older Thais are often sensitive about black, which is associated with funerals, and will discourage wearing black clothes on other occasions or using black ink, for example. **jai dam** is applied to someone who is hard-hearted.

Exercise 1

Ask someone these questions:

Example: 1 if they want the pale blue one or the red one
ja ao sĕe fáa rĕuh sĕe daeng?

2 the price of the small one
3 the price of the small bottles
4 if they have enough coffee
5 if they want iced coffee or hot coffee
6 which one they want
7 which bottle they want – the yellow one or the black one
8 how many bottles of water they want

Exercise 2

Ken is shopping for clothes.

(a) Complete the table from the conversation below:

Colours		
Requested	*Available*	*Chosen*

KEN: sĕe dam mee mái khráp?
SHOPKEEPER: mâi mee khâ. mòt láeo khâ. mee sĕe lĕuang rĕuh sĕe thao.
KEN: ao sĕe thao khráp.

(b) Rewrite the conversation using this information:

	Colours		
	Requested	*Available*	*Chosen*
1	red	brown, purple	purple
2	white	pink, blue	blue
3	light blue	grey, orange	grey

Example: KEN: **sĕe daeng mee mái khráp?**

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: purchases and shops.

A. ja pai năi khráp?
B: ja pai séuh rawng tháo khráp. láeo kô ja pai séuh khreem kan dàet. khun ja pai năi khráp?
A: ja pai ráan thài: rôop. láeo kô ja pai ráan khăi: yaa.

Vocabulary

rawng tháo	shoe	**tháo**	foot
khreem kan dàet	suntan lotion	**ráan thài: rôop**	photographer's (shop)



dàet	sunshine	**ráan khăi: yaa**	pharmacy
khăi:	to sell		

Other words

krapăo	suitcase, bag (not a plastic bag), pocket		
naalíkaa	watch, clock	**krapăo sataang**	wallet
sataang	one hundredth of a baht	**wâen kan dàet**	sunglasses
wâen	glasses	**yaa kan yung**	mosquito repellent
yaa	medicine	**yung**	mosquito
pàak-kaa	pen	**klâwng thài: rôop**	camera
nangsěuh	book	**sêua phâa**	clothes
sêua	shirt, blouse, coat		
ráan khăi: nangsěuh	bookshop		
ráan khăi: sêua phâa	clothes shop		
ráan khăi: rawng tháo	shoe shop		

Exercise 3

Tell your friend the shops you are going to and some things you are going to buy (use the cues given in each question):

Example: 1 book, medicine
ja pai ráan khăi: nangsěuh séuh nangsěuh. ja pai ráan khăi: yaa séuh yaa.

2 watch, wallet
3 sunglasses, camera
4 shirt, shoes
5 book, pen
6 clothes, mosquito repellent

Dialogue 3

Ann is looking at fruit on a market stall.

TRADER: ao arai dee khráp? sôm aròi khráp.
ANN: doo kàwn ná khâ. mamûang née khăi: loh lá thâorài khá?
TRADER: loh lá hòk sìp bàat khráp.
ANN: lót raakhaa dâi: mái khá?

TRADER: mâi dâi: khráp. tawn née fŏn tòk. mâi khôi mee khráp. klâi ja mòt khráp.
ANN: wăan mái khá?
TRADER: wăan khráp. sùk láeo khráp. lawng chim dâi: khráp.
ANN: khâ. prîo! wăan kwàa nêe mee mái khá?
TRADER: mâi mee khráp.
ANN: yàang èuhn mâi mee rěuh khá?
TRADER: mâi mee khráp. ao kèe kìloh khráp?
ANN: ao khrêung kìloh khâ. láeo kô náam sôm sài thŭng khâ.
TRADER: kèe thŭng khráp?
ANN: săwng thŭng khâ.

TRADER: *What would you like? The oranges are delicious.*
ANN: *Let me look first. How much is a kilo of mangoes?*
TRADER: *Sixty baht a kilo.*
ANN: *Can you reduce the price?*
TRADER: *No, I can't. At the moment it's raining. There aren't many (about). They are nearly finished.*
ANN: *Are they sweet?*
TRADER: *Yes. They are ripe. You can taste (them).*
ANN: *Okay. It's sour! Are there any sweeter than this?*
TRADER: *No, there aren't.*
ANN: *There aren't any other kinds?*
TRADER: *No, there aren't. How many kilos do you want?*
ANN: *I'll have half a kilo. And orange juice (put) in a bag.*
TRADER: *How many bags?*
ANN: *Two.*

Vocabulary

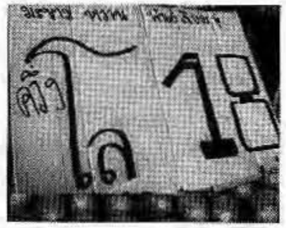
sôm	orange	**mamûang**	mango
loh (*or* **kiloh**)	kilo	**lá**	per
lót	to reduce	**raakhaa**	price
dâi:	can, possible	**tawn née**	now, at the moment
fŏn tòk	it's raining		
mâi khôi	not really	**wăan**	sweet
sùk	ripe, cooked	**lawng**	to try (i.e. test out)
chim	to taste	**prîo**	sour
nêe	this (pronoun), these	**yàang**	kind, sort
èuhn	another, other	**khrêung**	half
sài	to put in	**thŭng**	plastic bag











Language points

Units of measurement

Kilogram:	**loh, kiloh** or **kilohkram**
Litre:	**lít**

For cost per unit of measurement, put **lá** between the unit of measurement and the amount:

> **bia khùat lá hòk sìp bàat.**
> Beer is 60 baht a bottle.

> **bia khùat lá thâorài?**
> How much is beer per bottle?

Expressing ability: dâi:

Use **dâi:** after a verb to indicate that something is possible or that you are able to do it:

tham dâi:	I can do it
lót raakhaa dâi:	I can reduce the price

For the negative put **mâi** just before **dâi:**

tham mâi dâi:	I can't do it
lót raakhaa mâi dâi:	I can't reduce the price

Culture point

Bargaining

The simplest way of bargaining is just to state what you offer and add **dâi: mái?**

> **hâa sìp bàat dâi: mái?**
> Is 50 baht okay?

The response is usually **mâi dâi:, dâi:** or a compromise price. It is usual to bargain in markets and many shops except department stores. Bargaining is always polite and good natured.

Nearly

Use **klâi ja** for something that has nearly happened. The general word for 'almost' is **kèuap**:

> **phŏm tham ngaan kèuap hòk chûamohng láeo**
> I've worked for nearly six hours

Another

èuhn means another one i.e. not this one. 'Another' meaning 'in addition to this one' is **èek** or **èek nèung**.

> **ao khùat èuhn**
> I want another bottle (i.e. a different one)

> **ao èek nèung khùat**
> I want another bottle (in addition)

Use **èuhn** after **an** and **èek nèung** before it:

> **ao an èuhn (ao èek nèung an)**
> I'll have another one

You can also use them with **wan, khon** and **thêe**:

> **ja pai kàp khon èuhn**
> I'll go with somebody else (i.e. someone different)

> **pai èek nèung thêe**
> Let's go to another place (in addition)

Note that, unlike other numerals, **nèung** can also be used after the noun:

pai èek thêe nèung

Half

ao khrêung loh
I'll have half a kilo

With another numeral, half comes after the unit of measurement:

ao săwng loh khrêung
I'll have two and a half kilos

Exercise 4

Joe is buying fruit. Put the following dialogue in order:

sùk mái khráp?

săwng kìloh nèung rói sèe sìp kô dâi: khâ.

mâi phaeng khâ.

hòk sìp bàat dâi: mái khráp?

săwng rói pàet sìp bàat khâ.

loh lá pàet sìp bàat khâ.

mâi dâi: khâ.

thòok kwàa nêe mee mái khráp?

ao sèe kìloh khráp.

ao khráp.

lót raakhaa dâi: mái khráp?

sôm née khăi: loh lá thâorài khráp?

ao kèe kìloh khá.

mâi mee khâ.

sùk láeo khâ.

ao mái khá?

Exercise 5

(a) Ask if your friend is free to do these things today (use **dâi: mái?**):

Example: 1 go to the seaside
wan née pai thîo chai: thalay dâi: mái khá?

2 go for a walk in the mountains
3 go shopping
4 go and meet a friend
5 come and have a meal at your house
6 go swimming
7 go to the cinema
8 go to the zoo

(b) Answer the questions you asked by saying you can't. Add one of the following:

Example: **mâi dâi: khráp. pai aathít nâa dâi: khráp.**

1 you can do it another time
2 you can go somewhere else or do something else
3 give a reason why you can't do it (e.g. you've no time, no money, work or business to do, or you're not feeling well)

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: fruit and juices.

A: ja dèuhm arai khá?
B: náam mâphráo: thŭng lá thâorài khráp?
A: thŭng lá sìp bàat khâ.
B: ao săwng thŭng khráp. láeo kô náam taeng moh săam kâeo.

Vocabulary

dèuhm	to drink	**náam mâphráo:**	coconut juice
mâphráo:	coconut	**kâeo**	glass
taeng moh	watermelon		

Juices: put **náam** before the name of the fruit

Other words

klûey	banana
manao:	lime
malakaw	papaya
sàp-paròt	pineapple
thûey	cup
chín	piece



Exercise 6

How would you ask for these:

Example: 1 two cups of coffee
ao kaafae săwng thûey

2 a glass of pineapple juice
3 two bags of coconut juice
4 a glass of lime juice
5 a piece of papaya
6 two bottles of beer
7 two pieces of watermelon
8 three glasses of orange juice

Exercise 7

Rewrite Dialogue 4 using some of the new words introduced.

Example:

A: **ja dèuhm arai khá?**
B: **náam sàp-paròt kâeo lá thâorài khráp?**
. . .

Reading and writing

Consonants

ณ	คุณ	ซ	ซ้าย
n	**khun**	**s**	**sái:**

The silent ห

A silent **ห** before a consonant changes the tone of a syllable:

หนาว	หมู	หนัง	หมด	หวาน	หยุด
năo:	**mŏo**	**năng**	**mòt**	**wăan**	**yùt**

Vowels

–ื	เ_า	เ–ือ	เ–ิ	อย
euh	**ao**	**eua**	**er**	**oi**
ซื้อ	สีเทา	เมือง	เดิน	ดอย
séuh	**sĕe thao**	**meuang**	**dern**	**doi**

อ used as a consonant

If a word begins with a vowel sound the zero consonant อ is written before the vowel letter:

อะไร	เอา	อัน	อีก
arai	**ao**	**an**	**èek**

With the vowel –ื อ is used to end a syllable and remains silent:

ซื้อ	มือ	หรือ
séuh	**meuh**	**rěuh**

Examples

อื่น	เรา	เขา	เก้า	ไม่ค่อย	ร้อย
èuhn	**ráo**	**kháo**	**kâo**	**mâi khôi**	**rói**
เพื่อน	สีเหลือง	รองเท้า			
phêuan	**sěe lěuang**	**rawng tháo**			

Exercise 8 Word study

Circle the words which don't belong in these groups (there may be more than one word in each group):

1 สีเหลือง ถูก บาท ขาย เงิน ลด โชค ราคา แพง

2 ผลไม้ ซื้อของ ส้ม มะพร้าว มะนาว มะละกอ เพื่อน แตงโม

3 รองเท้า เมืองไทย เดือน เสื้อ เสื้อผ้า แว่นกันแดด

4 เหลือง ชมพู ส้ม แดง เมื่อไหร่ น้ำเงิน เปิด ขาว ดำ

5 รถ เรือ เครื่องบิน ดอย เกือบ รถไฟ

6 ซ้าย เท่าไหร่ เมื่อไหร่ ไม่ค่อย อะไร ที่ไหน

Exercise 9 Reading

(a) Why do these statements not make sense?

1 จะไปโรงหนังซื้อยากันยุง
2 จะไปร้านถ่ายรูปซื้อเสื้อ
3 จะไปร้านขายยาซื้อแตงโม
4 จะไปร้านขายหนังสือซื้อสับปะรด
5 จะไปร้านขายเสื้อผ้าซื้อกล้องถ่ายรูป
6 จะไปร้านขายรองเท้าซื้อครีมกันแดด

(b) Translate

1 แว่นกันแดด วันนี้ลดราคา 20%!!

2 โรงหนังหยุด 1 วัน

3 วันนี้ร้านขายหนังสือไม่เปิด

4 ขอบคุณมากค่ะ

5 ขายบ้านไม่แพง

6 เรือขายถูก

7 ขายถูกมาก รถ Toyota Corona ปี '99 สีเทา ราคา 350,000 บาท

Exercise 10 Writing

Write notes to include in a letter:

1 Thailand is fun.
2 I like walking in the mountains.
3 We bought some grey shoes.
4 We eat in the hotel.
5 The pork is delicious.
6 There was a yellow plane at the airport.
7 I'm going to see a film.
8 It's cold today.
9 I met a friend.
10 Thank you very much.

5 Socialising

In this unit you will exchange pleasantries with acquaintances and people you have just met.

You will learn how to:

- talk about your stay in Thailand and knowledge of Thai
- ask and talk about what someone is doing
- ask questions with **réu yang**
- say how long you have been doing something
- use some past, present and future time expressions
- use possessives
- use vocabulary related to activities about the house, feelings and contacting someone

Dialogue 1

Ann pays her friend Maalee a visit and Maalee's husband opens the door.

SÒMBOON:	sawàtdee khráp khun Ann.
ANN:	sawàtdee khâ.
SÒMBOON:	kin khâo: réu yang khráp?
ANN:	yang khâ.
SÒMBOON:	Maalee tham kàp khâo: yòo khráp. yang mâi sèt. dĭo maa. chern nâng khráp.
ANN:	khàwpkhun khâ. Maalee tham kàp khâo: arai khá?
SÒMBOON:	phŏm kô mâi róo khráp. Maalee tham kàp khâo: aròi tàe cháa mâak khráp. séuh kàp khâo: thêe tàlàat rayo kwàa láeo kô thòok dûey. tàe Maalee châwp tham kàp khâo: ayng.
ANN:	láeo kô faen châwp bòn châi mái khá?

SÒMBOON:	*Hello, Ann.*
ANN:	*Hello.*
SÒMBOON:	*Have you eaten yet?*
ANN:	*Not yet.*
SÒMBOON:	*Maalee is cooking. She's not finished yet. She'll be here in a moment* (lit. 'soon come'). *Come and sit down.*
ANN:	*Thank you. What is Maalee cooking?*
SÒMBOON:	*I don't know. Maalee cooks delicious food but she's very slow. Buying food in the market is quicker and it's cheap, too. But she likes doing the cooking herself.*
ANN:	*And her husband likes complaining, doesn't he?*

Vocabulary

réu yang	question tag corresponding to questions with . . . yet?'
yang (short answer)	not yet
yòo (following a verb)	is doing something

tham kàp khâo:	to cook	**kàp khâo:**	food
yang mâi	not yet	**sèt**	to finish, complete
dĭo	in a moment	**chern**	please (lit. 'to invite')
kô	polite particle	**róo**	to know
tàe	but	**cháa**	slow
ayng	oneself	**faen**	partner, spouse
bòn	to complain		

Language points

Questions with réu yang

Questions with **réu yang** correspond to questions with 'has/have . . . yet?':

> **phaw réu yang?**
> Have you had enough (yet)?

yòo *indicating an action in progress*

yòo used after a verb emphasises that an action is still in progress and corresponds to the present continuous form of the verb in English. It is optional.

yang

yang mâi before a verb or adjective means 'not yet'. The short answer 'not yet' to a question is just **yang**. Normally **yang** without **mâi** means 'still':

yang kin khâo: yòo
He's still eating

sèt

sèt refers to something completed, such as a job you have done. It follows the action it refers to:

tham kàp khâo: sèt réu yang?
Have you finished cooking yet?

The particle kô

phŏm kô mâi róo khráp
I don't know (either)

kô has several meanings. Here it corresponds to 'either' and makes the answer sound less abrupt and more polite.

Culture points

Greetings

kin khâo: réu yang? is a common greeting and conversation opener, used especially up to the afternoon.

Behaviour when socialising

When entering a Thai home you should remove your shoes (this is also true for some shops and temple areas). It is also impolite to point with your feet, or sit with your feet outstretched or raised. Thais do not shake hands when greeting and will normally use a **wâi** greeting (with the hands about the same level as the chin). It is customary to show respect for older people by lowering your head when passing them.

faen

faen (boyfriend, girlfriend, husband or wife) is an informal word covering everything from a regular relationship to formally married partners. **mee faen réu yang?** is a common way of asking if someone has a partner.

Exercise 1

Tell a friend what these people are doing. The cues tell you where they are:

Example: 1 Maalee (in the dining room)
Maalee kin khâo: yòo

2 Dao: (in her office)
3 Sùnee (in a department store)
4 Maalee (in the swimming pool)
5 Daeng (in the kitchen)
6 Sŏmboon (in a fruit market)
7 Kàmon (in a bar)

Exercise 2

Ask your friend if he has done the following:

Example: 1 bought a pen
séuh pàak-kaa réu yang?

2 bought the food
3 been to the temple
4 finished cooking
5 gone home
6 finished his work
7 taken some photographs
8 used the mosquito repellent

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: about the house.

LISA:	Sùnee yòo thêe năi khá?
SŎMBOON:	yòo hâwng ráp khàek khráp.
LISA:	tham arai yòo khá?
SŎMBOON:	khui kàp phêuan khráp.

Vocabulary

hâwng ráp khàek	living room
ráp	to receive, take, get
khàek	guest
khui	to chat

Other words

hâwng nâng lên	sitting room	**hâwng tham ngaan**	study
hâwng nawn	bedroom	**nawn**	to lie down
hâwng khrua	kitchen	**àap náam**	to shower
phákphàwn	to rest	**àan**	to read
nangsěuh phim	newspaper	**nawn làp**	to sleep
thee wee	TV		

Exercise 3

Rewrite Dialogue 2 using the vocabulary given.

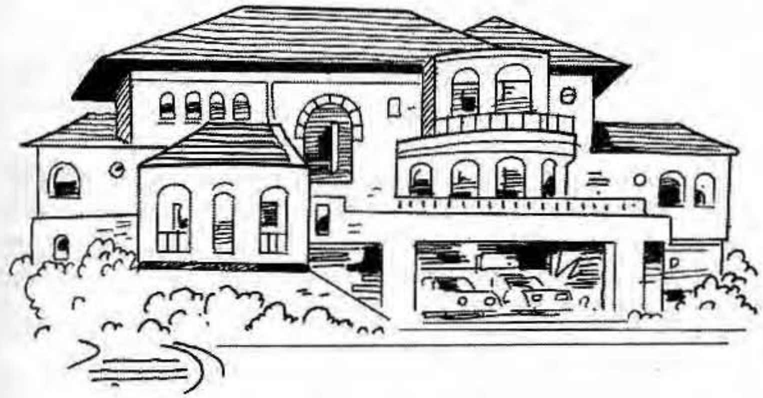
Example:

Lisa:	**Sùnee yòo thêe năi khá?**
SŎMBOON:	**yòo hâwng nawn khráp.**
	...

Culture points

Houses

In towns most Thai houses resemble those in the West except that baths are a rarity. In the countryside and poorer town houses there



may be a 'squat toilet' flushed by using a bowl of water and meals are often taken sitting on the floor. Rural houses are often wooden and raised to avoid flooding. Traditionally Thais have preferred to build a new house rather than buy a 'second-hand' one.



Television

Television is present in virtually every Thai household, though in rural areas large satellite dishes are needed to receive domestic programmes. Particularly popular are dramas (often historical or based on a family facing the pressures of modern society), game shows and comedy programmes ('comic' is **talòk** ตลก). Television actors and presenters, along with singers and a few sports people, are accorded star status.

Dialogue 3

Ann is waiting for the bus when a neighbour, Yài, starts chatting.

YÀI:	khun yòo meuang thai kèe pee láeo khráp?
ANN:	yòo sǎam pee láeo khâ.
YÀI:	rěuh khráp? khun phôot phaasǎa thai dâi: chát dee khráp.
ANN:	khàwpkhun mâak khâ. phôot dâi: nítnòi khâ. phaasǎa thai yâak mâak khâ.
YÀI:	jing rěuh khráp? phaasǎa angkrìt kô mâi ngâi: khráp. khun rian kèe pee láeo khráp?
ANN:	sǎwng pee láeo khâ.
YÀI:	kèng mâak khráp. khun ja yòo èek kèe pee khráp?
ANN:	khǎwthôht khâ. chán mâi khâo jai khâ.
YÀI:	khun ja yòo meuang thai èek naan mái khráp?
ANN:	èek nèung pee khâ. pee nâa chán ja klàp bâan khâ.
YÀI:	khít thěung bâan mái khráp?
ANN:	mâi khít thěung khâ. chán klàp bâan pee thêe láeo khâ. láeo kô yòo meuang thai sabai: khâ.

YÀI:	*How many years have you been in Thailand?*
ANN:	*I've been here for three years.*
YÀI:	*Really? You can speak Thai very clearly.*
ANN:	*Thank you very much. I can speak (it) a little. Thai is very difficult.*
YÀI:	*Is that true? English is not easy either. How many years have you studied it?*
ANN:	*Two years.*
YÀI:	*You're very good (at it). How many more years will you stay?*
ANN:	*I'm sorry, I don't understand.*
YÀI:	*Will you stay in Thailand for long?*
ANN:	*One year more. Next year I'll go back home.*
YÀI:	*Do you miss home?*
ANN:	*No, I don't. I went back home last year. And I feel good staying in Thailand.*

Vocabulary

phôot	speak	**phaasǎa**	language
chát	clear, clearly	**nítnòi**	a little
yâak	difficult	**angkrìt**	English, England
kô	linking particle	**ngâi:**	easy
rian	to study	**kèng**	to be good at something
khâo jai	to understand	**khâo**	to enter
khít thěung	to miss, to think about	**khít**	to think
thêe láeo	ago, last		

Culture points

Knowledge of languages

To compliment someone on their language ability use **chát** or **kèng**. To refer to a language use **phaasǎa** plus the name of the language. If you don't understand or didn't hear what someone said you can also ask **arai ná**? ('what did you say?')

Compliments

Thais commonly compliment each other on their appearance or dress (even between men). This is simply a way of making conversation rather than something to be taken literally. It is customary to thank someone for having paid a compliment and look for an opportunity to compliment them. It is, however, considered unlucky to compliment babies.

Language points

How long

Use the verb plus the period of time plus **láeo**:

yòo sǎam pee láeo
I've been here three years
verb + period + **láeo**

kô *as a linking particle*

Like **dûey**, **kô** can mean 'also' or 'too' and in negative sentences 'either'.

phaasăa angkrìt ngâi:. phaasăa thai kô ngâi:.
English is easy. Thai is easy too.

Either **kô** or **dûey** can be used if the subjects of the two clauses are different. If the subject is the same, only **dûey** is used:

khun phôot phaasăa thai chát. khun phôot phaasăa angkrìt chát dûey.
You speak Thai clearly. You speak English clearly as well.

èek

Use **èek** as follows:

- with verbs expressing a state:

  ja yòo èek nèung pee ('longer')

- with action verbs:

  ja maa èek ('again')

  èek săam wan ja pai chieng mài ('in three days')

- with things:

  ao kaafae èek mái?
  Do you want more coffee?

Past time expressions

Use **thêe láeo** ('last', 'ago') with any period of time, for example:

chán klàp bâan săam wan thêe láeo
I went home three days ago

Exercise 4

You're quizzing a Thai person you have met in your own country. Ask him some questions. Then use the figures in brackets to give his answers.

Example: 1 Ask him how many years he has lived here (5)
khun yòo thêe nêe kèe pee láeo?
phŏm yòo thêe nêe hâa pee láeo.

Ask how many:

2 months he has worked here (6)
3 months he has been studying English (3)
4 days he has been ill (4)
5 years he will stay here (2)
6 more months he will work here (9)
7 weeks he will go on holiday to Thailand (2)
8 more days he will stay in his hotel (3)

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: expressing your feelings.

A: khìt thěung bâan mái khráp?
B: khìt thěung khâ.
A: ngăo mái khráp?
B: ngăo khâ. chán mâi sabai: jai khâ.

Vocabulary

ngăo	lonely	**mâi sabai: jai**	unhappy
Other words			
klua	afraid	**kròht**	angry
ngûang (nawn)	sleepy	**nèuey**	tired
sĭa jai	sorry (i.e. sad)	**tèuhn tên**	excited
aarom dee/ mâi dee	to be in a good/bad mood		

Exercise 5

What words would you use to describe your feelings?

1 You learn you have just failed an exam.
2 You find a dangerous snake in your bedroom.
3 It's past your bedtime.
4 You find the taxi driver overcharged you.
5 Your spouse has gone away for three months.
6 You've just finished three hours overtime.
7 You have just arrived on your first holiday in Thailand.
8 You have just taken control of a hired car in Bangkok traffic.

Dialogue 5

Dao: brings a friend to meet Tony.

DAO:	nêe phêuan chán khâ. chêuh Nít khâ.
TONY:	sawàtdee khráp.
NIT:	sawàtdee khâ.
DAO:	Nít rian nangsĕuh thêe máhăawít-tháyaalai khâ.
TONY:	dee khráp.
NIT:	wan née Tony ja pai thîo thêe năi khá?
TONY:	ja pai thîo phíphít-thaphan khráp.
DAO:	ôh-hóh! nâa bèua mâak khâ. ráo ja pai thîo hâang séuh wâen kan dàet khâ. pai dûey kan mái khá?
TONY:	ja pai yang-ngai khráp?
DAO:	faen phêuan mee rót khâ.
TONY:	pai sèe khráp.

DAO:	*This is my friend. Her name is Nít.*
TONY:	*Hello.*
NIT:	*Hello.*
DAO:	*Nít is studying at the university.*
TONY:	*Good.*
NIT:	*Where are you going today, Tony?*
TONY:	*I'm going to the museum.*
DAO:	*Oh, (that's) very boring. We're going to the department store to buy sunglasses. Shall we go together?*
TONY:	*How are you going?*
Dao:	*My friend's husband has a car.*
TONY:	*Sure.*

Vocabulary

chêuh	name, to be called
rian nangsĕuh	to study
máhăawít-tháyaalai	university
wít-tháyaalai	college
phiphít-tháphan	museum
ôh-hóh	exclamation showing you're surprised or impressed
nâa bèua	boring, annoying
bèua	to be bored
sèe	sure!, really

Language points

The demonstrative pronoun nêe

When the demonstrative is a pronoun it has a falling tone (**nêe**): the adjective has a high tone (as in **an née**). Use **nêe** to:

- introduce someone or to give your name over the phone:

  nêe Tony khráp
  This is Tony

- ask or say what something is:

  nêe arai?
  What is this?

  nêe náam sôm
  This is orange juice

Possessives

Put the name of the owner or a pronoun substituting for it after the things owned.

bâan khun yòo thêe năi?
Where is your house?

The explicit marker of possession is **khăwng**

bâan khăwng Maalee sŭey
Maalee's house is pretty

khăwng is optional unless the noun it refers to is not mentioned:

nêe khăwng phŏm
This is mine

Asking someone's name

Use **chêuh arai**:

khun chêuh arai?
What's your name?

(phŏm) chêuh Ken
My name is Ken

Asking the names of things:

chêuh námtòk arai?
What's the name of the waterfall?

The prefix nâa

The prefix **nâa** followed by a verb often corresponds to the English -ing form of the verb, e.g. **nâa bèua** (boring). It can also mean 'worth doing something':

nâa doo worth looking at	**nâa kin** tasty-looking
nâa thîo worth visiting	**nâa yòo** looks nice to live in

The opposite of **nâa bèua** is **nâa sŏnjai**.

Place names

In names of places and institutions the word order is type of place + specific name:

Chiang Mai university
máhăawít-tháyaalai chieng mài

Dusit hotel
rohng raem Dùsìt

Don Muang airport
sanăambin Dawn Meuang

Culture points

Using names to refer to someone

When talking to someone you know you can use the nickname (**chêuh lên**) or **khun** with the formal name instead of 'you'. Women often use their own name instead of 'I'. The personal pronouns are used less often in Thai than in Western languages.

Exercise 6

Respond to these statements as in the example:

Example: 1 **rót khăwng Dùsìt lék**
rót (khăwng) phŏm mâi lék

2 bâan Dùsìt nâa yòo
3 naalíkaa khăwng Dùsìt phaeng
4 krapăo Dùsìt yài
5 phêuan Dùsìt klua
6 ngaan Dùsìt nâa sŏnjai
7 phêuan Dùsìt kròht
8 nangsĕuh khăwng Dùsìt nâa sŏnjai

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: Contacting someone.

A: khun phák thêe năi khráp?
B: phák thêe khawndoh khráp.
A: khăw ber thohrasàp khráp.
B: hâa sèe sŏon pàet hòk jèt khráp.

Vocabulary

phák	to stay somewhere temporarily
khawndoh	condominium
khăw	to request: 'may I have . . .?'
ber thohrasàp	phone number
thohrasàp	telephone
ber	number
sŏon	zero

Other words

apháatmáyn	apartment
thohrasàp meuh thĕuh	mobile phone
thĕuh	to carry
tìt tàw	to contact

Exercise 7

Tell someone:

1 you're staying in the Dùsìt hotel
2 your phone number is 053 867 419
3 you will contact them at home
4 your mobile number is 01859721

Ask someone:

5 where their apartment is
6 if they have a mobile
7 the name of their condominium
8 where her boyfriend is staying
9 her mobile phone number
10 the name of their hotel

Reading and writing

Consonants

ธ	ภ	ฤ	ษ
th	**ph**	**reu** *or* **ri**	**s**

Vowels

เ-ีย	เรียน	-ุย	คุย
ia	**rian**	**ui**	**khui**
_วย	ถ้วย	-ัว	กลัว
uey	**thûey**	**ua**	**klua**

The letter ว can be used as a consonant, e.g. วัน (**wan**); a vowel, e.g. ขวด (**khùat**); or part of a vowel combination, e.g. กลัว (**klua**), กล้วย (**klûey**).

Final consonants

These consonants change their pronunciation in final syllable position:

	Initial	*Final*
ล	**l**	**n**
จ	**j**	**t**
ข	**kh**	**k**
ส ษ	**s**	**t**
ร	**r**	**n**

Examples

ธุระ	ภาษา	อังกฤษ	ห้องครัว
thúrá	**phaasăa**	**angkrìt**	**hâwng khrua**

รถบัส	โรงพยาบาล	พูด	คิด	สวย	ด้วย
rót bát	**rohng phayaabaan**	**phôot**	**khít**	**sŭey**	**dûey**

กล้วย	สีน้ำตาล	ตำรวจ	อาหาร	ธนาคาร
klûey	**sěe nám taan**	**tamrùat**	**aahăan**	**thanaakhaan**

Exercise 8 Word study

Match the activities in column A to the rooms in column B:

A	*B*
นอนหลับ	ห้องน้ำ
ทำธุระ	ห้องรับแขก
อ่านหนังสือ	ห้องนอน
ดูทีวี	ห้องครัว
นั่งคุยกับเพื่อน	ห้องอาหาร
อาบน้ำ	ห้องทำงาน
กินข้าว	ห้องนั่งเล่น
พักผ่อน	
ทำกับข้าว	

Exercise 9 Reading

(a) Lifestyle questionnaire
Some people were asked what they liked doing in their free time. Translate their answers:

1 อ่านหนังสือ
2 ชอบดูทีวี
3 ถ่ายรูป เดินเล่น ว่ายน้ำ
4 ทำกับข้าว
5 ไม่ค่อยมี
6 นอนหลับ
7 ผมเรียนภาษาอังกฤษ
8 ชอบคุยกับเพื่อน
9 ไปร้านอาหารกินอาหารอร่อย
10 ชอบไปเดินห้างดูของสวย
11 ชอบไปชายทะเลว่ายน้ำ

(b) Translate:

1 เพื่อนไม่สบาย นอนที่โรงพยาบาล
2 ผมทำงานที่ธนาคาร
3 เรียนภาษาอังกฤษสนุก! เรียนภาษาอังกฤษง่าย!
วันนี้คุณพูดภาษาอังกฤษได้!
4 สถานีตำรวจอีก 100 เมตร
5 ปีหน้าผมจะเรียนภาษาไทยที่มหาวิทยาลัย

Exercise 10 Writing

Write notes to include in a letter:

1 I am learning Thai
2 (It's) not very hard
3 I like speaking Thai with friends
4 There are some Thai people working in a Thai restaurant here
5 I am going to the bank today, also to the hospital

6 Personal details

In this unit you will ask for and give personal information.

You will learn how to:

- talk about where you come from, your job and family
- describe people
- ask questions with **tham-mai**
- use the classifier **khon**
- use the verb **pen**
- refer to quantities
- talk about countries, ages, nationalities, occupations and places of work

Dialogue 1

Ken stops at a bar and chats to the waitress, Lék. What music does she like?

LÉK: khăwthôht khâ. khun maa jàak năi khá?
KEN: maa jàak Liverpool khráp.
LÉK: Liverpool yòo prathâyt arai khá?
KEN: yòo angkrìt khráp. khun róojàk 'The Beatles' mái khráp?
LÉK: mâi róojàk khâ.
KEN: maa jàak Liverpool mĕuan kan khráp.
LÉK: pen nák fútbawn rĕuh khá?
KEN: mâi châi khráp. pen nák ráwng khráp.
LÉK: chán mâi khôi châwp phlayng fàràng khâ.
KEN: khun châwp fang phlayng bàep năi khráp?
LÉK: châwp phlayng eesăan khâ.
KEN: khun pen khon thêe năi khráp?
LÉK: pen khon eesăan khâ. chán maa jàak khăwn kàen khâ.

Vocabulary

jàak	from
prathâyt	country
róojàk	to know (a person or place)
mĕuan kan	also, the same
pen	to be (followed by a noun)
nák fútbawn	footballer
nák	someone skilled in something (used in compounds)
fútbawn	football
ráwng	to sing
nák ráwng	singer
phlayng	song
fang	to listen to
bàep năi	what kind?
bàep	sort, pattern, model, style
eesăan	Isan, the northeast part of Thailand
khăwn kàen	Khon Kaen (town in northeast Thailand)

Language points

pen *('to be')*

pen meaning 'to be' is used only before nouns. The negative is **mâi châi**:

chán mâi châi khon angkrìt
I am not English

Countries and nationalities

prathâyt is the formal word for country. When referring to Thailand, say **prathâyt thai** or **meuang thai**. With other countries you can use the name of the country on its own. The names of most countries and all continents are the same in Thai as in English (with a Thai pronunciation). For example: **àmayríkaa, yer-raman, áwtsàtrelia, khaenaadaa, aysia, àefríkaa**. Some exceptions are: **yêepùn** ('Japan'), **jeen** ('China'), **fàràngsàyt** ('France').

Adjectives of nationality are the same as the name of the country. When giving your nationality use **khon** plus the adjective.

'kind of'

Use **yàang** or **bàep** for 'kind of':

phŏm kin aahăan săwng yàang
I ate two kinds of food

bàep née means 'like this':

rian bàep née mâi sanùk
Studying like this is not fun

Exercise 1

Rewrite this conversation using the vocabulary below:

LÉK: phêuan maa jàak năi khá?
TONY: maa jàak Boston khráp.
LÉK: Boston yòo prathâyt arai khá?
TONY: yòo thêe àmayríkaa khráp. kháo pen khon àmayríkaa.

Example: 1 **yêepùn**
LÉK: **phêuan maa jaak năi khá?**
TONY: **maa jaak Tokyo khráp.**
...

2 yer-raman
3 áwtsàtrelia
4 khaenaadaa
5 fàràngsàyt

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: other countries and regions.

A: khun maa jàak kaolĕe tâi rĕuh khá?
B: mâi châi khâ. maa jàak kamphoochaa. khun pen khon thêe năi khá?
A: maa jàak phâak nĕua khâ.

Vocabulary

kaolěe tâi	South Korea	**tâi**	south
kamphoochaa	Cambodia	**phâak**	part (of a country)
něua	north		

Other words

kaolěe něua	North Korea
phamâa	Burma (Myanmar)
lao:	Laos
phâak klaang	central Thailand
klaang	middle, central



Culture point

Thailand is commonly divided into four regions (**phâak**): north, south, the centre and Isan. There are differences in dialect and traditional customs between the three regions.

Exercise 2

Where are:

1 Angkor Wat
2 Thailand's best beaches
3 Pyongyang
4 Chiang Mai
5 Khon Kaen
6 Canada
7 Cape Town
8 The Amazon
9 Which is the most populated continent?
10 What countries can you see in the Golden Triangle?
11 Where do Hyundai cars come from?

Dialogue 3

Joe is waiting to pick his children up from school when a neighbour stops to chat. What do Joe and his neighbour say about their families?

NíT: ja pai nǎi khá?
JOE: pai ráp lôok thêe rohng rian khráp.
NíT: mee lôok kèe khon khá?
JOE: sǎwng khon khráp.
NíT: rěuh khá? phôochai: rěuh phôoyǐng khá?
JOE: phôochai: nèung khon phôoyǐng nèung khon khráp.
NíT: dee khâ. aayú thâorài khá?
JOE: lôok chai aayú sìp sèe pee. lôok sǎo: hòk khuap khráp.
NíT: lôok sǎo: kèrt thêe nêe rěuh khá?
JOE: khráp.

NÍT: sùan mâak khrâwpkhrua fàràng mee khon nói châi mái khá?
JOE: khráp.
NÍT: khrâwpkhrua thai mee lôok yér. chán mee lôok sìp sǎwng khon khâ. mâe chán kô mee lôok sìp sǎwng khon khâ.
JOE: phâw mâe yòo thêe eesǎan rěuh khráp?
NÍT: mâe yòo eesǎan khâ. phâw tai: láeo khâ.

Vocabulary

lôok	child, i.e. offspring ('child' in general is **dèk**)		
rohng rian	school		
phôochai:	male, man, boy		
phôoyǐng	female, woman, girl		
aayú	age	**lôok chai:**	son
lôok sǎo:	daughter	**sǎo:**	a young woman
khùap	year (when giving the age of a child up to 12)		
kèrt	to be born	**sùan mâak**	mostly
khrâwpkhrua	family	**nói**	a little, few
yér	a lot	**mâe**	mother
phâw mâe	parents	**phâw**	father
tai:	to die		

Language points

Classifier for people

Use the classifier **khon** when counting or referring to people:

mee lôok	**sǎwng**	**khon**	I have two children
noun	number	classifier	

Asking someone's age

Use **aayú** after the person you are referring to:

khun aayú thâorài?
How old are you?

phǒm aayú yêe sìp (pee)
I'm twenty years old

young **aayú nói** old **aayú mâak**

Quantities

yér follows the noun it refers to: use it with both countable and uncountable nouns:

mee khon yér
There are a lot of people

mee khon mâi yér
There are not many people

mee ngern yér
He has a lot of money

You can use **mâak** instead of **yér**:

mee ngern mâak
He has a lot of money

Use **nói** with both people and things to mean 'a little' or 'few':

mee khon nói
There are few (not many) people

mee ngern nói
He has little money

The words for numbers over a thousand are:

mèuhn
ten thousand

sǎen
one hundred thousand

láan
one million

raakhaa nèung láan sèe sǎen hòk mèuhn bàat
The price is 1,460,000 baht

Culture point

The family

Family ties are of great importance in Thai society. Children show respect and gratitude to parents and often support them. Family members often reunite and help each other. Most elderly people will live with a family member. Thais believe that living together under one roof encourages courtesy, tolerance and mutual respect.

Exercise 3

(a) You are interviewing a Thai manager, Ùdom, about the number of people he is in contact with. Ask about his family, friends, people in his office, children at the local school, people in his town. Then ask about the ages of his family.

Examples: **khun mee phêuan kèe khon?**
khun aayú thâorài?

(b) Use these notes to give someone the information:

	Numbers	*Ages*
Ùdom		53
wife		49
friends	6	
sons	1	18
daughters	2	23, 25
men in office	16	
women in office	98	
boys in school	130	
girls in school	187	
town population	120,000	
men	50,000	
women	70,000	

Examples: **mee phêuan hòk khon**
Ùdom aayú hâa sìp săam

Exercise 4

Describe these two towns by saying if there are many or few of the amenities shown (use **yér, mâak, mâi yér, mâi mâak** and **nói**):

Newtown



Oldsville



Example: **Newtown mee ráan nói. mee thêe thîo yér.**

	โรงเรียน	School
	โรงแรม	Hotel
	โรงพยาบาล	Hospital
	วัด	Temple
	ธนาคาร	Bank
	ช็อปปิ้ง	Shop
	ร้านอาหาร	Restaurant
	ที่เที่ยว	Places to visit

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: describing people.

A: faen Dao: làw mái khá?
B: làw khâ. sŏong. mee phŏm yao:.

Vocabulary

làw	good-looking, handsome (used of a man)		
sŏong	tall (of people or things)		
phŏm	hair	**yao:**	long

Other words

ûwan	fat	**phăwm**	thin (of people)
tîa	short (of people)	**tua lék**	small (of people)
tua yài	big (of a person)	**sài wâen taa**	to wear glasses
sài	to put on, wear, put in	**taa**	eye
sân	short (of things)		

Exercise 5

(a) Find words and phrases to describe these people:



Möo

Daeng

(b) Using the cues, ask someone some questions about their new boyfriend/girlfriend. Use **rĕuh** in some of your questions:

Example: 1 age
faen aayú mâak rĕuh aayú nói?

2 fat
3 handsome
4 height
5 hair
6 glasses
7 size

Dialogue 5

Gary is on his way to work and chats to one of his neighbours, Fáa, at the bus stop. How does he disappoint her?

FÁA: khun maa meuang thai tham-mai khá?
GARY: maa tham ngaan khráp.
FÁA: khun tham ngaan arai khá?
GARY: pen phôo jàt kaan khráp.
FÁA: tham ngaan kìo kàp arai khá?
GARY: tham ngaan thêe baw-risàt kìo kàp khawmpiutêr khráp.
FÁA: jing rĕuh khá? khrêuang chán mâi tham ngaan khâ. khun sâwm dâi: mái khá?
GARY: mâi dâi: khráp. phŏm mâi châi châang. phŏm pen phôo jàt kaan khráp. sâwm khrêuang mâi pen khráp.
FÁA: nâa sĭa dai: ná khá. khăwthôht khâ khun dâi ngern deuan thâorài khá?
GARY: mâi mâak thâorài khráp.
FÁA: phôo jàt kaan tâwng dâi ngern deuan yér nâe nawn khâ.

Vocabulary

tham-mai	why	**phôo jàt kaan**	manager
phôo	person	**jàt**	to arrange
kìo kàp	concerning	**baw-risàt**	company
khawmpiutêr	computer	**khrêuang**	machine, classifier for machines
sâwm	to repair	**châang**	skilled worker

pen	to be able to	**nâa sĭa dai:**	what a shame
dâi	to get	**ngern deuan**	salary
mâi . . . thâorài	not very . . .	**tâwng**	must
nâe nawn	certain, for sure		

Language points

Questions with tham-mai

tham-mai can come either at the beginning or at the end of the question:

tham-mai khun maa meuang thai?
Why did you come to Thailand?

tham-mai khun mâi klap bâan?
Why don't you go home?

khun mâi klap bâan tham-mai?

In informal spoken Thai **tham-mai** is more common at the end of the sentence in affirmative questions but this can sound insistent or even terse.

pen *expressing ability*

pen is used to indicate something you know how to do or are accustomed to doing:

kin phèt pen mái?
Can you eat spicy food?
(i.e. are you accustomed to eating it?)

Like **dâi:**, **pen** is used after the verb it relates to. When **pen** refers to ability, the negative is **mâi pen**, not **mâi châi**:

kin phèt mâi pen
I can't eat spicy food

dâi: is the general word for 'can' and refers to what you are allowed or physically able to do.

dâi: *and* dâi

Both verbs are spelled the same but differ in their vowel length. **dâi:** meaning 'can' follows a verb and has a long vowel. **dâi** can be used as a main verb ('to get') and has a short vowel.

Exercise 6

Ask someone for some reasons. Ask why they:

Example: 1 came to England
maa angkrìt tham-mai?

2 came to work in Bangkok
3 went to Cambodia
4 bought a computer
5 went to a school
6 went to the south of Thailand
7 don't like Western music
8 don't buy food in the market

Exercise 7

Use **pen**, **mâi pen**, **kèng**, **mâi kèng** or **pen tàe mâi kèng** to say if you can do these things. Then ask someone if they are able to or are good at doing the same things.

Example: 1 drive a car
chán khàp rót pen
khun khàp rót pen mái?

2 cook
3 eat spicy food
4 use a computer
5 sing Thai songs
6 repair a car
7 swim
8 speak Japanese

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: occupations and places of work.

A: faen tham ngaan thêe năi khráp?
B: tham ngaan thêe rohng phayaabaan khâ.
A: pen phayaabaan rěuh khráp?
B: mâi châi khâ. pen măw khâ.

Vocabulary

phayaabaan	nurse
mǎw	doctor
Other words	
phánák ngaan khǎi:	sales person
phánák ngaan	staff
nák thúrákìt	businessman/woman
jâo khǎwng	owner
khon khàp rót	driver
laykhǎanúkaan	secretary
phánák ngaan sèrp	waiter (waitress)
kúk	cook, chef
sathǎanthôot	embassy
nák kaan thôot	diplomat
aajaan	university or senior teacher
khroo	schoolteacher
yaam	guard
baw-risàt imphàwt eksáphàwt	import/export company

Culture point

Thais at work

Thais show particular respect to people in professions that show someone is educated (for example, teachers or doctors), to government officials and to people with high-salaried jobs. Within an organisation it is customary to show deference to superiors. Few Thais would argue openly with their boss. Enjoying the company of colleagues is an important part of job satisfaction and, in comparison with output and efficiency, tends to be given higher priority than in the West.

Exercise 8

Say where these people work and suggest their occupation:

	Name	*Place of work*
1	Nít	restaurant
2	Alan	embassy
3	Ùdom	import/export company
4	Sùnee	university
5	Yài	hospital
6	Chûm	computer shop
7	Lék	school
8	Dao:	clinic
9	Kàmon	museum

Example: **Nít tham ngaan thêe ráan aahǎan. pen phánák ngaan sèrp/kúk.**

Reading and writing

Consonants

ฝ	ศ	ญ	ฬ
f	**s** (**t** in final position)	**y** (**n** in final position)	**l**
ฝน	ฝรั่งเศส	เชิญ	กีฬา
fǒn	**fàràngsàyt**	**chern**	**keelaa**

Vowels

เ–ียว	–ึ	แ–ว	เ–ือย	–ิว	เ–็ว
io	**eu**	**aeo**	**euey**	**iu**	**ayo**
สีเขียว	ครึ่ง	แก้ว	เหนื่อย	วิว	เร็ว
sěe khǐo	**khrêung**	**kâeo**	**nèuey**	**wiu**	**rayo**

The sign –็ shortens the vowels เ and แ:

เป็น	เจ็ด	เผ็ด	เล็ก
pen	**jèt**	**phèt**	**lék**

It is also used in one word without a vowel: ก็ (**kô**).

Silent consonants

The sign ◌์ indicates that a consonant is not pronounced. It is often used in foreign words with consonant clusters:

อพาร์ทเม้นท์	อาจารย์	หนังสือพิมพ์
apháatmáyn	**aajaan**	**nangsěuh phim**
อาทิตย์	คอมพิวเตอร์	
aathít	**khawmpiutêr**	

Examples

คิดถึง	ที่แล้ว	แถว	ประเทศ
khít thěung	**thêe láeo**	**thǎeo**	**prathâyt**
โทรศัพท์	ศูนย์	ญี่ปุ่น	นาฬิกา
thohrasàp	**sǒon**	**yêepùn**	**naalíkaa**
เที่ยว	ผู้หญิง	เกี่ยวกับ	เปรี้ยว
thîo	**phôoyǐng**	**kìo kàp**	**prîo**

Exercise 9 Word study

Match the words with opposite or contrasting meanings:

ธุระ	ถูก	ใต้	หวาน
เปรี้ยว	เตี้ย	อ้วน	ช้า
เล็ก	น่าสนใจ	น่าเบื่อ	ใหญ่
เร็ว	สั้น	แพง	เหนือ
สูง	เที่ยว	ยาว	ผอม

Exercise 10 Reading

(a) Translate:

1 ซื้อ ขาย ซ่อม โทรศัพท์มือถือ
2 ขายอพาร์ทเม้นท์สวย
3 ซ่อมนาฬิกา
4 โรงเรียนภาษาอังกฤษเปิดแล้ว
5 ผู้หญิงคนฝรั่งเศสซื้อหนังสือพิมพ์
6 แถวนี้มีไปรษณีย์ไหม?
7 ผมต้องไปไปรษณีย์แล้วก็จะไปสนามกีฬา พรุ่งนี้จะไปสวนสัตว์

(b) Note the job, nationality and family details for each member of this family:

ผมเป็นเจ้าของร้านขายนาฬิกา
แฟนเป็นนักธุรกิจเป็นผู้จัดการบริษัทอิมพอร์ตเอ็กสพอร์ต
เป็นคนญี่ปุ่น
ลูกชายเป็นอาจารย์ที่มหาวิทยาลัย แฟนเป็นพนักงานธนาคาร
เป็นคนฝรั่งเศส
ลูกสาวเป็นพยาบาล แฟนเป็นหมอเป็นคนเกาหลีใต้
มีลูกชายหนึ่งคนอายุสี่ขวบ

Exercise 11 Writing

Write notes to include in a letter:

1 I like French food
2 Thai food is spicy
3 Japan is beautiful
4 Japanese food is not spicy
5 Canada (แคนาดา) is very cold
6 Germany (เยอรมัน) is worth visiting
7 Australia (ออสเตรเลีย) is very big
8 China (จีน) is bigger and was fun
9 South Korea is very interesting
10 Cambodia (กัมพูชา) is beautiful
11 The Burmese (พม่า) language is very difficult

7 Look at that!

In this unit you will comment on places you visit and on what's going on around you.

You will learn how to:

- use relative clauses
- tell someone what to do and give directions
- use time phrases with **mêua**
- express wants
- talk about places, vehicles and the weather

Dialogue 1

Kâeo is taking Joe sightseeing. Joe spots someone he knows and an interesting looking building. How old is the building they are looking at?

JOE:	khun doo phôoyǐng khon nán sì khráp.
KÂEO:	khon nǎi khráp?
JOE:	khon thêe sài wâen kan dàet khráp.
KÂEO:	khun róojàk kháo mái khráp? doo měauan daaraa thee wee.
JOE:	kháo pen faen phêuan phǒm khráp.
KÂEO:	rěuh khráp?
JOE:	nân tèuk arai khráp?
KÂEO:	nân wát khráp. pai doo mái khráp?
JOE:	pai khráp. sǔey khráp.
KÂEO:	wát née kào mâak khráp. pramaan sǎam rói pee khráp.
JOE:	doo měauan mài. ngîap. mâi hěn mee phrá yòo.
KÂEO:	mâi mee khrai yòo khráp.
JOE:	tônmái sǒong. aakàat yen sabai: khráp.

KÂEO:	châi khráp. dee kwàa thanǒn yài châi mái khráp?
JOE:	dee kwàa yér khráp.

Vocabulary

nán	that (adjective)	**sì**	polite particle used in requests
thêe	who, which	**doo měauan**	looks like
měauan	like, the same as	**daaraa**	star, celebrity
nân	that (pronoun)	**tèuk**	building
kào	old (of things)	**mài**	new, again
ngîap	quiet	**hěn**	to see (note: 'can see' is just **hěn**)
phrá	monk	**tônmái**	tree
sǒong	tall (of people or things)	**thanǒn**	street

Language points

Demonstratives

nán and **nóhn** both mean 'that' or 'those'. **nóhn** refers to something further away than **nán:**

ao khùat nán
I'll have that bottle

yòo bâan nóhn
He lives in that house (way over there)

As with **nêe,** the pronouns and adverbials have a falling tone:

nân wát
That's a temple

rót khǎwng khun yòo thêe nôhn
Your car is way over there

Relative clauses with thêe

thêe in relative clauses means 'who(m)', or 'which':

bâan thêe kháo séuh yài mâak
The house which she bought is very big

Question words with mái?

mee khrai yòo mái?	Is anybody here?
ja pai nǎi mái?	Are you going anywhere?
ja kin arai mái?	Are you going to eat anything?

Question words with mâi

mâi mee khrai yòo	There's nobody in
mâi mee arai	There's nothing
mâi pai nǎi	I'm not going anywhere

Culture point

Monks and temples

Some monks remain so for life but many young men spend only a short time as monks, being encouraged to spend from two weeks to three months as a monk to show their gratitude to their parents. Many temples also have novice monks, boys as young as eight or nine who also attend school there. Nuns are regarded as laity and follow fewer precepts than monks.

Temples consist of a number of buildings in a compound – the word **wát** refers to the whole compound. Most Thais visit temples to pray only on special occasions, however in the countryside the temple is the focus of village life.

Exercise 1

You are pointing out some people at a party.

Example: 1 Point out the man who is wearing glasses
phôochai: thêe sài wâen taa

Now point out the man or woman who:

2 has a mobile
3 works at the embassy
4 came with a driver
5 has long hair
6 is wearing sunglasses and has short hair
7 is speaking with Ùdom
8 looks ill

Exercise 2

Translate:

1 I can't see anybody.
2 I can't see anything.
3 Nobody came.
4 My friend isn't going anywhere.
5 Is anybody going?
6 He looks like a footballer.
7 It looks like it's going to rain.
8 Look at that singer.

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: commenting on places you visit.

A: khun châwp thêe nêe mái khá?
B: chŏei chŏei khráp. sa-àat khráp.
A: chán mâi châwp khâ. sĭang dang.

Vocabulary

chŏei chŏei	indifferent, so-so	**sa-àat**	clean
sĭang dang	noisy	**sĭang**	noise
dang	loud		

Other words

hǎwm	to smell good	**mĕn**	to smell bad
nâa klìat	ugly, disgusting	**klìat**	to hate
sòk-kapròk	dirty		

Exercise 3

Choose words to describe how you feel about:

1 a rubbish tip
2 a pleasant garden
3 an efficient hospital
4 a badly run hospital
5 a hygienic restaurant with uninteresting food
6 an unpleasant restaurant

Dialogue 3

Ùdom is giving Steve a lift home in his car. Where is Steve's house located?

STEVE: rót tìt.
ÙDOM: tìt thúk thêe khráp.
STEVE: ráwang rót mawtersai khráp! antarai:.
ÙDOM: phôochai: khon nán mao nâe nawn.
STEVE: ráwang ná khráp! kèuap chon tônmái khráp. jai yen yen ná khráp. khàp rót cháa cháa ná khráp. plàwtphai kwàa khráp. thêe krungthâyp mee ùbàt hàyt yér.
ÙDOM: châi khráp. mee panhăa yér kìo kàp lăi: yàang. pai thaang năi khráp?
STEVE: trong pai khráp láeo kô lío khwăa thêe soi néc ná khráp.
ÙDOM: pai èek mái khráp?
STEVE: pai èek nòi khráp. loei sèe yâek bâan phŏm yòo sái: meuh khráp.
thĕung láeo khráp. jàwt thêe nêe khráp.

Vocabulary

tìt	stick, get stuck	**thúk**	every
thúk thêe	everywhere	**rót mawtersai**	motorcycle
mao	drunk	**chon**	crash (into)
jai yen yen	calm down!	**jai yen**	calm
plàwtphai	safe		
ùbàt hàyt	accident	**panhăa**	problem
lăi: yàang	many things	**lăi:**	many
trong pai	straight ahead	**lío**	turn
soi	side street	**nòi**	just a little
loei	further, beyond		
sèe yâek	intersection (of four roads)	**yâek**	to separate
thĕung	to arrive	**jàwt**	to stop, park (a car)

Language points

'Every', thúk

thúk used with a time word (e.g. month, year) or with a place normally comes at the end of the clause:

kháo maa thîo meuang thai thúk pee
He comes to Thailand on holiday every year

thúk khon ja pai
Everyone will go

Adverbs

An adjective does not change when used as an adverb of manner:

ráan dee	The shop is good
kin dee	to eat well

Put the negative **mâi** before the adverb:

phŏm khàp rót mâi rayo
I don't drive fast

Doubling of adverbs and adjectives

jai yen yen	Calm down!

Short adjectives and adverbs said twice with the same tone often qualify the meaning (rather like -ish) in English and can express approval or encouragement:

nâng dee dee	sit properly
meuang lék lék	a smallish town
sabai: sabai:	to feel relaxed and contented

Doubling an adjective can also indicate the preceding noun is plural:

châwp doo khăwng sŭey sŭey
I like looking at pretty things

Referring to things

yàang is used to refer to unspecified things or actions:

phǒm tâwng tham lǎi: yàang
I have to do a lot of things

thúk yàang
everything

To refer to real objects (especially possessions) use **khǎwng**:

mee khǎwng yér
He has a lot of things

Telling someone what to do

jàwt thêe nêe khráp
Stop here

To be more polite add **dâi: mái?**

jàwt thêe nêe dâi: mái khráp?
Can you stop here?

Culture points

jai yen

For Thais, staying calm is a quality to be admired. The opposite is **jai ráwn** (hot-tempered).

Addresses, thêe yòo

There are two kinds of streets in Thai towns and villages. The main roads are **thanǒn** and have names. The side streets off them are **soi** and are usually numbered. Thai addresses usually have a house number, the **soi** name or number, the street, the sub-district (**tambon**), the district (**ampher**), the province (**jangwàt**) and the post code (**rahàt praisànee**), e.g.:

123/90, soi 4, thanǒn Rattanakosin, tambon (or T.) Sri Phoom, ampher (or A.) meuang, Chiang Mai, 50221

ampher meuang the city central areas



Traffic

Thailand is reportedly in the top ten countries for traffic accidents, which are particularly prevalent during the Songkran holiday. Motorcyclists are at particular risk – small motorcycles are abundant and often ridden by children. Outside the towns pick-up trucks outnumber cars.

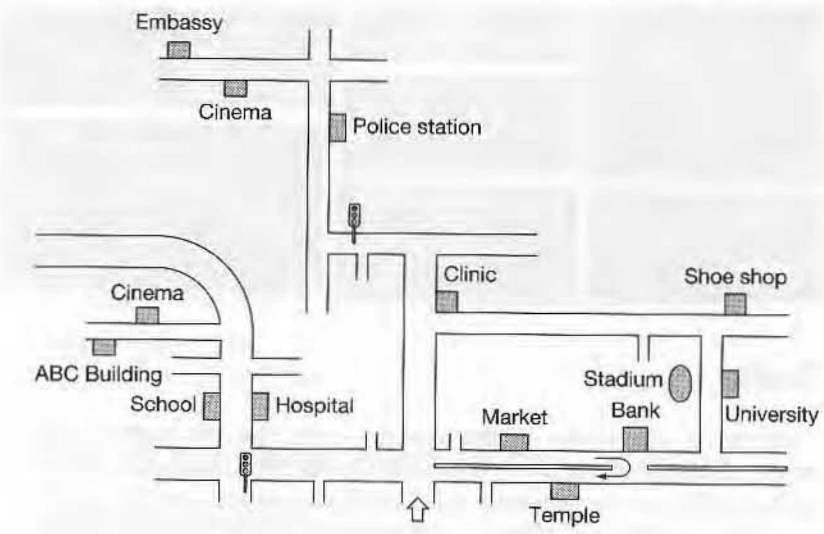
Giving directions: useful vocabulary

phàan	pass by somewhere		
klàp rót	U-turn		
kàwn thěung	before (reaching somewhere)		
sǎam yâek	T-junction	**trong khâam**	opposite
khâam	to cross	**fai daeng**	traffic light

Exercise 4

Look at the plan on page 120. Where will these directions take you?

1 lío khwǎa láeo kô trong pai. pai èek nèung rói máyt. klàp rót trong khâam thanaakhaan. yòo sái: meuh.
2 lío sái: thěung fai daeng láeo khâam thanǒn yài. lío khwǎa láeo kô loei sèe yâek lío sái: phàan rohng nǎng. yòo sái: meuh.
3 trong pai. lío sái: thêe sǎam yâek. loei fai daeng lío khwǎa. thěung sathǎanee tamrùat láeo trong pai èek hâa sìp máyt láeo kô lío sái:. yòo khwǎa meuh.
4 trong pai láeo kô lío khwǎa thêe khlíník. kàwn thěung ráan khai: rawng tháo lío khwǎa. yòo khwǎa meuh.



Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: vehicles in town.

A: nâng rót tháeksêe pai mái?
B: nâng rót túk túk dee kwàa. rót tháeksêe phaeng.
A: tàe nâng rót tháeksêe sabai: kwàa.

Vocabulary

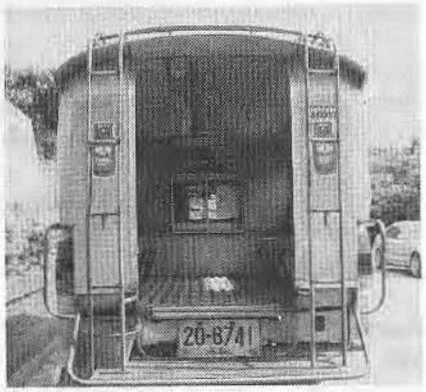
(rót) tháeksêe	taxi
(rót) túk túk	three-wheel taxi
Other words	
rót ae	air-conditioned city bus
(rót) sǎwng thǎeo	communal taxi

Culture point

Urban transport

Bangkok is well supplied with metred taxis; elsewhere **sǎwng thǎeo** are normal. Some of the latter have set routes, in others





the route depends on the passengers. In all major towns there are **túk túk** and in many there are motorcycle taxis – which you take at your own risk. Bangkok is notorious for its traffic jams but these have eased considerably with the coming of the skytrain (**rót fai fáa**) and, in 2004, an underground railway (**rót fai tâi din**).

Exercise 5

Rewrite Dialogue 4 using this table:

	Advantage	*Disadvantage*
three-wheel taxi	quick	dangerous
communal taxi	numerous	slow
bus	cheap	crowded

Example: A: **nâng rót túk túk pai mái?**

. . .

Dialogue 5

Dao: is calling her friend Tony who is on holiday in Chiang Mai. What has gone wrong with his holiday?

DAO:	aakàat thêe chieng mài pen yang-ngai bâang khá?
TONY:	yâe mâak khráp. fõn tòk thúk wan. mâi mee dàet khráp.
DAO:	rěuh khá? ráwang yung kàt ná khá.
TONY:	nâa bèua mâak khráp. ja pai thêe năi lambàak mâak.
DAO:	tham-mai rěuh khá?
TONY:	fõn tòk nàk. thanŏn kô mâi dee khráp.
DAO:	deuan née pen nâa fõn khâ. thúk pee aakàat pen bàep née.
TONY:	thêe krungthâyp fõn tòk mái khráp?
DAO:	mêua cháo fõn tòk khâ. tawn née yùt láeo khâ.
TONY:	thêe nêe fõn tòk èek láeo khráp. náam thûam.
DAO:	rěuh khá?
TONY:	phŏm yàak klàp krungthâyp khráp. thêe nêe mâi sanùk.

Vocabulary

pen yang-ngai bâang		what's it like? how is it?	
yâe	terrible	**kàt**	to bite
lambàak	difficult (physically)	**nàk**	heavy, excessively
nâa	season	**mêua cháo**	this morning
èek láeo	again	**náam thûam**	flood
yàak	to want		

Language points

bâang

bâang ('some') is used to ask about things in the plural. It also makes questions less specific and more polite:

khun séuh arai?
What did you buy? (what exactly)

khun séuh arai bâang?
What did you buy? (tell me some things you bought)

pen yang-ngai bâang is a polite way of asking how someone is.

Culture point

Seasons

There are three seasons in Thailand:

nâa fõn	June or July to October
nâa ráwn	March to May/June
nâa năo:	November to February

Morning, afternoon and night

tawn cháo	around daylight till midday
tawn bài:	midday until 4 or 5 p.m.
tawn yen	late afternoon, early evening
tawn klaang kheuhn	night-time
klaang wan	daytime

Time phrases with mêua

mêua refers to past time. **mêua cháo (née)** refers to something earlier this morning. **cháo née** on its own refers to present or future time:

cháo née ja pai hâang
This morning I'm going to the store

The same applies to **bài: née and yen née**.

Yesterday and tomorrow

mêua waan née	yesterday
mêua waan tawn cháo (tawn bài:, tawn yen)	yesterday morning (afternoon, evening)
mêua kheuhn née	last night
phrŭng née cháo (bài:, yen)	tomorrow morning (afternoon, evening)
kheuhn phrŭng née	tomorrow night

Other uses of mêua

mêua kêe (née)	a moment ago
mêua kàwn	in the past

chán jer Ùdom mêua kêe
I met Ùdom a moment ago

mêua kàwn chán pen khroo
In the past I was a teacher

Expressing wants

yàak must be followed by a verb or adjective (**ja** is optional):

yàak (ja) séuh rót mawtersai
I want to buy a motorcycle

yàak sŭey
I want to be pretty

To say 'want something' use **yàak dâi**

yàak dâi naalíkaa
I want a watch

yàak is used in the Thai word for 'to be curious':

yàak róo yàak hĕn

Exercise 6

Answer the questions by saying you do not want to do what is suggested but want to do something else:

Example: 1 **pai thîo chai: thalay mái?**
mâi yàak pai thîo chai: thalay. yàak pai thîo hâang

2 pai ráan aahăan fàràngsàyt mái?
3 pai thîo yêepùn mái?
4 jàwt thêe sàthăanee tamrùat mái?
5 kin phàt thai mái?
6 pai thîo phíphít-thaphan mái?
7 nâng rót táeksêe pai mái?
8 pai doo năng mái?

Exercise 7

You have been asked to tell the police your movements over the last few days. Use these notes:

Example: Yesterday
1 had a car accident (a.m.)
mêua waan née tawn cháo mee ùbàt hàyt rót chon kan

Yesterday

2 went to see a friend (a.m.)
3 studied at home (p.m.)
4 went to a restaurant (p.m. late)
5 went to a movie (night)

Today

6 went to the doctor (a.m.)
7 went to a museum (a.m.)
8 went to the embassy (p.m.)

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: the weather.

A: aakàat thêe chieng mài pen yang-ngai bâang khá?
B: mâi nǎo: khráp.
A: mee dàet mái khá?
B: mâi mee khráp. mâyk yér. lom raeng dûey.

Vocabulary

mâyk	cloud	**lom**	wind
raeng	strong		

Other words

dàet àwk	the sun is shining	**àwk**	to go out
phaayú	storm	**himá**	snow
hâeng	dry	**pìak**	wet

Exercise 8

1 How would these people describe the weather?

(a) Steve – on a skiing holiday, complains
(b) Ann – enjoying her skiing
(c) Tom – says the weather spoiled his beach holiday
(d) Di – having a great time on the beach

2 Warn a friend about some extreme weather that has been forecast.

Reading and writing

Consonants

ฆ (uncommon)	**kh**, **k** (final)	ฉ	**ch**
เมฆ	**mâyk**	ฉัน	**chán**

Vowels

เ_อะ	**er**	เยอะ	**yér**
เ_ย	**oei**	เลย	**loei**

ะ can be used with some other vowels to make short vowels ending in a glottal stop.

The signs ๆ and ฯ

ๆ means a word is repeated:

เฉย ๆ
chŏei chŏei

ฯ means a word has been abbreviated: กรุงเทพฯ **krungthâyp**

The third tone marker

This gives a syllable a high tone and is uncommon.

รถตุ๊กตุ๊ก

Exercise 9 Word study

Match the words with similar meanings:

รู้จัก	เย็น
เอา	คุย
อร่อย	ปี
สวย	อยาก
หนาว	กับข้าว
อาหาร	รู้
พูด	หล่อ
ขวบ	น่ากิน

Exercise 10 Reading

(a) Note what is advertised and its main attractions:

โรงแรมเปิดใหม่ ห้องพัก 110 ห้อง ห้องสะอาด ปลอดภัย ไม่แพง
ร้านอาหารไทยกับคาราโอเกะ วิวสวย

(b) A weather forecast. Note what weather is forecast for each region:

อากาศวันนี้
กรุงเทพฯ ตอนเช้ามีเมฆมากกับมีฝนตกหนัก ตอนบ่ายมีลมแรง
ภาคเหนือ มีเมฆ ตอนเช้าอากาศหนาวกับมีฝนเล็กน้อย
ลมความเร็ว 15–30 กม./ชม. (กิโลเมตร/ชั่วโมง)
ภาคใต้ ตอนเช้าอากาศเย็น ตอนบ่ายมีแดด ทะเลมีคลื่นสูง

ความ	prefix which turns an adjective or verb into a noun
คลื่น	wave

(c) Translate these directions:

ตรงไปแล้วก็เลี้ยวขวาที่สี่แยก มีโรงหนังซ้ายมือ เลยโรงหนัง

ไปอีกหน่อย ประมาณห้าสิบเมตรมีไฟแดง
ตรงไปอีกหนึ่งร้อยเมตรจะถึงบ้านผม

Exercise 11 Writing

Write directions to a friend on how to get to your office:

Go past the police station about 200 metres then turn left at the T-junction.

Go straight on (when you) reach the traffic lights turn right then you'll reach my office.

8 Out and about

In this unit you will discuss food, do some more bargaining and give details of something you are looking for.

You will learn how to:

- order a meal
- express desirability and necessity
- tell someone not to do something
- use classifiers
- use prepositions and adverbials of place
- talk about food and money

Dialogue 1

Sùphachai has invited Lisa to a seafood restaurant. What does Lisa agree to do the next day?

SÙPHACHAI: khǎw maynoo dûey khráp. sàng arai dee? thêe nêe aahǎan thalay sòt khráp. mee arai bâang khráp?
WAITRESS: mee kûng, mee plaa, mee poo. ao arai dee khá?
LISA: chán mâi châwp aahǎan thalay khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: rěuh khráp? khǎw tôm yam thalay nèung thêe khráp.
LISA: láeo kô khlab saenwít nèung thêe khâ.
WAITRESS: khâ. ja ao khrêuang dèuhm arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI: khǎw náam dèuhm nèung khùat khráp.
WAITRESS: khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: ao arai èek mái khráp?
LISA: mâi ao khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: tham-mai kin nít dio khráp?
LISA: ìm láeo khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: mâi hǐu khâo: rěuh khráp?

LISA: kin yér ja ûwan khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: khun tâwng àwk kamlang kai: khráp. tèuhn cháo láeo kô pai wîng khráp.
LISA: chán mâi châwp tèuhn cháo khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: phrûng née ja pai ráp thêe bâan láeo kô pai wîng dûey kan.
LISA: phrûng née rěuh? kô dâi: khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: yàa leuhm ná khráp.



Vocabulary

maynoo	menu	**sàng**	to order
aahăan thalay	seafood	**sòt**	fresh
plaa	fish	**poo**	crab
thêe	an order (for ordering food)	**tôm yam**	spicy soup
yam	spicy salad	**khlab saenwít**	club sandwich
khrêuang dèuhm	drink (noun)	**nít dio**	just a little
ìm	full (i.e. had enough to eat)	**hĭu khâo:**	hungry
àwk kamlang kai:	to exercise		

tèuhn	wake up (of oneself, not wake someone up)		
cháo	early in the morning		
wîng	to run	**yàa**	don't
leuhm	forget		

Language points

Ordering dishes

Use this word order:

ao/khăw	**bia**	**săwng**	**khùat**
verb	object	number	units

thêe can be used for any food or drink:

ao khâo: phàt săwng thêe
I'll have two portions of fried rice

Expressing desirability and necessity

tâwng means 'must' but, especially when making suggestions, is often used when we would use 'should' in English.

khun tâwng àwk kamlang kai:
You must (or 'should') exercise

To say something is not necessary, use **mâi tâwng**:

mâi tâwng pai khon dio
You don't have to go on your own

Telling someone not to do something

Use **yàa** plus a verb:

yàa khàp rayo mâak ná khráp
Don't drive fast

Ask someone politely not do something with **mâi tâwng**:

mâi tâwng sài náam
Don't put any water in

Culture points

Meals and food

aahăan cháo	breakfast
aahăan klaang wan	lunch
aahăan yen	evening meal
aahăan jay	vegetarian food

hĭu alone means 'hungry'; 'thirsty' is **hĭu náam**. **kin** is the common informal word for 'to eat'. A more formal word is **thaan**.

Asking 'how much' in a restaurant

In a restaurant where you will be brought a bill, say: **chék bin (dûey)**.

chék bin	bill in a restaurant

In other restaurants and food stalls, say: **kèp tang (dûey)**.

kèp	to collect
tang	short for **sataang**



Calling a waiter

Use **khun khráp (khâ)**.

Exercise 1

What would you tell your friend in these situations? Use **tâwng** or **mâi tâwng** or **yàa . . . ná**:

Example: 1 He has an upset stomach but orders spicy food
yàa thaan aahăan phèt ná

2 He's been working too hard.
3 He's hot and sweating.
4 He's exceeding the speed limit.
5 He's always late for meetings.
6 He's interested in prehistory.
7 He's covered in mosquito bites.
8 He's leaving the house without his wallet.

Exercise 2

Order these drinks and dishes:

Example: 1 a spicy fish soup
khăw tôm yam plaa

2 a spicy prawn soup
3 two bottles of beer
4 four bottles of drinking water
5 a glass of iced coffee
6 two crab fried rice
7 three spicy seafood salads

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: some other dishes.

A: khăw khâo: phàt kài nèung jaan. mâi sài khài ná khráp. láeo kô ao kwŭey tĭo sên lék náam sài néua.
B: ja dèuhm arai khá?
A: khăw náam manao: săwng kâeo. mâi sài nám taan ná khráp.

Vocabulary

jaan	plate (use for ordering rice dishes)		
khài	egg	**kwŭey tĭo**	noodles
sên	thread	**kwŭey tĭo náam**	noodles in soup
néua	beef, meat	**nám taan**	sugar
Other words			
thâwt	deep fried	**yâang**	barbecued
nêung	steamed	**phrík**	chilli
kwŭey tĭo hâeng	dry noodles		
phàt phàk ruam	stir-fried mixed vegetables		
ruam	mixed		

Culture points

Food and food stalls

Towns in Thailand have numerous roadside and market food stalls. Stalls selling noodles are common and you specify whether you want them small and round or large and flat. Other stalls sell food cooked to order (**aahăan taam sàng**). In towns many Thais buy food out more often than cooking it at home. Thais tend not to have set times for meals.

Eating Thai food

Thais eat most dishes with a fork and spoon. The fork is held in the left hand and is used to push food onto the spoon. It is considered rude to put a fork into one's mouth. Dry noodles are eaten with chopsticks, and noodle soups with a spoon and chopsticks. Sticky rice (**khâo: nĭo**), eaten in the north and northeast, is rolled into balls and eaten with the fingers.

Exercise 3

Rewrite Dialogue 3 to fit these orders:

Example: 1 steamed fish with lime, no chilli (2); mixed vegetables (2); coconut juice with sugar (1)
A: **khăw plaa nêung manau săwng thêe mâi sài phrík ná láeo kô phàt phàk ruam săwng thêe.** . . .

2 large dry pork noodles (1), barbecued chicken (2), orange juice, no sugar (3)
3 crab fried rice with egg (2); deep fried fish (1); pineapple juice with sugar (1)

Dialogue 3

Ann is bargaining for CDs at a market stall. What was the starting price and what does she end up paying?

ANN:	see dee khăi: phàen thâorài khá?
STALLHOLDER:	phàen dio nèung rói săam sìp bàat khráp. săam phàen săam rói hòk sìp bàat khráp.
ANN:	lót hâi èek nòi dâi: mái khá?
STALLHOLDER:	lót láeo khráp. phàen nêe hăa yâak khráp. ao kèe phàen khráp?
ANN:	ao hòk phàen khâ.
STALLHOLDER:	tháng mòt jèt rói yêe sìp bàat khráp.
ANN:	hòk rói hâa sìp dâi: mái khá?
STALLHOLDER:	pen pai mâi dâi: khráp. phŏm mâi mee kamrai khráp. raakhaa née thòok mâak khráp.
ANN:	thêe èuhn kháo khăi: rói dio khâ.
STALLHOLDER:	ôh-hóh! thêe èuhn khăi: thòok kwàa nêe mâi mee láeo ná khráp. jèt rói bàat kô láeo kan khráp. raakhaa phísàyt. mee arai èek mái khráp?
ANN:	mâi mee khâ.
STALLHOLDER:	tòklong jèt rói bàat châi mái khráp? nèung phan thawn sèe rói châi mái khráp?
ANN:	săam rói khâ.
STALLHOLDER:	thòok tâwng khráp. phŏm ja khàat thun jing jing.

Vocabulary

phàen	classifier for CDs, paper and flat things
hâi	for
tháng mòt	altogether
pen pai mâi dâi:	that's not possible
kamrai	profit

kô láeo kan	idiomatic phrase used to try to end differences by suggesting a compromise: 'Let's make it . . .' or '. . . and be done with it'		
phísàyt	special	**tòklong**	to agree, okay
thawn	to give change	**thòok tâwng**	correct, proper
khàat thun	make a loss		

Language points

Classifiers

Thai has different classifiers for different types of things. Use them when you talk about quantities of objects or refer to objects:

phaen	flat things, e.g. sheets of paper (**kradàat**)
khrêuang	computers and other machines
bai	drinking glasses, bags, pictures
lôok	round things, including some fruits, e.g. mangoes, limes, oranges, balls (**bawn**)
hàeng	places

Some compounds use the first part of the compound as the classifier, for example **hâwng** and **rohng**. In some cases the noun and the classifier are the same, for example **khon, ráan, wát, sěe.**

When to use classifiers

- counting — **ao kâeo sǎwng bai**
  I want two glasses
- asking how many — **mee krapǎo kèe bai?**
  How many cases do you have?
- with demonstratives — **krapǎo bai née**
  This bag
- with 'which' — **krapǎo bai nǎi?**
  Which bag?
- with 'each' — **bai lá sìp bàat**
  Ten baht each (e.g. glass)
- with 'every' — **kâeo thúk bai**
  Every glass
- with 'another' — **ao kâeo bai èuhn**
  I'll have another glass

hâi

In the dialogue **hâi** is equivalent to the preposition 'for'; the pronoun can be omitted if the context gives the meaning:

phêuan séuh hâi
My friend bought it for me

hâi also means 'to give':

phâw hâi naalíkaa
My father gave me a watch

The direct object comes before the indirect object:

Sùphachai hâi naalíkaa lôok sǎo:
Sùphachai gave his daughter a watch

Special and ordinary

The opposite of **phísàyt** is **tham-madaa**. **wan tham-madaa**, for example, is an ordinary working day. Something out of the ordinary is **mâi tham-madaa** or **plàek** (strange).

Exercise 4

The following objects were stolen from your room. Make a list of them:

Example: 1 3 CDs **see dee sǎam phàen**

2 2 bags
3 6 sheets of paper
4 3 glasses
5 4 oranges
6 3 mobile phones
7 10 photographs
8 2 computers

Exercise 5

Translate:

1 Many of the mangoes are not sweet.
2 How many glasses are there?

3 Every one of the oranges is sweet.
4 This case is expensive.
5 I bought five oranges; two of them are sweet, the others are not ripe.
6 This photograph is pretty.
7 Which computer isn't working?
8 Shall we go to another temple?

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: money and how to pay.

A: thêe nêe láek plìan dawnlâa dâi: mái khá?
B: dâi: khráp.
A: chái bàt khraydìt dâi: mái khá?
B: dâi: khráp.

Vocabulary

plìan	to change	**láek, láek plìan**	to exchange
dawnlâa	dollar	**bàt khraydìt**	credit card

Other words

jài:	to pay	**ngern sòt**	cash
chék dern thaang	travellers' cheque	**dern thaang**	to travel

Exercise 6

Ask if you can:

1 change money
2 use a credit card
3 change a travellers' cheque
4 buy some English money

Say you don't have:

5 enough cash; you can't pay
6 a credit card
7 any travellers' cheques; you have to change some German money

Dialogue 5

Ann is looking for her hired car when a parking attendant notices her difficulties. Describe the car Ann hired.

ATTENDANT: hăa arai khráp?
ANN: hăa rót khâ.
ATTENDANT: jàwt thêe năi khráp?
ANN: jam mâi dâi: khâ.
ATTENDANT: yêehâw arai khráp?
ANN: Toyota khâ.
ATTENDANT: nêe rót khun réu plào khráp?
ANN: khan năi khá?
ATTENDANT: khan thêe jàwt nâa pràtoo khráp.
ANN: mâi châi khâ. rót khăwng chán sĕe daeng. mài dûey.
ATTENDANT: măi: lâyk thábian arai khráp?
ANN: chán kô mâi róo khâ. chán châo rót mêua waan née khâ.
ATTENDANT: khan nóhn réu plào khráp?
ANN: trong năi khá?
ATTENDANT: khan thêe tìt kàp rót sìp láw khráp.
ANN: chán mâi hĕn khâ. thêe yòo khâang nâa châi mái khá?
ATTENDANT: khâang lăng.
ANN: hĕn láeo. châi khâ.

Vocabulary

jam	to remember		
yêehâw	make		
réu plào	question marker ('. . . or not?')		
khan	classifier for vehicles		
nâa	in front of		
pràtoo	door, gate		
măi: lâyk thábian	registration number		
măi: lâyk	number	**châo**	hire
trong năi	where exactly	**tìt (kàp)**	to be next to
sìp láw	lorry	**láw**	wheel
khâang	side	**(khâang) lăng**	behind

Language points

Prepositions of place

yòo nâa pràtoo
It's in front of the gate

yòo lăng pràtoo
It's behind the gate

yòo nai bâan
It's inside the house

yòo nâwk bâan
It's outside the house

khâang is optional with prepositions:

yòo (khâang) lăng bâan
It's behind the house

Adverbials of place

Use **khâang** plus a preposition:

yòo khâang nâa	It's in front
yòo khâang lăng	It's behind
yòo khâang nai	It's inside
yòo khâang nâwk	It's outside

Questions with réu plào

réu plào suggests you want a specific, factual, answer. Use it instead of **mái** to avoid suggesting that you are inviting someone or asking for an opinion. For example, **khun ja pai mái?** could be understood as an invitation; whereas **khun ja pai réu plào?** asks for a factual answer.

naalíkaa phaeng mái?
Is the watch expensive (in your opinion)?

naalíkaa phaeng réu plào?
Is the watch expensive (i.e. is it or not)?

Exercise 7

Write a conversation similar to Dialogue 5. Joe is looking for his motorcycle which he had parked behind a lorry; the parking attendant thinks, incorrectly, it is an old blue one parked in front of a communal taxi.

Example: ATTENDANT: **hăa arai khráp?**
JOE: **hăa rót mawtersai khráp.**
...

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: hiring a vehicle.

A: châo rót mawtersai thâorài khráp?
B: wan lá săwng rói bàat khâ. tâwng waang ngern mátjam săam phan bàat láeo kô kheuhn nám-man tem tháng khâ.

Vocabulary

waang	to put down
ngern mátjam	deposit
kheuhn	to return, bring back
nám-man	petrol
tem	full
tháng	tank (for fuel or water)

Other words

bai khàp khèe	driving licence
khèe	to ride
pám nám-man	petrol station
rót jàk-krayaan	bicycle
pràkan	insurance

Note the order of words with **tem**:

náam tem khùat
The bottle is full of water

khon tem bâan
The house is full of people

'Empty' (for a bottle or other container) is **plào**.

Exercise 8 Hiring a vehicle

Ask:

Example: 1 about petrol stations in the area
thǎeo née mee pám nám-man mái?

2 when to return the motorbike
3 about the deposit
4 for a full tank of petrol
5 if there is insurance

Say:

6 you don't have a Thai driving licence
7 you left a deposit of 500 baht
8 you will bring the bicycle back tomorrow

Reading and writing

Consonants

ฮ **h** (used mainly in imported words)

ฮ่องกง	Hong Kong
ฮอล์แลนด์	Holland, Dutch

The tone marker ๋ gives a syllable a rising tone:

ก๋วยเตี๋ยว **kwǔey tǐo**	เดี๋ยว **dǐo**	กระเป๋า **krapǎo**
กระเป๋าสตางค์ **krapǎo sataang**	ตั๋ว **tǔa**	

Exercise 9 Word study

Match the words that are often used together:

ใบ	ดื่ม
วาง	อยากเห็น

อาหาร	มือถือ
รหัส	รับแขก
เครื่อง	เงินมัดจำ
อยากรู้	ถ่ายรูป
โทรศัพท์	สตางค์
ห้อง	ไปรษณีย์
กล้อง	ขับขี่
กระเป๋า	ทะเล

Exercise 10 Reading

(a) Complete this form in English for a friend, Tom Brown, who bought a two-seater red Toyota Spiderhunter (1700 cc) registration IOU 24T for his 18-year-old daughter, Jane, to drive:

หมายเลขทะเบียน ______ ยี่ห้อรถ _____ แบบ ____
สีรถ _____ ซีซี ______ ที่นั่ง __
ชื่อผู้ขับ _____ อายุ ____ ชื่อเจ้าของรถ __________

(b) The local Thai restaurant has asked you to translate their menu for them:

ต้มยำทะเล ปลานึ่งมะนาว ผัดผักรวม
ต้มยำปลา ยำทะเล ไก่ทอด ปลาทอด
ต้มยำไก่ ไก่ย่าง หมูย่าง ปลาเปรี้ยวหวาน
ก๋วยเตี๋ยวหมู / ไก่ / เนื้อ
เครื่องดื่ม น้ำมะนาว น้ำมะพร้าว ชาจีน

(c) Translate:

1 ที่นี่ก๋วยเตี๋ยวหมูอร่อย!!! ที่นี่มีไก่ย่าง วันนี้มีอาหารเจ

2 ฮ่องกง 7 วัน ราคาพิเศษ!! ฮอล์แลนด์ 10 วัน โรงแรมห้าดาว ตั๋ว เครื่องบิน รถไฟ

3 ซื้อโทรศัพท์มือถือ ได้กระเป๋าสตางค์ฟรี!! จ่ายมากกว่า 2,000 บาท รับฟรีกระเป๋าออกกำลังกาย วันนี้โปรโมชั่น!!! กระเป๋าทุกใบลด 20% ราคาถูกทุกวัน!!

ฟรี free

4 เงินสด!! 0.95% รับบัตรเครดิตทุกธนาคาร

5 ที่จอดรถมอเตอร์ไซค์ จอดหน้าประตูได้

6 อพาร์ทเม้นท์ให้เช่า

7 สวัสดีปีใหม่ !

8 เมื่อวานนี้ผมเช่ารถ พนักงานหญิงขอเบอร์โทรศัพท์ ผมจำเบอร์ไม่ได้

9 บริการรถเช่าขับเองและพร้อมคนขับ ปลอดภัย พนักงานขับรถมีโทรศัพท์มือถือ ซ่อมรถได้

บริการ service พร้อม together, with

Exercise 11 Writing

A friend's car was damaged by a car that didn't stop. Write notes that he can take to show the police:

1 The car was grey and (กับ) yellow.
2 I can't remember the registration number.
3 The make was Toyota.
4 I didn't see the owner.
5 He was driving very fast.
6 I parked my car in front of some gates.
7 My car was new.
8 I hired it yesterday.
9 I don't have a telephone number.

9 Getting to know someone

In this unit you will discuss people and their lifestyles.

You will learn how to:

- describe people's character and behaviour
- express frequency
- use **tham hâi** (to cause)
- tell the time
- talk about leisure activities, the family and the home

Dialogue 1

Sùphachai and his colleague, Kate, stop to watch an open-air boxing match and Sùphachai asks her what she does outside work. What exercise does Kate do?

KATE: khun châwp doo muey mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI: kô sanùk dee khráp. waylaa wâang khun châwp tham arai khráp?
KATE: châwp pai doo năng khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: pai doo năng bòi mái khráp?
KATE: mâi khôi bòi khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: deuan lá kèe khráng khráp?
KATE: săwng rěuh săam khráng khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: tham-mai khun mâi châo wee dee oh doo thêe bâan khráp?
KATE: khrêuang sĭa khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: khun châwp doo năng bàep năi khráp?
KATE: châwp doo năng phěe khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: âo:! mâi klua rěuh khráp?

KATE: kô klua mĕuan kan khâ. tàe sanùk dee.
SÙPHACHAI: phŏm khít wâa doo năng bòi mâi khôi dee khráp.
KATE: tham-mai rĕuh khá?
SÙPHACHAI: àwk kamlang kai: dee kwàa khráp. tham hâi sùk-khàphâap dee.
KATE: chán àwk kamlang kai: bòi khâ. chán pai ditsàkôh tên ram thúk aathít khâ.



Vocabulary

muey	boxing
wâang	free, not occupied, not busy
kô	well (sentence initial)
bòi	often
khráng	time, occasion
wee dee oh	video
sĭa	broken, damaged, spoiled
phĕe	ghost, spirit
mĕuan kan	fairly (end of sentence)
khít wâa	to think that
tham hâi	to make something happen
sùk-khàphâap	health
ditsàkôh	disco
tên ram	dancing

Language points

Expressing frequency

With 'often' and 'sometimes'

Put **bòi** or **baang khráng** at the end of a statement:

chán pai doo năng bòi
I often go to the cinema

pai wîng lên baang khráng
I sometimes go running

'Usually'

Use **tham-madaa** or **pòk-katì** at the beginning of the sentence:

pòk-katì chán pai wîng lên
I usually go running

Saying how often

tham ngaan aathít lá hâa wan
I work five days a week

Use the same pattern for hours in a day, weeks or months in a year, etc.

chán pai wâi: náam aathít lá khráng
I go swimming once a week

Use the same pattern to say you go twice a year, etc.

chán pai wâi: náam thúk aathít
I go swimming every week

Asking how often

Ask whether someone does something often or how many times a week, etc.:

pai wâi: náam thúk wan mái?
Do you go swimming every day?

pai wâi: náam aathít lá kèe khráng?
How many times a week do you swim?

tham hâi, *to cause, to make something happen*

tham hâi phŏm nèuey
It made me tired

This construction is sometimes equivalent to a single verb in English:

phŏm tham hâi khrêuang wee dee oh sĭa
I broke the video recorder

Culture point

Ghosts and superstitions

Most Thais are fearful of ghosts and respect spirits – even in cities spirit houses are abundant and are regularly provided with offerings of food and incense sticks to ensure that the spirits that inhabit the place watch over things. Some spirits are malicious and tales of gruesome ghosts are popular in movies, television, novels and comics. Thais typically believe in omens and magical things, and often take seriously what in the West might be termed superstitions (for example, not having their hair cut on a Wednesday – many hairdressers are closed on that day). Lotteries, both official and unofficial, are very popular and many people look for a lucky sign such as the registration number of a car involved in an accident, when buying a ticket.

Exercise 1

1 Describe these people's lifestyles (see table on page 149) using **lá, bòi, mâi khôi bòi, baang khráng, pòk-katì, tham-madaa, thúk** or **mâi bòi**:

Example: **Chûm doo thee wee thúk wan**

2 Ask them some questions about their lifestyles:

Example: **khun tham kàp khâo: deuan lá kèe khráng?**

	Times per week	
	Chûm	**Yài**
watch television	7	1
cook	6	1
visit a restaurant	1	4–5
read newspapers	1	7
take exercise	1	7
	Times per month	
go to the cinema	1	10
read a book	1	8
	Times per year	
travel	2	10
hire a car	1	5

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: leisure activities.

A: waylaa wâang khun châwp tham arai khráp?
B: châwp lên dontree khâ.
A: lên dontree bòi mái khráp?
B: deuan lá săwng rĕuh săam khráng khâ. láeo kô thúk aathít lên thayn-nít. tàe châwp lên dontree mâak kwàa.

Vocabulary

lên dontree	to play music	**thayn-nít**	tennis
châwp mâak kwàa	to prefer		
Other words			
keelaa	sport	**káwp**	golf
fútbawn	football	**bàetmintân**	badminton
gaym	computer game	**inthernét**	internet
dee wee dee	DVD		

Exercise 2

Rewrite Dialogue 2 using the new vocabulary and words from earlier units.

Example: A: **waylaa wâang khun châwp tham arai khráp?**
B: **châwp fang phlayng khâ.**
...

Culture note

Sports

Football (soccer) is the most popular sport in Thailand, but Thai boxing (often called 'kick boxing') also has many fans. Takraw (**tàkrâw**), which uses a wicker ball, is also played throughout the country.

Dialogue 3

Joe has met an acquaintance at a party and is asking her about her family. Why is her elder sister unhappy?

FÁA:	phêe săo: yòo thêe angkrìt. yòo lăi: pee láeo. tàeng ngaan thêe nóhn khâ.
JOE:	faen pen fàràng rĕuh khráp?
FÁA:	khâ. mee lôok săo: aayú săam khùap. nâa rák mâak khâ.
JOE:	faen phêe săo: pen khon yang-ngai bâang khráp?
FÁA:	kàe láeo tàe ruey mâak khâ.
JOE:	faen phêe săo: jai dee réu plào khráp?
FÁA:	faen châwp kin lâo khâ. sòop bùrèe mâak. khêe nĭo.
JOE:	rĕuh khráp?
FÁA:	tháláw kan bòi. phêe săo: mâi mee khwaam sùk. chán pen hùang phêe săo: khâ.
JOE:	tham-mai phêe săo: mâi lêrk kàp săamee khráp?
FÁA:	kô phêe săo: rák săamee khâ. rák lôok săo:. lêrk mâi dâi: khâ.

Vocabulary

phêe săo:	elder sister	**tàeng ngaan**	to get married, be married
nâa rák	cute, lovable	**rák**	to love
kàe	old	**ruey**	rich
lâo	spirits, liquor	**sòop**	to smoke
bùrèe	cigarette	**khêe nĭo**	stingy
tháláw kan	to argue	**mee khwaam sùk**	to be happy
khwaam sùk	happiness	**pen hùang**	to worry
lêrk	to break up, end, quit, give up	**săamee**	husband

Culture points

The family

phêe náwng	brothers and sisters
phêe	older person
náwng	younger person
phêe chai:	elder brother
náwng săo:	younger sister
náwng chai:	younger brother

Thais normally refer to their brothers or sisters as **phêe** or **náwng** plus their name. **săamee** is a more formal word for 'husband' than **faen**. 'Wife' is **phanráyaa** (often pronounced **pharáyaa).**

Family names as pronouns

Parents will normally refer to themselves as **phâw** or **mâe** instead of using 'I' when speaking to their children and they will use **lôok**, not 'you'. **náwng** is often used to address a waiter or younger person. **phêe** can be used to indicate friendly terms with an older acquaintance, customer or colleague.

Marriage

Most young people consult their parents and relatives when choosing a marriage partner. A member of the groom's family

formally asks for the bride's hand. On the morning of the wedding there will be a blessing by monks at the house where the ceremony will take place. At the wedding ceremony the couple dress in traditional Thai costumes and their heads are joined together by a thick white cotton thread. Guests take turns pouring holy water over the hands of the bride and groom. Couples who perform the ceremony do not always formally register the marriage. Divorce is fairly common and requires only mutual consent or proof of desertion.

Language points

Some prefixes

khwaam	used before verbs, adverbs or adjectives to make an abstract noun, e.g. **khwaam sùk**
khêe	used before verbs or adjectives to describe a negative characteristic, e.g. **khêe nĭo**
nák	used before a verb or noun to indicate a profession, e.g. **nák muey**

Exercise 3

Joe has interviewed Sùnee about her younger brother who has moved to Australia. From the account he wrote of the interview, find the questions he asked and her responses. The questions should use **réu plào** or **réu yang**.

Example: 1 He has already found work there
JOE: **náwng chai: dâi ngaan réu yang?**
SÙNEE: **dâi láeo.**

2 He has been there for three years.
3 His salary is not very good.
4 He is married.
5 He has no children.
6 His wife is Australian.
7 She's a kind person.
8 They have bought a house there.
9 He is happy there.

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: describing people's character and behaviour.

A: phêe chai: yòo thêe năi khá?
B: yòo phâak eesăan khráp.
A: phêe chai: tham ngaan arai khá?
B: pen chao: naa khráp. mâi mee ngern. pen khon jon. khàyăn mâak.

Vocabulary

chao: naa	farmer	**chao:**	group of people
naa	farm, rice field	**jon**	poor
khàyăn	hard-working		

Other words

nísăi	character, behaviour
nísăi dee	good character, behaviour
khêe kìat	lazy, not feel like



Exercise 4

Write a conversation similar to Dialogue 2. Fáa's younger brother is a farmer, lives in the Isan and is married to a local woman. They have three children, no money but are very happy. Her brother works hard but his wife doesn't.

Example: FÁA: **náwng chai: yòo phâak eesăan. pen chao: naa.**

...

Dialogue 5

Joe has been invited to the home of an acquaintance, Kâeo, and is asking about Kâeo's job. What are Kâeo's working conditions like?

JOE: khun pen khâarâachakaan châi mái khráp?
KÂEO: mâi châi khráp. pen phánák ngaan khăi: khráp.
JOE: baw-risàt yài mái khráp?
KÂEO: pramaan săwng rói khon khráp.
JOE: yài mĕuan kan ná khráp.
KÂEO: phánák ngaan yér tàe lôok kháa nói. baw-risàt khàat thun khráp.
JOE: ngaan yûng mái khráp?
KÂEO: kô yûng khráp. tham ngaan wan lá sìp chûamohng. rèrm sìp mohng cháo láeo kô lêrk săwng thûm khráp. yùt deuan lá săwng wan.
JOE: tham ngaan nàk jing jing ná khráp. khun dâi ngern deuan dee mái khráp?
KÂEO: mâi khôi dee khráp. phŏm dâi ngern deuan nói.
JOE: khâa chái jài: yér châi mái khráp?
KÂEO: châi khráp. khâa châo bâan phaeng khráp. khâa fai fáa kô phaeng dûey khráp. láe phŏm tâwng sòng ngern hâi phâw mâe thúk deuan khráp. ngern deuan mâi phaw chái khráp.

Vocabulary

khâarâachakaan civil servant
yûng difficult, complicated
lôok kháa customer
rèrm to start, begin

sìp mohng cháo 10 a.m.
khâa chái jài: expenses
khâa châo rent
sòng to send
săwng thûm 8 p.m.
khâa cost
fai fáa electricity
phaw chái reasonable, fair

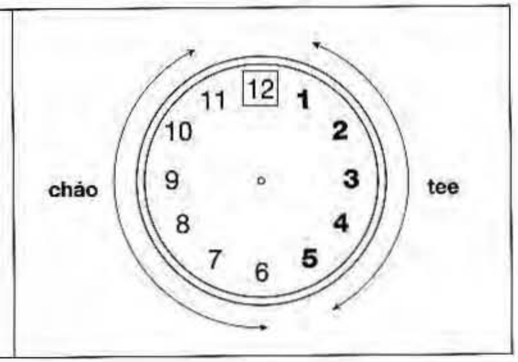
Language points

Telling the time

Use these words for different times of day:

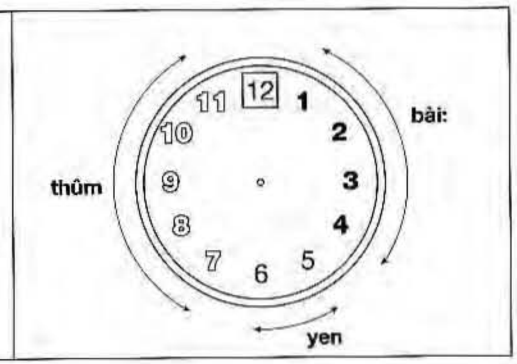
thîang wan

1 a.m. to 5 a.m.	**tee**
6 a.m. to 11 a.m.	**cháo**



thîang kheuhn

1 p.m. to 4 p.m.	**bài:**
5 p.m. and 6 p.m.	**yen**
7 p.m. to 11 p.m.	**thûm**



Until 7 p.m. the actual times used are identical to those used in English:

tee nèung to **tee hâa**	1 a.m. to 5 a.m.
hòk mohng cháo to **sìp èt mohng cháo**	6 a.m. to 11 a.m.
bài: mohng to **bài: sèe mohng**	1 p.m. to 4 p.m.
hâa mohng yen and **hòk mohng yen**	5 p.m. and 6 p.m.

After 6 p.m. you start counting again from one:

nèung thûm	7 p.m. (you will also hear **thûm nèung**)		
sǎwng thûm	8 p.m.	**sǎam thûm**	9 p.m.
sèe thûm	10 p.m.	**hâa thûm**	11 p.m.
thîang wan	midday	**thîang kheuhn**	midnight

Saying what time it is

kèe mohng (láeo)?	What time is it?
bài: mohng (láeo)	It's 1 p.m.

Minutes past or to the hour (including 'quarter past' and 'quarter to'):

sǎam thûm sèe sìp naathee	It's 9.40 p.m.
èek yêe sìp naathee sèe thûm	It's 9.40 p.m.

naathee minute

To say 'half past . . .' use either **sǎam sìp naathee** or **khrêung**:

hâa thûm sǎam sìp naathee *or* **hâa thûm khrêung**
11.30 p.m.

Exercise 5

1 Note the opening and closing times of this shop:

KATE: ráan pìt láeo rěuh khá?
SHOPPER: pìt láeo khâ. khun tâwng klap maa phrûng née.
KATE: ráan pèrt kèe mohng khá?
SHOPPER: pèrt sìp mohng khâ.
KATE: pìt kèe mohng khá?
SHOPPER: pìt sèe thûm khâ.

2 Rewrite the dialogue above. Kate is asking about a restaurant (open 9 a.m. to 11 p.m.):

Example: KATE: **ráan aahǎan pìt láeo rěuh khá?**

Exercise 6

Say what times these people start and finish work:

Example: 1 Fáa 9 a.m. 5 p.m.
Fáa rèrm tham ngaan kâo mohng cháo láeo kô lêrk hâa mohng yen.

2 Chûm	8 a.m.	6 p.m.
3 Lék	11 a.m.	9 p.m.
4 Nít	7 p.m.	6 a.m.
5 Kan	6 p.m.	2 a.m.
6 Sùnee	5 a.m.	midday
7 Daeng	3 p.m.	midnight
8 Nee	1 p.m.	11 p.m.

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: renting a house. Ann is talking to an estate agent.

ANN: thǎeo née mee bâan hâi châo mái khá?
ESTATE AGENT: mee khâ. lǎng née khâ.
ANN: khâa châo thâorài khá?
ESTATE AGENT: deuan lá nèung mèuhn bàat khâ. phôo châo tâwng jài: khâa châo lûang nâa hòk deuan khâ. mee fernijêr dûey khâ.
ANN: tôo yen mee mái khá?
ESTATE AGENT: mee khâ. mee tao gáet dûey.
ANN: ruam khâa náam khâa fai fáa réu plào khá?
ESTATE AGENT: mâi khâ. phôo châo tâwng jài: ayng khâ.

Vocabulary

bâan hâi châo	house for rent	**lǎng**	classifier for houses
phôo châo	tenant	**lûang nâa**	in advance
fernijêr	furniture	**tôo yen**	fridge
tôo	cupboard	**tao**	stove
gáet	gas	**ruam**	including

Other vocabulary

tiang(nawn)	bed (classifier **tiang**)	**sohfaa**	sofa
tó	table(classifier **tua**)	**kâoêe**	chair (classifier **tua**)
phátlom	fan		

Exercise 7

Rewrite the conversation above. Ann is interested in an apartment. She wants to know about the number of rooms and whether there is air-conditioning and a telephone, and also would like details of the furniture.

Example: ANN: **mee apháatmáyn hâi châo mái khá?**
. . .

Reading and writing

Common consonant clusters

tr	kr	pr	khr	phr
ตรง	โกรธ	ประเทศ	ใคร	พระ
trong	**kròht**	**prathâyt**	**khrai**	**phrá**
khl	**kl**	**phl**	**pl**	**khw**
คลินิค	ใกล้	เพลง	แปลก	ความสุข
khlíník	**klâi**	**phlayng**	**plàek**	**khwaam sùk**

Some words have groups of consonants which are not recognised consonant clusters:

- one-syllable words: the vowel **-o** is added: คน **khon**
- two-syllable words with no vowels: the vowel **-a** is added in the first syllable and **-o** in the second: ถนน **thanŏn**
- two-syllable words with a vowel in the second syllable: a short vowel **-a** is added in the first syllable: สบาย **sabai:**
- words beginning บร- are pronounced with an **-aw** vowel between the first two consonants: บริษัท **baw-risàt**

Some irregular spellings

A silent อ is used before ย at the beginning of some words:

อย่า	อยู่	อย่าง	อยาก
yàa	**yòo**	**yàang**	**yàak**

ธรรมดา (**tham-madaa**): รร is pronounced as a short 'a'
ภรรยา pronounced **phanráyaa**

จริง (**jing**)
สระว่ายน้ำ (**sà wâi: náam**)
เสร็จ (**sèt**):
} the ร is not pronounced

อุบัติเหตุ usually pronounced **ùbàt hàyt**

Exercise 8 Word study

Match the compound on the left with its translation on the right:

ความดี	heat
ความคิดเห็น	memory
ความรู้	curiosity
ความจริง	love
ความคิด	truth
ความเร็ว	goodness
ความรัก	speed
ความร้อน	knowledge
ความจำ	idea
ความอยากรู้อยากเห็น	opinion

Exercise 9 Reading

(a) Read these two 'lonely hearts' advertisements and note the characteristics of the advertisers and the partners they are looking for:

1 นักธุรกิจอายุ 33 ปี สูง 166 ซม.นิสัยดี เหล้าไม่ดื่ม บุหรี่ไม่สูบ รักเด็ก และขยัน อยากรู้จักเพื่อนหญิง จริงใจรักความสะอาด อายุไม่เกิน 30 ปี สาวคนไหนสนใจส่งรูปถ่ายมา

2 สาวตอนนี้เหงา อายุ 25 ปีทำงานบริษัทของญี่ปุ่น
พูดภาษาฝรั่งเศสได้ ภาษาจีนได้ มีความรู้เกี่ยวกับคอมพิวเตอร์
อยากรู้จักกับผู้ชายที่ใจดี นิสัยดี ทำธุรกิจด้วยกัน

จริงใจ sincere

(b) Read this advertisement for a house and note the details:

มีบ้านให้เช่าใกล้มหาวิทยาลัย มีแอร์ เฟอร์นิเจอร์ 2 ห้องนอน
ห้องครัว ห้องรับแขก 2 ห้องน้ำ มีสวนผลไม้สวยมาก เงียบ
มีสระว่ายน้ำสะอาด ค่าเช่าถูก ว่างแล้ว ใครสนใจติดต่อ 057 986541

(c) Lifestyle questionnaire. The questions and answers are mixed up. Match them and then summarise the answers:

1 ค่าใช้จ่าย
2 ทำงานวันละ 9 ชั่วโมง 1 เดือนทำงาน 23 วัน
3 คุณมีปัญหาเกี่ยวกับอะไร?
4 คุณกลัวอะไร?
5 ค่าน้ำ ค่าไฟฟ้า ค่าโทรศัพท์ ค่าเช่าบ้าน
6 ชอบดูมวย
7 ปัญหาเกี่ยวกับสุขภาพ
8 คุณทำงานวันละกี่ชั่วโมง/หนึ่งเดือนคุณทำงานกี่วัน?
9 เป็นห่วงสุขภาพครอบครัว
10 เวลาว่าง คุณชอบทำอะไร?
11 กลัวความจน กลัวไม่มีงานทำ
12 คุณเป็นห่วงอะไร?

Exercise 10 Writing

Write notes to describe someone you have just met:

1 a businessman, around 30
2 works for an import-export company
3 smokes and drinks, works 16 hours a day
4 in free time likes singing with his friends, watches Thai boxing once a month, doesn't exercise often, health not very good
5 has financial problems
6 wife works in a Japanese bank; two sons and one daughter aged 5

10 Making plans

In this unit you will discuss travel plans, agree with someone what to do and talk about your health.

You will learn how to:

- compare things and discuss alternatives
- use **phráw** (**wâa**) to explain something
- use time expressions with **tàlàwt**
- talk about the days of the week, health, appointments and international travel

Dialogue 1

Lisa is trying to persuade her friend Sùphachai to go to the seaside with her. Why can't they go on Saturday?

LISA: cháo née chán yàak pai thîo chai: thalay. pai dûey kan mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI: mâi dâi: khráp. phŏm tâwng láang rót kàwn.
LISA: mâi tâwng khâ. láang phrŭng née kô dâi:.
SÙPHACHAI: mâi dâi: khráp. rót sòk-kapròk mâak khráp.
LISA: chán chûey dâi: mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI: khàwpkhun khráp. mâi pen rai khráp. chái waylaa mâi naan khráp. sèt láeo pai thîo tawn bài: kô dâi: khráp.
LISA: bài: née chán mâi wâang khâ. chán tâwng tham khwaam sa-àat bâan khâ.
SÙPHACHAI: pai phrŭng née dee mái khráp?
LISA: phrŭng née chán pai tàt phŏm khâ. wan săo khun wâang mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI: wan săo phŏm yàak phaa Lisa pai thîo bâan khráp.

LISA:	phráw arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	mâi mee arai phísàyt khráp.
LISA:	pai thîo chai: thalay mêuarài dâi: khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	mêuarài kô dâi: khráp. thalay mee yòo tàlàwt khráp. mâi pai năi ràwk khráp.

Vocabulary

láang	to wash	**chûey**	to help
tham khwaam sa-àat	to clean	**tàt phŏm**	to have one's hair cut
tàt	to cut	**wan său**	Saturday
phaa	to take someone	**phráw**	because (of)
tàlàwt	all the time		
ràwk	particle used in contradicting or correcting		

Language points

láang *'to wash'*

Thai has three words for 'to wash'. **láang** is the more general word and is used for washing dishes, your body or vehicles, for example, but not for clothes or hair. For clothes use **sák**; for hair use **sà**.

'Bring' and 'take', phaa *and* ao

for people or animals:	use **phaa**
for things:	use **ao**

Use either verb with **pai** to mean take away and with **maa** to mean bring:

kháo ao nangsěuh pai
He took the book (away)

kháo phaa faen maa
He brought his wife

sòng is also used to mean 'to take someone':

phŏm ja pai sòng khun thêe sanăambin
I'll take you to the airport

'fetch' or 'meet' someone is **ráp**:

phŏm ja pai ráp khun thêe sanăambin
I'll fetch you at the airport

Days of the week

wan jan	Monday	**wan angkhaan**	Tuesday
wan phút	Wednesday	**wan pháréuhàt**	Thursday
wan sùk	Friday	**wan său**	Saturday
wan aathít	Sunday		

Use **wan** before the name of the day. 'weekend' is **său aathít**.

wan née wan arai?	What day is it today?
wan née wan său.	Today's Saturday.

kô dâi*:*

pai mêuarài kô dâi: We can go any time

You can use **kô dâi:** with other question words:

ao an năi kô dâi:
Get any (either) of them

kin arai kô dâi:
Eat whatever (i.e. I don't mind what we eat)

pai thêe năi kô dâi:
We can go anywhere

tàlàwt

On its own **tàlàwt** means 'all the time'. **tàlàwt pai** is 'from now on'. **tàlàwt** (or **tháng**) can be used with 'day', 'year', etc. to mean 'all day', 'all year', etc.:

chán tham ngaan tàlàwt wan
I worked all day

chán doo thee wee tháng kheuhn
I watched television all night

Exercise 1

Using the table below:

(a) invite a friend to go with you on the days mentioned (column A);

(b) say you're not free on the day mentioned; give the reason (column B); suggest going the previous day.

Example: (a) **wan jan pai doo muey mái khá?**

(b) **wan jan mâi wâang. phŏm tâwng sák phâa. pai wan aathít mái khráp?**

	A	*B*
Mon	watch boxing	wash clothes
Tue	department store	work
Wed	dancing	study
Thur	watch ghost film	fetch driving licence
Fri	play music	doctor
Sat	clean the house	buy new mobile
Sun	go and hire a car	wash hair

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: appointments and obligations.

SŎMBOON: wan phút ao rót pai chék mái khráp?
MAALEE: wan phút mâi dâi: khâ.
SŎMBOON: tham-mai rĕuh khráp?
MAALEE: tawn cháo chán nát kàp phêuan láeo kô tawn bài: măw fan nát khâ.

Vocabulary

ao rót pai chék	take the car for a service
chék	to check
nát	to make an appointment
măw fan	dentist
fan	tooth
Other words	
ngaan líang	party (celebration)
líang	to entertain to a meal, raise, keep (pets)
pràchum	meeting
ngaan sòp	funeral
ngaan tàeng ngaan	wedding

Exercise 2

Rewrite Dialogue 2 using the vocabulary given.

Example: SŎMBOON: **wan angkhaan pai ngaan líang mái khráp?**
MAALEE: **wan angkhaan mâi dâi: khâ.**
SŎMBOON: **tham-mai rĕuh khráp?**
...

Dialogue 3

Kâeo invites his neighbour Sue to go shopping with him but finds she is not well. Why hasn't Sue been to see a doctor?

KÂEO: wan née pai thîo hâang mái khráp?
SUE: chán khêe kìat pai khâ.
KÂEO: tham-mai rĕuh khráp?
SUE: chán mâi sabai: khâ.
KÂEO: pen arai khráp?
SUE: pen khâi wàt yài khâ. pùat hŭa. jèp khaw.
KÂEO: pai hăa măw réu yang khráp?

SUE:	yang khâ. séuh yaa maa kin. dĭo kô hăi:. mâi yàak pai hăa măw khâ.
KÂEO:	tham-mai rĕuh khráp? klua măw rĕuh khráp?
SUE:	klua măw chèet yaa khâ.
KÂEO:	mâi tâwng klua khráp. măw chèet yaa mĕuan yung kàt khráp.
SUE:	chán kô klua yung kàt dûey khâ.

Vocabulary

pen arai?	What's the matter?
pen khâi wàt yài	to have the flu
pen wàt	to have a cold
khâi	fever
pùat	to ache
hŭa	head
jèp	to hurt, sore
khaw	throat
hăi:	to recover, to be lost
chèet	to inject



Language points

hăi:

hăi: has two meanings:

(a) to recover

hăi: réu yang?
are you better yet?

hăi: láeo
I'm better

(b) to be lost

krapăo sataang hăi:
My wallet is lost

For 'I lost my . . .' say **phŏm tham . . . hăi:**

phŏm tham wâen kan dàet hăi:
I lost my sunglasses

Saying two things are the same

- For 'A is the same as B': use **mĕuan** or **mĕuan kàp**:

  bâan khun mĕuan (kàp) bâan phŏm
  Your house is like mine

- For 'A and B are the same': put **mĕuan kan** at the end of the sentence:

  bâan khun kàp bâan phŏm mĕuan kan
  Your house and my house are the same
  (i.e. share the same characteristics)

  bâan khun sŭey mĕuan bâan phŏm
  Your house is as pretty as mine

- For 'identical' use **dio kan**:

  Kâeo kàp phŏm yòo thêe dio kan
  Kâeo and I live in the same place

- For 'equal' use **thâo kan** (especially about things that can be quantified):

  rót fai kàp khrêuang bin raakhaa thâo kan
  The train and the plane are the same price

- For 'similar' use **khlái kan** or **khlái khlái kan**:

  bâan khlái khlái kan
  The houses are similar

Exercise 3

Use the cues to complete the dialogue:

Example: Kâeo asks if Sue is free to go to a wedding on Saturday
KÂEO: **wan săo phŏm yàak phaa Sue pai ngaan tàeng ngaan. Sue wâang mái khráp?**

SUE:	(says she's not well)
KÂEO:	(asks what's the matter)
SUE:	(fever; also hurt hand; toothache)
KÂEO:	(doctor?)
SUE:	(gave medicine; take twice a day before food)

Exercise 4

Use the cues to compare these two people (use **mĕuan kan**, **mâi mĕuan kan**, **dio kan**, **thâo kan** or **khlái khlái kan**):

		Same	*Not same*	*Identical*	*Equal*	*Similar*
1	age				+	
2	eyes: colour	+				
3	car: colour		+			
4	hair: colour					+
5	company			+		
6	salary				+	
7	time start work			+		
8	address			+		
9	rent				+	
10	expenses				+	
11	opinions					+

Example: wealth, same
ruey mĕuan kan

Culture point

Health care

In April 2001, Thailand became one of the first middle- or low-income countries to introduce universal health care coverage to the population. The system covers all previously uninsured people and those from the lowest income groups – more than 30 per cent of the population. Under this scheme dubbed the '30 baht health plan', people buy a card that entitles the holder to medical care and treatment for a single fee of 30 baht. This covers most care, but excludes more advanced treatment. Treatment is normally provided in urban hospitals as health care in the countryside is still rudimentary.

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: medicine and ailments.

A: ao arai khráp?
B: khăw yaa kâe ai khráp.
A: yaa née kin wan lá săam khráng lăng aahăan.

Vocabulary

yaa kâe ai	cough medicine	**ai**	to cough
lăng	after		

To refer to medicine use **yaa kâe** followed by the ailment

Other words

tháwng sĭa	to have diarrhoea	**tháwng**	stomach
pháe	allergic to	**phĭu mâi**	sunburn
phĭu	skin	**mâi**	to burn

Exercise 5

Rewrite Dialogue 4 using these notes:

Example: 1 cough, 2, before

A: **ao arai khráp?**
B: **khăw yaa kâe ai.**
A: **yaa née kin wan lá săwng khráng kàwn aahăan.**

		times a day	*before/after meal*
1	cough	2	before
2	sore throat	3	after
3	aches	2	after
4	fever	3	before
5	sunburn	1	after
6	flu	1	before
7	diarrhoea	3	before
8	allergy	1	after

Dialogue 5

Sue is planning to make a trip to the Isan and asks Kâeo for advice. What does Kâeo recommend?

SUE: khrêuang bin kàp rót fai pai arai dee kwàa khá?
KÂEO: dee khon lá yàang khráp. nâng rót fai chom wiu dâi: khráp. pai khrêuang bin sàdùak kwàa khráp. plàwtphai dûey khráp.
SUE: tàe phaeng kwàa rót fai châi mái khá?
KÂEO: châi khráp. pai rót thua thòok thêe sùt tàe antarai: khráp.
SUE: rót fai kàp rót thua yàang năi rayo kwàa khá?
KÂEO: thâo kan khráp.
SUE: chán tàt sĭn jai mâi dâi:. tham yang-ngai dee?
KÂEO: sămràp phŏm châo rót yon dee kwàa khráp.
SUE: nâa son jai mĕuan kan ná khá.
KÂEO: tàe khun tâwng pai kàp baw-risàt thêe mee pràkan khráp. láe khun kô tâwng thoh jawng kàwn phráw wâa săo aathít ja mee nák thâwng thîo yér ná khráp.
SUE: aathít nâa rót khun khun ja chái réu plào khá?
KÂEO: âo:! pen rót mài khráp. phŏm hâi yeuhm mâi dâi: khráp.

Vocabulary

khon lá yàang	in different ways
chom	to admire
sàdùak	convenient
rót thua	air-conditioned intercity bus
thêe sùt	most
tàt sĭn jai	to decide
sămràp	for, as for
rót yon	car (formal word)
thoh	to telephone
jawng	reserve
phráw wâa	because (followed by clause)
nák thâwng thîo	tourist
hâi yeuhm	to lend

Language points

Asking how things compare

Put the two things you want to compare first, connected by **kàp**:

rót fai kàp rót thua pai arai dee kwàa?
How is it better to go – by plane or train?

kan is often included at the end of the question:

an năi thòok kwàa kan?
Which is cheaper?

Dùsìt kàp Chûm khrai kèng kwàa kan?
Who is better (more clever) Dùsìt or Chûm?

Comparing with verbs

Use **mâak kwàa**, not **kwàa** alone:

phŏm châwp aahăan jeen mâak kwàa aahăan fàràngsàyt
I prefer Chinese to French food

Superlatives

Put **thêe sùt** after an adjective or adverb:

rót thua thòok thêe sùt
Going by coach is the cheapest

With verbs the use of **mâak** is optional:

phŏm châwp aahăan fàràngsàyt (mâak) thêe sùt
I like French food the most

phráw (wâa)

phráw is used with a noun, pronoun or clause meaning 'because (of)':

mee khon tai: yér phráw khwaam ráwn
Many people died because of the heat

phráw wâa (because) is followed by a clause:

mâi séuh phráw wâa ngern mâi phaw
I'm not buying it because I don't have enough money

'Borrow' and 'lend'

phêuan hâi phŏm yeuhm pàak-kaa
A friend lent me a pen

phŏm yeuhm pàak-kaa khăwng phêuan
I borrowed a pen from a friend

khăw yeuhm ngern hâa sìp bàat nòi?
Can I borrow fifty baht?

Exercise 6

You are planning your holiday and have made these notes on three packages. Compare the alternatives (the more stars the better):

	Cost (baht)	*Distance*	*Convenience*	*Attractions*	*How attractive*	*Journey time*	*Fun*
Khon Kaen	2,000	150 km	**	*	*	3 hrs	*
Chiang Mai	3,000	450 km	*	**	***	6 hrs	**
Bangkok	4,500	800 km	***	***	**	10 hrs	***

Use these patterns:

1 A _____ kwàa B

2 pai A sàdùak kwàa pai B

3 A mee thêe thîo yér kwàa B

4 A ____ thêe sùt

Example: **pai chieng mài phaeng kwàa pai khăwn kàen**

Exercise 7

Extend your vocabulary: international travel

(a) Here are some instructions for foreigners entering and staying in Thailand. Note the information given.

khon tàang prathâyt thêe ja khâo meuang thai thúk khon tâwng mee pháasáphawt. sùan mâak tâwng mee weesâa tàe khăw thêe sanăambin dâi:. khon tàang prathâyt thêe maa yòo prathâyt thai tâwng pai jâeng thêe tamrùat trùat khon khâo meuang thúk săam deuan.

tàang prathâyt	abroad, foreign
pháasáphawt	passport
weesâa	visa
jâeng	notify
tamrùat trùat khon khâo meuang	immigration police
trùat	to check, examine

(b) Translate this travel advice:

1 Every foreigner needs a visa.
2 Ask for a visa at the immigration authorities at the airport.
3 You can't enter the country by (**thaang**) boat.
4 Foreigners who stay in Myanmar must report to the police every two weeks.
5 Don't forget your passport.

Reading and writing

Consonants

ฑ	**th** (rare)
พิพิธภัณฑ์	**phíphít-thaphan**

Tricky spellings

สระ	**sà** 'to wash one's hair'
วันจันทร์	the last two consonant sounds are not pronounced

วันพฤหัสฯ	the sign ฯ may be used to indicate that this is an abbreviation of the formal วันพฤหัสบดี

Exercise 8 Word study

Circle the words in these groups with similar or contrasting meanings:

1 ล้าง เต้นรำ ทำความสะอาด สะดวก ซัก สระ ให้ยืม

2 ปวด ช่วย สำหรับ พิพิธภัณฑ์ หมอฟัน เจ็บ

3 ก็แล้วกัน เดียวกัน ประกัน ใกล้กัน เท่ากัน แว่นกันแดด เหมือนกัน

4 นักท่องเที่ยว งานเลี้ยง ประชุม ค่าใช้จ่าย ประเทศ ข้าราชการ หนังสือพิมพ์ เมือง

5 ไฟฟ้า เฟอร์นิเจอร์ ขาดทุน งานศพ ฉีด ตำรวจตรวจคนเข้าเมือง แจ้ง กำไร

6 ขี้เกียจ ชาวนา ความเร็ว ความสุข งานแต่งงาน ขยัน

Exercise 9 Reading

(a) What do these notices say?

1 พิพิธภัณฑ์หยุดวันพฤหัส วันธรรมดา เปิด 08.00 น.
ปิด 19.00 น. วันเสาร์ อาทิตย์ หยุด

2 คลีนิคหมอฟัน เวลาทำงาน
วันจันทร์ – วันพฤหัส เช้า 08.00–13.00 น.
เย็น 16.30 – 20.30 น.
วันศุกร์ หยุด
วันเสาร์ อาทิตย์ เปิด 11.00 น.. ปิด 19.00 น.

น. is short for นาฬิกา (used formally with 24 hour system).

(b) Look at these extracts from Sùphachai's diary and find out what he did each day:



(c) **General knowledge quiz**

Match the questions on the left with the answers on the right:

1 ประเทศอะไรมีความยาวของถนนมากที่สุดในโลก	ประเทศไทย
2 ประเทศอะไรมีภาษาพูดมากที่สุดในโลก	ประเทศเวเนซุเอลา
3 ประเทศอะไรผลิตยาสูบได้มากที่สุดในโลก	ประเทศบราซิล
4 ประเทศอะไรผลิตสับปะรดได้มากที่สุดของโลก	ประเทศญี่ปุ่น
5 ประเทศอะไรผลิตเหล้าไวน์ได้มากที่สุดของโลก	สหรัฐอเมริกา
6 ประเทศอะไรผลิตรถยนต์ได้มากที่สุดของโลก	ประเทศจีน
7 ประเทศอะไรผลิตมะพร้าวได้มากที่สุดของโลก	ประเทศอิตาลี
8 ประเทศอะไรผลิตกาแฟได้มากที่สุดของโลก	ประเทศอินเดีย
9 ประเทศอะไรมีน้ำตกที่สูงที่สุดในโลก	ประเทศอินโดนีเซีย

โลก	world
ยาสูบ	tobacco
สหรัฐอเมริกา	USA
ผลิต	to produce

Exercise 10 Writing

Write this diary for the week:

Monday	had a cold
Tuesday	toothache; dentist gave injection
Wednesday	holiday today; went to museum – closed!
Thursday	paid telephone bill; took car to be washed
Friday	check-up at doctor's
Saturday	rested
Sunday	a.m. read; p.m. slept

11 Sorting things out

In this unit you will deal with things that are lost, need to be changed or repaired.

You will learn how to:

- ask for permission
- refer to past time
- say the order in which events occurred
- indicate that actions are in progress or about to happen
- use more prepositions and adverbials of place
- describe things
- talk about clothes and travel

Dialogue 1

Lisa has returned to a shop to change a blouse she bought. What does she decide in the end?

ASSISTANT:	hâi chán chûey arai dâi: bâang khá?
LISA:	chán khăw plìan sêua tua née khâ. séuh mêua waan née ná khá.
ASSISTANT:	tham-mai rĕuh khá?
LISA:	lék kern pai khâ. kháp pai nói khâ. láeo kô mee kràdum tàek dûey khâ.
ASSISTANT:	mâi dâi lawng thêe ráan rĕuh khá?
LISA:	lawng khâ. tawn râek chán khít wâa phaw dee tàe thee lăng chán plìan jai khâ.
ASSISTANT:	ao bai sèt maa réu plào khá?
LISA:	ao maa khâ.
ASSISTANT:	khànàat yài mâi mee sĕe fáa khâ. ao sĕe thao mái khá?

LISA: ao khâ.
ASSISTANT: lawng sài doo mái khá?
LISA: khâ.
ASSISTANT: chern maa thaang née khâ. lawng sêua thêe nêe khâ.
LISA: âo:! khànàat née yài mâak khâ. ao tua derm dee kwàa khâ.
ASSISTANT: khâ. raw sàk khrôo ná khá. chán ja yép kràdum hâi. . . .
sèt láeo khâ. ohkàat nâa chern maa mài khâ.

Vocabulary

hâi chán chûey arai dâi: bâang		What can I help you with?	
(kern) pai	too	**kháp**	tight
kràdum	button	**tàek**	to break
tawn râek	at first	**phaw dee**	just right
thee lăng	afterwards	**plìan jai**	to change one's mind
bai sèt	receipt	**khànàat**	size
derm	the same as before	**raw**	to wait
sàk khrôo	moment	**yép**	to sew
ohkàat nâa chern maa mài		please come again	
ohkàat	opportunity		

Language points

Asking for permission

Use **khăw** to ask permission to do something:

khăw plìan sêua? Can I change this blouse?

'Too' and 'too much'

yài kern pai It's too big

- with adjectives and adverbs, use **kern** or **pai** or both after the adjective/adverb:

  kháp pai nói
  It's a little too tight

- with verbs, use **mâak kern pai**, **mâak pai**, or **kern pai**:

  khun tham ngaan mâak kern pai
  You work too much

- with nouns, use **mâak (yér) kern pai** or **mâak (yér) pai**:

  mee khon yér kern pai
  There are too many people

'Broken'

- 'to shatter' is **tàek**, e.g. a plate
- 'to break into two or more pieces' is **hàk**, e.g. an arm or leg
- 'to break something' is **tham tàek (hàk)**

phŏm tham jaan tàek I broke the plate

Talking about the past

Use **réu plào** for questions about the past. Use **mâi dâi** for actions that did not take place in the past (**mâi dâi** is only used with action verbs).

khun lawng thêe ráan réu plào?
Did you try it on in the shop?

mâi dâi lawng
I didn't try it on

Before a verb use **dâi,** not **dâi:**.

Order of events

For 'at first' use **tawn râek**. For 'before' use **kàwn** with a word, phrase or clause:

kàwn pai khăwn kàen tâwng ao rót pai chék
Before going to Khon Kaen you must take the car for a check-up

For 'later', 'afterwards', use **thee lăng**. For 'after' use **lăng** before a word or phrase; before a clause use **lăng** or **lăng jàak**:

> **lăng jàak pai ráan aahăan yêepùn tháwng sĭa.**
> After I went to the Japanese restaurant I've had diarrhoea.

Exercise 1

(a) A friend has been on holiday. Ask her some questions using **réu plào.**

Ask her if she:

Example: 1 went to the swimming pool
khun pai sà wâi: náam réu plào?

2 saw the animals in the zoo
3 hired a car
4 went in a boat
5 went running
6 borrowed some money from her sister
7 learned Chinese there

(b) Someone else asks you the same questions. Answer in the negative and give a reason (use **kern pai** or **mâi phaw**).

Example: **mâi dâi pai. aakàat năo: kern pai**

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: clothes.

A: thûm nèung láeo! chán ja pai tàeng tua. chán tâwng thàwt kaang kayng tua née phráw wâa kháp pai nói. khun ja plìan phâa mái khá?
B: plìan khâ. kraprohng tua née sân kern pai khâ.

Vocabulary

tàeng tua	to get dressed	**thàwt**	to take off
kaang kayng	trousers	**plìan phâa**	to change clothes
kraprohng	skirt		

Other words

lŭam	loose
kaang kayng khăa sân	shorts
khăa	leg
sêua yêuht	T-shirt
sêua khăen sân/yao:	short-sleeved/long-sleeved shirt
khăen	arm
chút wâi: náam	swimsuit
chút săakon	Western-style suit

Use the classifier **tua** for clothes except for those with **chút** (the classifier is also **chút**).

Exercise 2

1 Ask a shop assistant to see the above items of clothing.

Example: **khăw doo kaang kayng.**

2 Now ask for each of them to be changed. Explain that they are too big, tight, loose, short, long or small, or that you don't like the colour.

Example: **phŏm khăw plìan sêua tua née khráp. mâi châwp sĕe.**

Dialogue 3

Joe took his car in for a service and gets a surprise when he goes to collect it. When will the car be ready?

JOE: rót sèt réu yang khráp? phŏm ao maa chék mêua cháo née khráp.
MECHANIC: yang mâi sèt khráp. châang kamlang sâwm yòo khráp.
JOE: âo:! rót pen arai khráp? mêua cháo yang wîng dee dee. mâi mee panhăa ná khráp.
MECHANIC: fai bràyk sĭa. khlát lŭam. láe bàet-ter-rêe mâi dee khráp. tâwng plìan khráp. sŏngsăi khun mâi ao rót pai chék bòi khráp.
JOE: khâa sâwm thâorài khráp?
MECHANIC: tháng mòt jèt phan bàat khráp.
JOE: rót ja sèt kèe mohng khráp?

MECHANIC:	dùan mâak mái khráp?
JOE:	phŏm tâwng chái kheuhn née khráp. òo pìt kèe mohng khráp?
MECHANIC:	pìt săwng thûm. phŏm khít wâa thûm khrêung ja sèt khráp.

Vocabulary

chék	to check
kamlang (plus verb)	to be doing something
fai	light
bràyk	brake
khlát	clutch
bàet-ter-rêe	battery
sŏngsăi	to suspect, guess, doubt
dùan	urgent
òo	car repair shop



Language points

kamlang

kamlang before a verb indicates an action in progress (present or past time; **yòo** is optional). **kamlang ja** indicates something about to happen:

> **phŏm kamlang ja pai**
> I'm about to go

Exercise 3

(a) Rewrite this conversation using the cues below:

> A: pai sathăanee tamrùat réu yang khráp?
> B: yang mâi dâi pai khâ.
> A: ja pai mêuarài?
> B: kamlang ja pai.

Example: 1 change some money
A: **láek plìan ngern réu yang khráp?**
B: **yang mâi dâi plìan khâ.**
...

2 repair your computer
3 wash the car
4 have a shower
5 wash your hair
6 wash the clothes

(b) Now change the second line of the conversation to say that you are still doing these things (use **kamlang . . . yòo**).

(c) Now change the last line to say you will do them after or before you've done something else (use **lăng jàak**, **sèt láeo** or **kàwn**).

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: travelling by bus and train.

A:	khăw tŭa rót dùan săwng thêe khâ.
B:	pai klàp rĕuh thîo dio?
A:	thîo dio khâ.

Vocabulary

rót dùan	express
thêe	classifier for seats in train, etc.
pai klàp	return
thîo dio	one-way

Exercise 4

(a) Complete this conversation at a booking office:

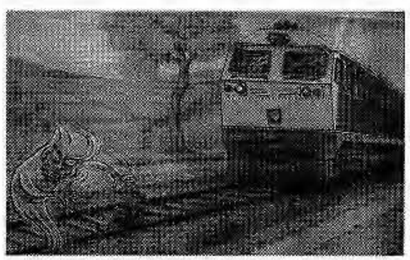
LISA:	pai chieng mài _______ khá?
CLERK:	_______ khon lá pàet rói khráp. rót tham-madaa _____ hâa rói khráp.
LISA:	pai klàp rěuh khá?
CLERK:	mâi châi khráp.______________ khráp.
LISA:	rót _____ kèe mohng khá?
CLERK:	àwk săwng thûm khráp.
LISA:	pai kèe _______ khá?
CLERK:	pramaan sìp chûamohng khráp. thěung ___________.
LISA:	séuh tŭa săwng _____ khâ.

(b) Rewrite the conversation above:

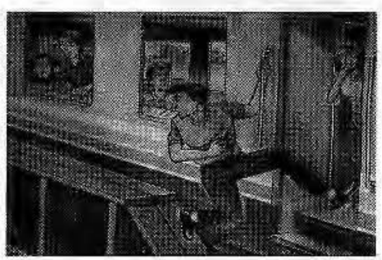
Tony wants three return tickets to Bangkok. The clerk gives him the price of a one-way ticket on an ordinary train. Tony wants to know what time the train leaves and arrives.

Example: TONY: **pai krungthâyp thâorài khráp?**

. . .



ห้ามใช้ทางรถไฟเป็นที่พักผ่อน
เพราะอาจได้รับอันตรายได้



ห้ามใช้บันไดรถไฟเป็นที่โดยสาร
เพราะอาจพลัดตกจากขบวนรถ

Dialogue 5

Maalee is looking round a new shopping centre when she catches sight of Ann, who looks upset. What happened at the police station?

MAALEE:	sawàtdee pee mài khâ.
ANN:	khàwpkhun khâ.
MAALEE:	Ann doo mĕuan mâi sabai: jai. mee arai rěuh khá?
ANN:	chán tham krapăo hăi: khâ.
MAALEE:	khun tham hăi: yang-ngai khá?
ANN:	chán leuhm wái nai rót khâ. yòo bon bàw khâang lăng.
MAALEE:	nai krapăo mee khăwng yér mái khá?
ANN:	mee kunjae bâan, mee wăen, mee sôi khaw thawng. mee chút nawn phâa măi. mee thŭng tháo kàp khĕm khàt thêe chán séuh hâi faen pen khăwng khwăn wan kèrt. khĕm khàt tham jàak năng. tham thêe ìttaalêe. chán ráwng hâi.
MAALEE:	khun lók rót réu plào khá?
ANN:	mâi dâi lók khâ. pai páep dio ayng.
MAALEE:	âo:! mâi dâi lók rót rěuh khá? tawn née mee khàmohi yér. tham-mai khun pen khon khêe leuhm? khun pai jâeng thêe sathăanee tamrùat réu yang khá?
ANN:	jâeng láeo khâ.
MAALEE:	tamrùat bàwk wâa yang-ngai khá?
ANN:	tamrùat bàwk wâa chán pen khon khêe leuhm khâ.

Vocabulary

sabai: jai	happy		
mee arai rěuh?	is anything the matter?		
wái	to put away	**bàw**	seat (of a car)
kunjae	key	**wăen**	ring
sôi khaw	necklace	**khaw**	neck
thawng	gold	**chút nawn**	pyjamas
phâa măi	silk	**thŭng tháo**	sock
khĕm khàt	belt	**khăwng khwăn**	present
năng	leather	**ráwng hâi**	to cry
lók	lock	**páep dio**	just a moment
khàmohi	thief, to steal	**bàwk**	to tell, say

Language points

Prepositions and adverbials of place

yòo bon bàw	It was on the seat
yòo tâi bàw	It is under the seat
phátlom yòo rawàang tiang kàp tôo yen	The fan is between the bed and the fridge
yòo khâang bon (chán bon)	It's upstairs
yòo khâang lâng (chán lâng)	It's downstairs
yòo chán sǎwng	It's on the second floor

Translating 'what'

After 'to do' and verbs of saying and thinking 'what' is often translated by **yang-ngai** (how):

tham yang-ngai dee?
What should we do?

khun khít wâa yang-ngai?
What do you think?

kháo phôot wâa yang-ngai?
What did he say?

'Putting' and 'taking'

sài is 'put in' or 'put on (clothes)'. **wái** after a verb indicates that something is 'put away':

yang mâi chái. ja kèp wái kàwn.
I'm not using it yet. I'll put it away first.

waang is 'to put something down':

waang sohfaa thêe nêe
Put the sofa down here

'to remove something' is **ao àwk**:

tâwng ao kunjae àwk kàwn
You must remove the key first

Exercise 5

Correct these statements by changing the preposition or adverbial:

Example: 1 **thêe tham ngaan yòo chán sǎwng**
thêe tham ngaan yòo chán nèung

2 kunjae yòo bon kâoêe

3 hâwng náam yòo khâang lâng

4 rót mawtersai yòo khâang nâa rót sìp láw

5 khrêuang sák phâa yòo khâang nai

6 sôi khaw yòo tâi tó

7 hâwng pràchum yòo chán lâng

8 praisànee yòo khâang lǎng sathǎanee rót fai

Dialogue 6

Extend your vocabulary: describing things.

A: chán séuh naalíkaa thêe tàlàat. pen ngern. baang. bao. mâi phaeng dûey.
B: sǒngsǎi pen khǎwng plawm.
A: mâi châi khâ. pen khǎwng tháe.

Vocabulary

ngern	silver	**plawm**	fake
baang	thin	**tháe**	genuine
bao	light		
Other words			
klom	round	**sèe liam**	square
sǎam liam	triangular	**nǎa**	thick
léuk	deep	**kwâang**	wide
khâep	narrow	**phâa fâi:**	cotton
mái	wood	**phlaasàtìk**	plastic

Exercise 6

Which of the above words could describe these:

1 nangsěuh	2 tó	3 jaan
4 sêua yêuht	5 tôo	6 kràdum
7 thanŏn	8 see dee	9 thalay
10 bâan	11 wăen	

Reading and writing

Tone rules for syllables with tone marks

You will remember from the Introduction that to work out the tone of a syllable, you need to know the class of the initial consonant. You have now learned all the common consonants, which are divided into classes as follows:

Low ค ฆ ง ช ซ ฌ ญ ฑ ฒ ณ ท ธ น พ ฟ ภ ม ย ร ล ว ฬ ฮ
Mid ก จ ฎ ด ต บ ป อ
High ข ฉ ฐ ถ ผ ฝ ศ ษ ส ห

If the syllable has the first or second tone markers the tone depends on the class of the initial consonant:

Class of initial consonant	*First tone marker*			*Second tone marker*		
Low	*Falling tone*			*High tone*		
	mâi	ไม่	'not'	**ráan**	ร้าน	'shop'
Mid or high	*Low tone*			*Falling tone*		
	tàang	ต่าง	'different'	**tâwng**	ต้อง	'must'
	khài	ไข่	'egg'	**khâo:**	ข้าว	'rice'

If the syllable has the third tone marker it has a *high tone*: รถตุ๊กตุ๊ก **rót túk túk** ('three-wheel taxi'); โต๊ะ **tó** ('table'). If the syllable has the fourth tone marker it has a rising tone: ตั๋ว **tŭa** ('ticket') กระเป๋า **krapăo** ('bag').

To practise, choose some words from the glossary and work out the tone. Then check your answers against the transliterations.

When you need to work out the tone of a new word, refer to the tables in this unit and Unit 12 until, after time, you can dispense with them.

Exercise 7 Word study

Compound words
Find pairs from these words to make compound nouns which translate the English words below:

เก่า เครื่อง ตู้ บ้าน สูบ ถุง งาน
ดู มือ เล่น แม่ ยา ของ หมอ
ซักผ้า โรง โทรศัพท์ ของ

1 glove	2 antique	3 toy
4 fortune teller	5 washing machine	6 factory
7 phone box	8 tobacco	9 housewife

Exercise 8 Reading

(a) Here are extracts from some advertisements. Identify the products they are advertising and summarise the selling points:

1 หน้าร้อน หน้าฝน หน้าหนาว เย็นสบายตลอด 365 วัน
★ ทำให้ห้องเย็นเร็ว ★ เงียบ

2 ไปทุกที่ไม่มีเหงา
★ เครื่องเล่นคาสเซ็ต ★ ดีไซน์ใหม่
★ มี 2 สี (สีชมพู / เงิน) ★ มีรีโมท
★ น้ำหนัก 148 กรัม กว้าง 78 ยาว 108 หนา 38 มม.

3 อาหารสดตลอดเวลา !
★ 3 ประตู ★ สำหรับครอบครัวขนาดใหญ่
★ เครื่องทำน้ำแข็ง ★ กว้าง สูง และ ลึก
★ ใส่ผักและผลไม้ได้มาก
★ ใส่ขวดเครื่องดื่มขนาด 2 ลิตร ได้มากถึง 8 ขวด

4 ของแท้ . . . แท้ . . . แน่นอนกว่า

★ เสียงชัดดี ★ ใช้ได้ทั่วประเทศ

★ ใช้ทุกที่ทุกเวลา ★ สะดวกสบายกับเมนูภาษาไทย

★ สนุกกับโปรแกรมเสียงดนตรี

★ ถ่ายรูปแล้วก็ส่งไปให้เพื่อนได้

5 ★ ความเร็ว 15 แผ่น/นาที

★ รับงานหนักได้เดือนละ 120,000 แผ่น

★ เครื่องดิจิตอล ถ่าย สี-ขาวดำ

น้ำหนัก	weight	น้ำแข็ง	ice	ทั่ว	the whole

(b) Translate these safety instructions for using electrical goods:

1 อย่าให้เครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าโดนน้ำ
2 อย่าใช้เครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าในห้องน้ำ
3 อย่าวางของหนักบนสายไฟฟ้า
4 เป็นไปได้ถอดปลั๊กทุกครั้งหลังใช้งาน
5 เมื่อซื้อเครื่องใช้ไฟฟ้าต้องซื้อของแท้
6 อ่านคู่มือก่อนการใช้เครื่อง

โดน	to come into contact with	คู่มือ	manual
สาย	wire		

Exercise 9 Writing

Write notes to include in a letter telling someone about a mobile phone you have just bought. Include these points:

1 bought it in department store yesterday; store gave a free wallet
2 not expensive; special price (20 per cent discount) but no English language manual
3 pretty colour (pink), small, lightweight, 80 grams, clear sound
4 English menu, can take photographs, battery lasts two hours

12 Past adventures and hopes for the future

In this unit you will talk about events in the past and the future.

You will learn how to:

- say what you have done or used to do
- talk about things increasing and decreasing
- use **tâng tàe**
- express hopes, possibilities and certainties
- refer to the months of the year
- talk about animals, the environment and education

Dialogue 1

Ken is talking to the guest-house owner about what he's been doing on his holiday. Why doesn't Ken want to go for an elephant ride?

OWNER:	mêua waan née khun pai năi khá?
KEN:	pai thîo sŭan sàt khráp.
OWNER:	doo cháang réu plào khá?
KEN:	mâi dâi doo khráp. waylaa mâi phaw.
OWNER:	mee lôok cháang phêrng kèrt. khun khoei dâi yin khào: mái khá?
KEN:	mâi khoei khráp. khon thai rák cháang mâak châi mái khráp?
OWNER:	châi khâ. pen sàt theê khăeng raeng. tham ngaan kèng. chàlàat dûey. khun khoei khèe cháang mái khá?
KEN:	khoei khráp.
OWNER:	mêuarài khá?

KEN:	săwng pee thêe láeo khráp. tawn phŏm yòo chieng mài khráp. khèe khráng dio khráp.
OWNER:	sanùk mái khá?
KEN:	mâi sanùk khráp. phŏm klua. tâng tàe nán phŏm mâi sŏnjai khèe cháang èek loei khráp.

Vocabulary

cháang	elephant	**phêrng**	just
khoei	ever, used to	**dâi yin**	to hear (about)
khào:	news	**khăeng raeng**	strong
chàlàat	clever	**tâng tàe**	since
tâng tàe nán	since then	**mâi . . . èek loei**	never again
loei	at all		

Language points

khoei *('ever', 'used to')*

Affirmative statements: Present perfect or 'used to'

phŏm khoei pai hăa măw doo.
I have been to a fortune teller

phŏm khoei sòop burèe tàe lêrk láeo
I used to smoke but I've given up

Questions: Present perfect with 'ever'

khun khoei khèe rót mawtersai mái khá?
Have you ever ridden a motorcycle?

Negative statements: Present perfect with 'never'

phŏm mâi khoei tàeng ngaan.
I have never been married

'First' and 'last'

khráng râek	the first time
khráng sùt tháai:	the last time

phêrng

Use **phêrng** before a verb to say something has just happened:

kháo phêrng maa
They have just come

'Since' and 'when'

Use **tâng tàe** ('since') either with a definite time expression, e.g. **săwng pee thêe láeo** ('since two years ago'), or a clause:

tâng tàe phŏm maa yòo krungthâyp phŏm àwk kamlang kai: thúk wan
Since I came to Bangkok I have exercised every day

For 'when', referring to the past, use **tawn**:

tawn phŏm pen khâi wàt yài
When I had the flu

Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with **phêrng**, **khráng**, **tawn, khoei** or **tâng tàe**:

1 A: khun _______ pai tàang prathâyt réu yang?
B: _______ khâ. _______ râek pai phamâa.
A: _______ yòo phamâa mâi sabai: châi mái?
B: khâ.

2 _______ chán pai ráan aahăan yêepùn tháwng sĭa.

3 phŏm _____ kin lâo tàe _____ née mâi kin.

4 _______ tàeng ngaan tàe lêrk kan láeo.

5 chán róojàk kháo _______ rian nangsĕuh dûey kan.

6 _______ chán maa krungthâyp chán mâi _______ pen wàt.

7 _______ tháláw kàp kháo pùat hŭa.

8 chán _______ khèe cháang lăi: _____. _____ sùt tháai: sanùk mâak.

Dialogue 2

Extend your vocabulary: animals.

A: khun khoei líang mǎa mái khráp?
B. khoei líang maeo tàe mǎa mâi khoei líang. khun líang arai khráp?
A. líang plaa khráp. plaa líang ngâi:. mâi tâwng phaa pai dern.

Vocabulary

líang	to keep as a pet, raise (children)		
mǎa	dog	**maeo**	cat
Other words			
ngoo	snake	**ling**	monkey
nók	bird	**malaeng**	insect
khwai:	water buffalo	**jarákhây**	crocodile



Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with a suitable animal:

1 phǒm klua ________ mâak thêe sùt.
2 ráwang yung kàt, thǎeo née mee ________ yér.

3 thúk wan kháo phaa ________ pai dern.
4 doo _____ tua née. mǔean khon!
5 phǒm châwp fang ______ ráwng.
6 mêua kàwn chao: naa chái raeng _____ tham naa.
7 ________ châwp kin nom kàp plaa.
8 thǎeo née wâi: náam antarai: phráw wâa mee __________.

Dialogue 3

Sue has just returned from a walk looking tired and hot when she is spotted by the guest-house owner. Why does he ask her if she saw any cabbages?

OWNER: tham arai maa khráp?
SUE: kamlang khêun doi yòo láeo kô lǒng thaang khâ.
OWNER: thěung mòo bâan chao: khǎo réu plào khráp?
SUE: mâi thěung khâ. dern kèuap sǎam chûamohng khâ. fǒn kamlang ja tòk. chôhk dee thêe mee phôochai: khàp rót pìkàp maa jer. kháo phaa ráo klàp maa sòng khâ.
OWNER: hěn phàk kàlàmplee yér mái khráp?
SUE: phàk kàlàmplee rěuh khá?
OWNER: samǎi kàwn chao: khǎo plòok fìn. tawn née plòok fìn mâi dâi:. phìt kòtmǎi:. chao: khǎo tâwng plìan maa plòok phàk kàlàmplee thaen. rát-thabaan chûey.
SUE: mâi hěn khâ. dern naan tàe mâi hěn râi mâi dâi jer khrai. chán nèuey mâak khâ.
OWNER: aakàat ráwn khráp. sǒngsǎi yang mâi chin khráp.
SUE: wan nǎi chán ja chin khá?

Vocabulary

maa (following a verb)		to have done, have been doing	
khêun	to go up	**lǒng thaang**	to get lost
mòo bâan	village	**chao: khǎo**	hill tribes
rót pìkàp	pick-up truck	**phàk kàlàmplee**	cabbage
samǎi kàwn	in the past	**plòok**	to plant
fìn	opium	**phìt kòtmǎi:**	illegal
phìt	wrong	**kòtmǎi:**	law
thaen	to replace, substitute	**rát-thabaan**	government
râi	plantation, field	**chin**	to get used to

Language points

maa *and* pai *expressing past time*

maa used after a main verb indicates that something happened recently. **pai năi maa?** ('Where have you been?') is a common greeting. **pai** after a verb emphasises that an action has finished already:

kháo khăi: bâan pai láeo
She sold her house already

'Go up', 'go down'

raakhaa ja khêun	The price will go up
raakhaa long	The price came down
long	to come (go) down

With adjectives **khêun** means 'become more' and **long** 'become less':

aakàat ráwn khêun	The weather has got hotter
aakàat yen long	The weather got cooler

Use **khêun** (not **kwàa**) if the change is seen as going up and **long** if it is regarded as going down. Other adjectives you use with **khêun** are: **dee**, **ûwan**, **khăeng raeng**, **rayo**, **ruey**, **sŭey**, **yài**, **phaeng**. Use the opposite adjectives with **long**.

Verb strings

Verbs are often put together without connectors to express a complex action: **kháo phaa ráo klàp maa sòng** 'He gave us a lift back' (lit. 'he brought us return come send').

Exercise 3

Use the notes to say what these people have done, are doing and are about to do. Use . . . **maa**, **kamlang** and **kamlang ja**:

Example: 1 **Dùsìt pai wâi: náam maa. kamlang àap náam yòo. kamlang ja àan nangsĕuh phim.**

	Have done	*Are doing*	*Are about to do*
1 Dùsìt	go swimming	shower	read the paper
2 Dao:	go shopping	cooking	watch television
3 Kâeo	elephant riding	rest	look at crocodiles
4 Fáa	got lost	walk to the train station	buy a ticket
5 Sŏmboon	plant some trees	take his dog for a walk	have some noodles
6 Nók	watch the news	watch a film	watch some sport
7 Sùphachai	clean the house	wash some clothes	wash the car

Dialogue 4

Extend your vocabulary: the environment.

A: pee née khun ja pai thîo thêe năi khá?
B: pai doi inthanon khâ. pen phookhăo thêe sŏong thêe sùt nai prathâyt thai. khun ja pai năi khá?
A: pai kàw samui khâ.

Vocabulary

doi inthanon	Doi Inthanon (Thailand's highest mountain)
phookhăo	mountain
kàw	island (pronounced with a very short vowel)
kàw samui	Koh Samui, island in the Gulf of Thailand



Other words

pàa	forest	**dàwk mái**	flower
faam	farm (general word)		
khlawng	canal	**sàphaan**	bridge
mâe náam	river	**lôhk**	world

Culture point

The environment

Thailand's economic development has taken place at the expense of the environment. Once pristine coastal areas are now scarred by tourist hotels. The growth of cities has led to severe urban pollution. Deforestation from illegal logging, construction projects and forest fires has led to droughts and floods. Abundant wildlife and native plants remain, however, protected in part by the numerous national parks.

Exercise 4

Complete these sentences using the new vocabulary introduced above:

1 nêe ________ jarákhây. pai doo mái khá?
2 tawn dern nai ________ tâwng ráwang malaeng.
3 thêe krungthâyp ráo nâng reua pai thaang ________.
4 fǒn tòk nàk ________ thûam.
5 thêe nêe chán yàak plòok ________ thêe sǔey.
6 tâwng nâng reua sǎam chûamohng thěung ______.
7 thêe San Francisco mee ________ thêe sǔey mâak.
8 Everest pen ______ thêe sǒong thêe sùt nai ________.

Dialogue 5

Jason has been visiting Chiang Mai. At the airport his friend, Nók, is lamenting the fact that they have had few opportunities to meet. When is Jason returning to Australia?

NÓK: khun yòo meuang thai naan réu yang khá?
JASON: yòo sǎwng pee láeo khráp.
NÓK: sǎwng pee rěuh khá? khun ja yòo meuang thai èek naan mái khá?

JASON: tham-mai rěuh khráp?
NÓK: sǐa dai ráo mâi mee ohkàat jer kan kàwn ná khá.
JASON: mâi pen rai khráp. nai ànaakhót ráo àat mee ohkàat jer kan bòi ná khráp.
NÓK: wǎng wâa yangngán khâ tàe èek sǎwng deuan chán ja pai khaenaadaa khâ. ja pai sǎwn phaasǎa thai thêe máhǎawít-tháyaalai khâ.
JASON: ja pai naan mái khráp?
NÓK: hòk deuan khâ. ja klàp deuan phréutsajikaayon. ráo ja jer kan tawn nán khâ.
JASON: âo:! deuan tulaa phǒm ja klàp bâan thêe áwtsàtrelia khráp. phǒm mâi dâi klàp bâan maa naan láeo khráp.
NÓK: deuan tulaa rěuh khá? khun ja yòo áwtsàtrelia naan mái khá?
JASON: yang mâi nâe khráp. khong ja yòo naan khráp. àat ja sèuksǎa prinyaatree.
NÓK: thâa yang nán mêuarài ráo ja jer kan khá? châat nâa châi mái khá?

Vocabulary

sǐa dai	it's a pity	**ànaakhót**	future
àat ja	maybe	**wǎng**	to hope
wǎng wâa yangngán	I hope so	**sǎwn**	to teach
deuan phréutsajikaayon	November		
deuan tulaa	October	**nâe (jai)**	to be sure
khong (ja)	probably	**sèuksǎa**	to study (at college or university)
prinyaatree	first degree	**thâa yang nán**	in that case
thâa	if	**châat**	life (i.e. incarnation)

Language points

'How long?'

Questions – use **réu yang** or **kèe pee** etc.:

pen khroo maa kèe pee láeo?
How long have you been a teacher?

Statements – use **(maa) naan (láeo)** or **tâng naan**:

mâi dâi jer kan tâng naan
We haven't met for ages

Months of the year

deuan mókaraa(khom)	January
deuan kumphaa(phan)	February
deuan meenaa(khom)	March
deuan maysăa(yon)	April
deuan phréutsaphaa(khom)	May
deuan míthunaa(yon)	June
deuan karakádaa(khom)	July
deuan sĭnghăa(khom)	August
deuan kanyaa(yon)	September
deuan tulaa(khom)	October
deuan phréutsajikaa(yon)	November
deuan thanwaa(khom)	December

Use the word **deuan** (month) before the name of the month. The ending **-khom** is used for months with 31 days; the ending **-yon** for months with 30 days. In spoken Thai the formal ending (**-khom**, **-yon** or **-phan**) is often omitted.

Dates

Use **wan thêe**:

wan née wan thêe thâorài?	What's the date today?
wan née wan thêe săam	Today's the third

For ordinal numbers use **thêe** before the number:

wan kèrt mêuarài?	When's your birthday?
wan thêe nèung deuan tulaa	The first of October

The Thai calendar enumerates years from the birth of the Buddha so is 543 years ahead of the Western calendar:

chán kèrt pee săwng hâa nèung sèe
I was born in 1971

Expressing possibility, probability and certainty

àat ja and **khong ja** used before a verb indicate something is possible (**ja** is sometimes omitted):

phŏm àat ja mâi pai	I might not go
khong (ja) yòo naan	I'll probably stay a long time

Something is certain – use **nâe nawn**:

phrûng née ja pai nâe nawn
I'll go tomorrow for sure

Someone is certain – use **nâe jai**:

phŏm nâe jai wâa kháo ja maa
I'm sure he'll come

Culture point

châat nâa (literally 'the next life' or 'incarnation') is often used jokingly to suggest that something may not happen at all (in this lifetime). 'Former incarnation' is **châat kàwn.**

Exercise 5

1 Use the list below to write short exchanges:

Example: A: **khun tàeng ngaan deuan mókaraa châi mái?**
B: **mâi châi. tàeng ngaan deuan thanwaa**
(use the month before that given)

Jan.	got married
Feb.	planted flowers
Mar.	attended funeral
Apr.	had an accident
May	taught French
Jun.	stopped smoking
Jul.	had flu
Aug.	entered university
Sept.	visited dentist

Oct.	booked air ticket
Nov.	son born
Dec.	went abroad

2 Repeat the exercise using the month after that given.

Exercise 6

Respond to these statements using **khong**, **àat ja**, **wăng** or **sŏngsăi**:

Example: 1 **fŏn tòk nàk lăi: wan láeo**
sŏngsăi náam ja thûam

2 phŏm ja pai yòo áwtsàtrelia
3 kháo rian phaasăa angkrìt kèng
4 khăo dern kèuap sèe chûamohng
5 wan aathít ja pai ráan khăi: nangsĕuh
6 mâi dâi láang rót tâng naan
7 thêe nêe hâi châo rót thòok mâak
8 mêua waan née kháo mee ùbàt hàyt

Exercise 7

Respond to these statements by asking a question with (**maa**) **naan réu yang** or **... maa kèe ... láeo?**:

Example: 1 **chán tàeng ngaan láeo**
khun tàeng ngaan maa naan réu yang?

2 kháo lên káwp kèng
3 chán yòo angkrìt
4 chán săwn phaasăa fàràngsàyt
5 chán phêrng maa yòo New York
6 chán lêrk kàp săamee láeo
7 chán kamlang rian phaasăa angkrìt yòo

Dialogue 6

*Extend your vocabulary: education (**kaan sèuksăa**).*

A: khun pen nák sèuksăa rĕuh khráp?
B: phêrng jòp khráp.

A: khun jòp arai maa?
B: jòp kaan banchee khráp.

Vocabulary

nák sèuksăa	student (at college, university)		
jòp	to finish (e.g. studies)	**kaan banchee**	accounts
banchee	account		

Other words

nák rian	student (at school)	**kaan sàwp**	test, exam
sàwp	take an exam	**sàwp dâi:**	pass an exam
sàwp tòk	fail an exam	**wíchaa**	subject

Culture point

Education

Public education is free and compulsory for all children from ages six to twelve. In rural areas, many children drop out after the compulsory six years in order to help their families. School terms are from May to October and November to March. The summer vacation is from March until May. Schools normally start at 8 a.m. and finish at 4 p.m. with many students being taken to school by bus. Most children wear uniforms as do teachers. Education tends to be rather traditional with learning concentrating on the right answer rather than encouraging creative or analytical thinking. Discipline is much less of a problem than in the West.

Exercise 8

Complete these sentences with vocabulary introduced above:

1 phrûng née phŏm ja sàwp. wăng wâa ______.
2 mêua waan née phŏm sàwp. phŏm klua ______.
3 khun kamlang sèuksăa ______ arai?
4 phŏm khâo máhăawít-tháyaalai hâa pee thêe láeo. ______ pee thêe láeo.
5 máhăawít-tháyaalai mee ______ jèt rói khon.
6 ______ tâwng pai rohng rian hòk mohng cháo.

Reading

Uncommon consonants

ฎ	**d** (**t** final)
เดือนกรกฎาคม	**deuan karakádaa (khom)**
กฎหมาย	**kòtmăi:**
ฐ	**th**
รัฐบาล	**rát-thabaan**

Vowel combinations

เ_าะ	**aw** (pronounced as a short vowel)		
เกาะ	**kàw**	เบาะ	**bàw**
ทะเลาะกัน	**tháláw kan**	เพราะ	**phráw**

Tone rules: syllables without tone marks

You will remember from the Introduction that to work out the tone of a syllable without a tone mark you need to know: (a) the class of the initial consonant; (b) the type of syllable ending; and (c) (in some cases) the length of the vowel.

Syllable endings can be hard (a short vowel or **p**, **t**, **k**) or soft (a long vowel or **m**, **n**, **w**, **ng** or **y**).

Initial consonant	*Syllable ending*	
	Hard	*Soft*
Low	Short vowel: High tone **rák** รัก 'love' Long vowel: Falling tone **mâak** มาก 'very'	Mid tone **maa** มา 'to come'
Mid	Low tone **tàt** ตัด 'to cut'	Mid tone **taa** ตา 'eye'
High	Low tone **sòop** สูบ 'to smoke'	Rising tone **khăi:** ขาย 'to sell'

You now have the complete tone rules to refer to when you need to work out the tone of a new word.

Exercise 9 Word study

Arrange these words in groups. Each group should have a general word and specific words which relate to it:

Example: สี (general word)
สีเทา สีเหลือง สีน้ำตาล สีม่วง (specific words)

แตงโม แคนาดา เก้าอี้ เบียร์ ชุดสากล ประเทศ มวย ผลไม้
ออสเตรเลีย เครื่องดื่ม เทนนิส เยอรมัน เหล้าไวน์ โต๊ะ

เฟอร์นิเจอร์ มะพร้าว กางเกงขาสั้น กาแฟ เสื้อผ้า แบดมินตัน
น้ำมะนาว กระโปรง กล้วย กีฬา มะละกอ สหรัฐอเมริกา เตียงนอน

Exercise 10 Reading

Read these extracts from a horoscope and for each extract note:

- the months
- who the forecast relates to (if applicable)
- what is predicted

15 เมษายน – 14 พฤษภาคม
คนที่กำลังหางานทำจะมีโอกาสได้รับข่าวดีในการทำงาน
คนว่างงานจะมีโอกาสได้รับงานใหม่ คนที่มีงานทำแล้วจะมีการเดินทางไกล

15 มิถุนายน – 14 กรกฎาคม
คนที่ทำงานเกี่ยวกับการศึกษาจะมีข่าวดีเกี่ยวกับการทำงานจากทางไกล
ระวังอุบัติเหตุภายในบ้าน

15 สิงหาคม – 14 กันยายน
จะได้รับข่าวดีทางไกลเกี่ยวกับการเงิน
คนที่ทำราชการจะมีการเดินทางเกี่ยวกับการงานบ่อยๆ
เกี่ยวกับอาหารต้องระวังในช่วงกลางเดือน จะได้รับของขวัญจากทางไกล

15 ตุลาคม – 14 พฤศจิกายน
คนที่ทำงานเกี่ยวกับการประกันจะมีโอกาสทำงานเกี่ยวกับบริษัทต่าง
ประเทศ

คนที่ทำงานเกี่ยวกับกฎหมายจะมีโอกาสที่เป็นไปได้ในช่วงนี้
ระวังของจะหายในช่วงนี้
จะได้รับความสุขกับคนในครอบครัวในช่วงนี้มากกว่าเดือนที่ผ่านมา

15 ธันวาคม – 14 มกราคม
คนที่ทำธุรกิจเกี่ยวกับร้านอาหารต้องแก้ไขปัญหาของผู้อื่น
สำหรับคนที่ทำงานเกี่ยวกับการผลิตหรือเกี่ยวกับเด็ก ๆ
จะได้รับความรู้ใหม่ ๆ เกี่ยวกับการทำงาน
เป็นช่วงเวลาที่จะต้องตัดสินใจเกี่ยวกับความรักก่อนวันที่ 30

15 กุมภาพันธ์ – 14 มีนาคม
คนที่ทำงานเกี่ยวกับการค้าขายรถยนต์มือสองมีข่าวดีทางไกลเกี่ยวกับการงานใหม่
ระวังอุบัติเหตุทางรถ
สำหรับคนที่มีครอบครัวแล้วแต่ยังไม่มีลูกจะมีข่าวดีมาถึงหลังวันที่ 20

ว่างงาน	unemployed	ช่วง(เวลา)	period of time
แก้ไข	to solve	การค้าขาย	trade

Exercise 11 Writing

Write notes to include in a letter about your favourite types of holiday. Say whether you like these (use **châwp**, **mâi châwp**, **sanùk**, **châwp mâak kwàa**, **sŏnjai** and **nâa sŏnjai**):

sports; seaside; mountains; waterfalls; old buildings; snow; walking; shopping; looking at flowers and trees; birdwatching; quiet places; walking in forests; swimming in rivers; taking photographs.

13 What does it mean?

In this unit you will discuss questions to do with language and culture.

You will learn how to:

- ask how to say things in Thai
- ask about religion and customs
- use conditional clauses
- make requests
- understand some signs and notices prohibiting and requesting
- use the Thai you need when having a massage

Dialogue 1

Sùphachai tries to explain to Lisa something she doesn't understand. What are the four things she doesn't understand?

LISA:	hăa arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	hăa phótjànaanúkrom khráp.
LISA:	phôot cháa cháa nòi dâi: mái khá? phôot rayo rayo chán mâi róo rêuang khâ.
SÙPHACHAI:	hăa phótjànaanúkrom khráp.
LISA:	phótjànaanúkrom kheuh arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	pen nangsĕuh kìo kàp kaan plae khráp.
LISA:	plae kheuh arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	plae măi: khwaam wâa plìan phaasăa khráp. phŏm athíbai: mâi thòok.
LISA:	athíbai: kheuh arai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	khun tâwng doo phótjànaanúkrom khráp.
LISA:	phótjànaanúkrom . . .

SÙPHACHAI:	mâi tâwng thăam khráp. jer láeo khráp. lêm née pen phótjànaanúkrom khráp.
LISA:	khâo jai láeo khâ. hăa phótjànaanúkrom tham-mai khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	hăa khwaam măi: kham khráp.
LISA:	chán mâi khâo jai khâ.
SÙPHACHAI:	ôi! tham-mai wan née khâo jai kan yâak!

Vocabulary

phótjànaanúkrom	dictionary		
róo rêuang	to know what is going on, understand		
rêuang	about, affair, story		
kheuh	to be	**plae**	to translate
măi: khwaam wâa	to mean	**athíbai:**	to explain
thăam	to ask	**lêm**	classifier for books
khwaam măi:	meaning	**kham**	word
ôi!	exclamation expressing pain or tiredness		

Language points

kheuh *('to be')*

Use **kheuh** when giving the meaning, name or definition of something:

sàwp tòk kheuh sàwp mâi dâi:
'Fail' means 'not pass'

Use **pen** when describing something.

Requests

phôot èek nèung khráng dâi: mái khá?
Can you say it once more?

Use **dâi: mái** to make a request; **nòi** and/or **ná** make the request sound more polite:

phôot dang dang nòi dâi: mái khá?
Can you speak up (loud)?

phôot cháa cháa nòi ná khá?
Speak more slowly, will you?

hâi indicates that you want something done for someone:

săwn hâi (chán) nòi dâi: mái khá?
Can you teach me?

'If' and 'when' clauses

The conjunctions 'if' and 'when' are often omitted in spoken Thai:

khun mâi khâo jai kô bàwk chán ná
If you don't understand, tell me

Exercise 1

Ask someone to do these things:

Example: 1 look for the dictionary
hăa phótjànaanúkrom nòi dâi: mái khá?

2 speak loud
3 explain something again
4 teach you Japanese
5 drive slowly
6 translate something for you
7 tell you something again
8 wash the car quickly

Dialogue 2

Ann and Yài are looking at some pictures of tattoos in a museum. What are the two signs Yài draws her attention to?

ANN:	an née rîak wâa arai khá?
YÀI:	rîak wâa sàk khráp. thăam tham-mai khráp?
ANN:	thăam chŏei chŏei khâ. sùan mâak phôochai: thêe mee sàk pen khon râi: châi mái khá?
YÀI:	mâi châi khráp. nák muey níyom. nák sèuksăa kô níyom.
ANN:	an née kheuh arai khá?

YÀI:	pen khrêuang meuh kào khráp.
ANN:	kháo chái tham arai khá?
YÀI:	pâi: née bàwk. khun àan pen mái khráp?
ANN:	chán àan mâi àwk khâ. àan dâi: tàe baang kham. pâi: àan wâa arai khá?
YÀI:	àan wâa kháo chái tham sàk khráp.
ANN:	tham sàk rĕuh khá? jing rĕuh khá?
YÀI:	phôot lên khráp. pen ùp-pàkawn thêe mêua kàwn chao: naa chái tham naa. khun tâwng hâi khroo săwn àan láe khĭan phaasăa thai.
ANN:	chán mâi mee khroo khâ. chán rian dûey tua ayng khâ.
YÀI:	rĕuh khráp?
ANN:	tàe chán khít wâa àan phaasăa thai mâi khôi mee pràyòht khâ. sùan mâak pâi: thêe sămkhan khĭan pen phaasăa angkrìt.
YÀI:	pâi: née àan wâa arai khráp?
ANN:	mâi róo khâ.
YÀI:	àan wâa 'kàrúnaa thàwt rawng tháo', láeo kô pâi: née àan wâa 'hâam jàp, pràp hâa rói bàat'. baang khráng àan phaasăa thai mee pràyòht châi mái khráp?

Vocabulary

rîak wâa	to be called	**sàk**	tattoo
chŏei chŏei	just, only	**khon rái:**	criminal
rái:	bad, wicked		
níyom	to appreciate, to be popular with		
khrêuang meuh	tool	**pâi:**	sign, notice
àwk	can (used with verbs of thinking and communicating)		
tàe	only		
àan wâa arai?	what does it say?		
phôot lên	to joke		
ùp-pàkawn	equipment, utensil		
khĭan	to write		
dûey tua ayng	by oneself		
mee pràyòht	to be useful		
sămkhan	important		
kàrúnaa	please (formal, written)		
hâam	to forbid		
jàp	to touch, catch, arrest		
pràp	to fine		

Language points

Asking for help with Thai

an née rîak wâa arai khá?
What is this called?

phaasăa thai khĭan yang-ngai?
How do you write it in Thai?

phaasăa thai phôot yang-ngai?
How do you say it in Thai?

plae wâa arai?
What does it mean (how do you translate it)

phaasăa angkrìt plae wâa arai?
What is it in English?

Expressions with phôot

'To speak seriously' is **phôot jing**. 'Speak about' is **phôot thĕung**. 'To tell a lie' is **phôot koh-hòk** or just **koh-hòk**. 'To speak on the phone' is **phôot thohrasàp**.

Translating 'only'

- referring to quantities, numbers or amounts, use **tàe**, **ayng** or **thâonán**:

  phŏm tham khráng dio ayng
  I only did it once

  àan dâi: baang kham thâonán
  I can only read a few words

  tàe precedes what it refers to; **thâonán** and **ayng** follow it.

- for 'only one kind' use **yàang dio** with things and actions:

  ao phàt thai yàang dio
  I only want fried noodles

  kháo chái tham naa yàang dio
  They use it only for working in the fields

– for 'only doing this and not something else' use **chŏei chŏei**:

phŏm thăam chŏei chŏei
I'm just asking

doo chŏei chŏei
I'm just looking (i.e. not touching or buying)

Signs

hâam ห้าม ('to forbid') is one of the most common words in signs. When spoken it sounds terse unless you add **ná:**

hâam thíng khayà (ná)
It is forbidden to throw rubbish
(You mustn't throw rubbish)

khayà rubbish **thíng** to throw away

kàrúnaa กรุณา ('please') is commonly used in requests:

kàrúnaa khàp rót cháa cháa
Please drive slowly

Another phrase you will see in many signs is **yin dee tâwn ráp** ยินดีต้อนรับ ('welcome' – lit. 'glad to welcome (you)').

Culture note

Tattoos

Traditionally tattoos were supposed to give strength, protect from weapons and attract admiration as long as wearers followed certain precepts of behaviour.

Exercise 2

Translate:

1 I can only write a few words
2 This utensil is used in cooking
3 I was only taking photographs – I didn't touch anything
4 This singer only knows one kind of song

5 This sign says 'No Smoking'
6 English is useful as it is spoken in many countries
7 I fixed the car myself

Exercise 3

What do these signs mean? (You will probably be able to deduce the meaning of **tòk** here.)

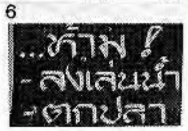
1


2


3

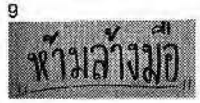

4


5


6


7


8


9


ล่า **lâa** to hunt

Dialogue 3

Extend your vocabulary: dealing with officials. Kate is stopped by the police while driving. What has she done wrong?

OFFICER: khăw doo bai khàp khèe nói khráp. khun khàp rót rayo kern pai khráp. thăeo née jamkàt khwaam rayo hâa sìp kilohmáyt tàw chûamong.
KATE: chán mâi róo khâ.
OFFICER: mâi hen pâi: rĕuh khráp?
KATE: mâi hen khâ.
OFFICER: phaasĕe mòt aayú láeo khráp. láeo kô khun tâwng rát khĕm khàt dûey. khâa pràp hâa rói bàat khráp. sen chêuh thêe née khráp.
KATE: sèt láeo rĕuh khá?
OFFICER: khráp. chôhk dee khráp. dern thâang plàwtphai ná khráp.

Vocabulary

jamkàt	to limit	**tàw**	per
phaasĕe	tax	**mòt aayú**	expired, out of date
rát	fasten, tighten	**sen**	to sign

Exercise 4

Rewrite Dialogue 3 to fit this situation:

Joe is stopped by the police for exceeding the 80 kilometres an hour speed limit.

POLICE OFFICER:	Driving licence out of date – must apply for a new one; fine one thousand baht.
JOE:	Asks to pay in police station.
POLICE OFFICER:	Okay but must fill in (write) form and deposit driving licence.
JOE:	Asks if can make photocopy first.
POLICE OFFICER:	Okay.

Example:

POLICE OFFICER: **thăeo née jamkàt khwaam rayo pàet sìp kilohmáyt tàw chûamong.**

. . .



bàep fawm	form
fàak	to deposit
thài: àykasăan	to photocopy
àykasăan	document

Culture point

Body language

The 'stop' sign made by a Thai policeman is the same as in the West but the 'go' sign is made with the hand outstretched and the fingers pointing downwards and moved backwards and forwards. The same sign is used for 'come here' or to call a taxi. To indicate 'go away' the hand is held in the same position but the fingers are moved upwards. Generally, Thais suppress facial expressions and displays of emotion apart from the smile and use few gestures when talking. It is considered more polite to keep your body still.

Displaying an open mouth (such as yawning or a wide-open laugh) is considered rude, especially for women, who cover their mouths when giggling or laughing. Silence, when listening, is a sign of politeness and interrupting is considered impolite.

Dialogue 4

Sùphachai is going to take Lisa for her first visit to a temple. How often does Sùphachai go to the temple?

SÙPHACHAI:	wan née ja phaa Lisa pai wát.
LISA:	chán sài kaang kayng khăa sân dâi: mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	mâi dâi: khráp. thâa khâo wát tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîaprói khráp.
LISA:	tâwng sài sêua khăen yao: mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	mâi jampen khráp. tàe thâa sài ja sùphâap kwàa.
LISA:	tâwng sài mùak nai wát mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	sài kô dâi:. mâi sài kô dâi:. láeo tàe.
LISA:	thài: rôop dâi: mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	dâi: khráp. thâa mâi mee pâi: hâam.
LISA:	khun nápthĕuh sàatsanăa phút châi mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	châi khráp.
LISA:	khun pai wát bòi mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	pai wan phrá khráp. deuan lá sèe khráng. láeo kô thúk aathít phŏm sài bàat khráp.
LISA:	sămràp chao: phút kaan tham bun sămkhan châi mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	châi khráp. chao: phút tâwng mee náam jai khráp.
LISA:	sàatsanăa phút hâam khâa sàt châi mái khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	châi khráp.

LISA:	tham-mai mee khon lâa sàt yér khá?
SÙPHACHAI:	khun mee kham thăam yér kern pai khráp.

Vocabulary

sùphâap rîapróí	polite	**sùphâap**	polite
rîapróí	well-mannered, tidy, properly finished		
jampen	necessary	**mùak**	hat, cap
láeo tàe	it's up to (you), depending on		
nápthéuh	to believe in, respect		
sàatsanăa phút	Buddhism		
sàatsanăa	religion	**wan phrá**	holy day
sài bàat	offer food to monks		
tham bun	to make merit	**mee náam jai**	to be generous
khâa	to kill		

Culture points

Religious practices

The practice of offering food to monks takes place early in the morning. Some Thais go to market areas; others may make their offering in front of their house if monks pass that way. Many Thais will gain merit by making generous donations to temples; any act of kindness or generosity can also help the doer gain merit. There is no equivalent of the Sabbath but Thais often go to temples on holy days, typically making offering of lotus buds, gold leaf and candles. Many Thais also visit temples to ask for advice in solving a problem or planning something.

Dress

Even Thais with modest means will normally dress immaculately, though not necessarily formally with jacket and tie for example. Slovenly or dirty appearance and revealing dress can offend – many temples and public offices have notices in English asking foreigners to dress 'politely'.

Generosity

Thais place a high value on generosity. It is customary for those who are well off or in a superior position to help those less

fortunate. A boss, for example, will often bring little presents for employees, take staff out for a meal at his/her own expense, etc.

Language points

Conditional sentences with thâa

thâa khâo wát tâwng sài kaang kayng khăa yao:
If you go in a temple you must wear long trousers

The same conditional sentences can also refer to the past. When referring to the future, **thâa** often means 'when':

thâa kháo maa láeo phŏm ja bàwk kháo
When (or if) he comes, I'll tell him

Use a negative conditional for 'unless':

sài kaang kayng khăa sân dâi: thâa mâi khâo wát
You can wear shorts unless you are going in a temple

Exercise 5

(a) Match what your friend wants to do (in column A) with the conditions for doing it (in column B). Then give your friend some advice using **thâa**:

Example: *A* **khâo wát** — *B* **tàeng tua sùphâap rîapróí**

thâa khun yàak khâo wát khun tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîapróí

	A	B
1	khâo máhăawít-tháyaalai	ao pai sâwm
2	pai tàang prathâyt	tham khwaam sa-àat
3	chái khrêuang sák phâa	sàwp kàwn
4	dâi ngaan thêe dee	ao yaa kan yung pai
5	châo rót	mee pháasáphawt
6	hâi châo bâan	phôot phaasăa angkrìt kèng
7	dern nai pàa	àan khôo meuh
8	khăi: rót	fàak pháasáphawt

(b) Say he can't do A without B.

Example: **khâo wát mâi dâi: thâa mâi tàeng tua sùphâap rîapróí.**

Exercise 6

Use the cues to explain in what circumstances you will meet these requests:

Example: 1 **bàwk khun Sùphachai wâa ja pai ráp dâi: mái khráp?** (meet him)

thâa jer kháo phǒm ja bàwk

2 khun sǎwn phaasǎa angkrìt hâi dâi: mái khráp?	(time)
3 khun sòng phǒm pai thêe sanǎambin dâi: mái khráp?	(car repaired)
4 khun plae an née pen phaasǎa angkrìt dâi: mái khráp?	(not difficult)
5 khun séuh yaa hâi dâi: mái khá?	(name of medicine)
6 pai thîo chai: thalay dûey kan dâi: mái khráp?	(cold cured)
7 khǎw hâi Maalee tham khwaam sa-àat bâan dâi: mái khráp?	(comes)
8 khun séuh phótjànaanúkrom hâi dâi: mái khráp?	(enough money)

Dialogue 5

Extend your vocabulary: having a massage. Joe goes for a traditional massage ***(nûat phǎen bohraan)****. Where has he got a pain?*

MǍW NÛAT:	khun pùat thêe nǎi khá?
JOE:	phǒm pùat khào khráp.
MǍW NÛAT:	khâang nǎi khá?
JOE:	khâang sái: khráp.
MǍW NÛAT:	dîo chán ja nûat hâi khâ. khun châwp nûat nàk rěuh bao khá?
JOE:	châwp phaw dee khráp. nûat bao kern pai mâi mee pràyòht khráp.
MǍW NÛAT:	bàep née jèp mái khá?
JOE:	jèp láeo ja bàwk khráp. ôi! nûat bao bao nòi dâi: mái khráp?
MǍW NÛAT:	khǎwthôht khâ.

Vocabulary

nûat	massage	**bohraan**	ancient, traditional
mǎw nûat	masseur/euse	**khào**	knee

Other words

lài	shoulder	**lǎng**	back
khâw tháo	ankle	**khâw meuh**	wrist

Culture point

Traditional massage

Massage is traditionally held to be a valuable form of healing and is often taught and practised in temples and also by the blind. It relaxes and strengthens the patient and soothes tired muscles.

Exercise 7

Rewrite the conversation above. Ann has hurt her right shoulder and would like a gentle massage. When the masseuse asks, she says she would like it a little stronger, though. She would like her back massaged but not her ankle or wrist.

Example: MASSEUSE: **khun pùat thêe nǎi khá?**

Reading and writing

Numerals

Thai numerals are used mostly in dates and official notices.

๐	๑	๒	๓	๔	๕	๖	๗	๘	๙	๑๐
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Prefixes

การ generally forms nouns from verbs; also before a verb or noun to make a concept meaning 'matters of' or 'to do with':

การบ้าน	homework
การศึกษา	education

นัก used before a verb or noun to describe a profession:

บิน	to fly
นักบิน	pilot

ผู้ person who does something:

ผู้เช่า	tenant

ของ used with a verb to make an object:

กิน	to eat
ของกิน	things to eat

Exercise 8 Word study

Match the words in column A with the translation in column B:

A	*B*
การท่องเที่ยว	fake
ความนิยม	accounts
การแปล	fashion designer
ความเป็นไปได้	tourism
การบัญชี	journalist
การเมือง	translation
พอใจ	popularity
เสียใจ	beginner
ของปลอม	politics
นักกีฬา	purchaser
นักข่าว	sorry
นักออกแบบแฟชั่น	satisfied
ผู้ซื้อ	possibility
ผู้เริ่มเรียน	athlete

Exercise 9 Reading

(a) Some Thais were asked if there were things they did not like about foreigners. Translate their replies:

1 แต่งตัวไม่สุภาพ
2 ไม่มีเพราะแล้วแต่วัฒนธรรม
3 มาทำห้างในเมืองไทย เอาเงินของคนไทยเข้าประเทศตัวเอง
4 ไม่มีเพราะไม่มีเพื่อนเป็นคนต่างประเทศ
5 แต่งตัวไม่ค่อยเรียบร้อย
6 ส่วนมากเป็นคนใจร้อน
7 ไม่มีน้ำใจเหมือนคนไทย
8 ตอนซื้อของชอบต่อราคามากเกินไป
9 ตอนเมาชาวต่างประเทศบางคนชอบไม่สุภาพ
10 บางคนไม่เข้าใจวัฒนธรรมไทย
11 มีชาวต่างประเทศบางคนอยู่เมืองไทยแต่ชอบบ่น ถ้าไม่พอใจอยู่ทำไม?

วัฒนธรรม culture ต่อราคา to bargain
พอใจ satisfied

(b) How healthy are you?

Translate this questionnaire:

		ไม่มี	เป็นบางครั้ง	เป็นบ่อย
1	นอนไม่หลับ			
2	ไม่อยากพบคน			
3	ปวดหัวข้างเดียว			
4	รู้สึกว่าไม่มีความสุข			
5	รู้สึกเหนื่อยอยู่ตลอดเวลา			
6	ไม่อยากทำอะไรตลอดเวลา			
7	รู้สึกกลัวหลายอย่าง			

		ไม่มี	เป็นบางครั้ง	เป็นบ่อย
8	ตื่นเต้นง่าย			
9	เป็นห่วงหลายอย่าง			
10	อารมณ์ไม่ดีบ่อย			
11	ไม่สบายแต่ไม่ไปหาหมอ			
12	คุณมีปัญหาหลายอย่าง			
13	คุณสูบบุหรี่เกินวันละ 5 มวน			
14	คุณดื่มแอลกอฮอล์เกินกว่าวันละ 2 แก้ว			
15	คุณออกกำลังกายไม่เกินอาทิตย์ละ 2 ชั่วโมง			
16	คุณกินน้ำตาลเกิน 1 ช้อนโต๊ะ/ต่อวัน			
17	คุณกินเนื้อสัตว์เกือบทุกวันหรือมากกว่า 5 ครั้ง/อาทิตย์			

พบ to meet รู้สึก to feel มวน classifier for cigarettes
ช้อน spoon

Exercise 10 Writing

You are having a miserable holiday in a terrible hotel. Write notes to include in a letter to a friend:

1 Weather terrible, rains every day, not happy, ill three days, don't feel like meeting other hotel guests.
2 Noisy, can't sleep, headache, bad mood, worried about parents.
3 Very hot, exercise every day but tired. Sea very deep, can't swim.
4 Smoking forbidden in restaurant but many people smoke.
5 Too much sugar in the food.

14 On the phone

In this unit you will deal with phone messages and have conversations on the phone.

You will learn how to:

- report what someone has said
- answer the phone and make a phone call
- use **chûey** to make a request
- say what you know or don't know

Dialogue 1

While Kate was out her house mate, Fáa, took a call for her. What details does Fáa give about the caller and his message?

FÁA: mêua cháo mee phôochai: fàràng thoh maa hăa Kate khâ.
KATE: kháo bàwk chêuh réu plào khá?
FÁA: mâi khâ. phôot phaasăa thai mâi khôi chát khâ.
KATE: kháo bàwk wâa kháo róojàk chán réu plào khá?
FÁA: kháo thăam wâa 'Kate yòo mài?'. khít wâa pen phêuan rûam ngaan khun khâ.
KATE: chán mâi róo wâa pen khrai. kháo fàak khâwkhwaam wái hâi réu plào khá?
FÁA: kháo bàwk wâa kháo ja thoh maa mài khâ.
KATE: kháo bàwk réu plào wâa ja thoh maa èek kèe mohng khá?
FÁA: mâi dâi bàwk khâ.
KATE: kháo mâi dâi bàwk arai èek rěuh khá?

FÁA: chán mâi nâe jai khâ. săi: mâi dee. sŏngsăi kháo thoh jàak tàang jangwàt rěuh thoh jàak tôo thohrasàp. kháo bàwk arai thêe plàek tàe chán dâi yin mâi khôi chát khâ.

KATE: arai khá?

FÁA: arai kìo kàp cháang sĕe sôm khâ.

KATE: cháang sĕe sôm rěuh khá? chán mâi róo rêuang khâ. khâo jai láeo khâ. kháo măi: khwaam wâa châang thêe ja maa sâwm khrêuang sák phâa khâ.

FÁA: mâi nâa chêua. chán khít wâa fàràng khon née plàek mâak khâ.

Vocabulary

thoh maa hăa to phone (i.e. receive a call from)
phêuan rûam ngaan colleague

rûam	to join	**khâwkhwaam**	message
săi:	telephone line	**mâi nâa chêua**	unbelievable
chêua	to believe		

Language points

Telephoning someone

Use **thoh maa hăa** when you receive a call; 'to call someone' is **thoh hăa:**

phrûng née ja thoh hăa khun
I'll call you tomorrow

However, 'I'll ring you back' is **ja thoh maa mài**. Use **thoh pai hăa** if you call someone other than the listener:

chán ja thoh pai hăa măw fan
I'll call the dentist

Saying you know or don't know something

To say that you know (or don't know) why, where, when, etc. use **róo wâa** (or **mâi róo wâa**) plus the same order of words as in a question:

chán róo wâa thohrasàp kháo ber arai
I know what his phone number is

chán mâi róo wâa mêuarài
I don't know when

Reporting speech

To report a statement use **bàwk wâa** or **tàwp wâa** before the words that were said (changing the personal pronouns as necessary):

Actual words:	**phŏm ja maa** I'll come
Reported words	**kháo bàwk wâa kháo ja maa** He said he would come
	kháo tàwp wâa ja maa He answered that he was coming

To report a question, use **thăam wâa** before the words that were said (changing the personal pronouns as necessary):

Actual words	**khun ja pai réu plào?** Will you go?
Reported words	**kháo thăam wâa phŏm ja pai réu plào** He asked me whether I would go

To ask whether something was said, use the same pattern as for reporting a statement and add a question word at the end.

kháo bàwk wâa ja pai réu plào?
Did she say if she was going?

Reported questions with 'when' or 'where', etc.

The order of the words in the reported speech is the same as in the actual question that would be spoken:

Actual questions	**kháo ja maa mêuarài?** When will she come?
Reported speech	**kháo bàwk réu plào wâa kháo ja maa mêuarài?** Did she say when she was coming?

Culture point

Telephones

Although there are numerous phone boxes in urban streets – some taking phonecards (**bàt thohrasàp**), which can be bought in general stores, others taking coins or credit cards – mobile phones are now practically universal and can be used all over the country (except in the depths of the countryside far from any villages). The gregariousness of Thais, along with their love of conversation and tendency to take spur of the moment decisions, make the mobile phone, with television, a most important piece of technology.

Exercise 1

Pass these messages on to your flatmate:

Example: 1 The bank manager phoned
phôo jàt kaan thanaakhaan thoh maa

2 Kâeo phoned at 11 this morning
3 Fáa phoned: she will phone again this evening
4 You must telephone the mechanic at the garage about your car
5 You must call the electrician this afternoon
6 Somebody called; they were using a mobile and the line was bad; you don't know what they said as you couldn't hear them
7 Lék called from a phone box but her money ran out before she said what it was about

Exercise 2

Pass these messages on to your flatmate. Say what the caller said and also some things the caller did not say:

Example: 1 police called; you must call them urgently
tamrùat thoh maa; khun tâwng thoh pai hǎa tamrùat dùan mâak; mâi dâi bàwk wâa kìo kàp rêuang arai.

2 mechanic called; your car is ready; they've replaced the battery
3 man called; said he met you last night; will call again; I asked him what his number was, he didn't answer
4 Sùnee called; she's going abroad; she's giving a party tomorrow

Now your flatmate gives you the same messages. Ask whether the caller said:

5 what it was about
6 the cost; whether they fixed the brake lights
7 his name; when and where he met you; when he will call again
8 where she was going; when and where the party is

Dialogue 2

Joe is calling an acquaintance but by mistake calls the wrong number. What mistake did he make?

RECEPTIONIST:	thanaakhaan tháhǎan thai sawàtdee khâ.
JOE:	chûey tàw nèung sǎam khráp.
RECEPTIONIST:	raw sàk khrôo ná khá. mâi mee khon ráp sǎi: khâ. khun tâwngkaan phôot kàp khrai khá?
JOE:	tâwngkaan phôot kàp khun Sǒmboon khráp
RECEPTIONIST:	raw sàk khrôo ná khá.
SECRETARY:	hanloh.
JOE:	khǎw sǎi: khun Sǒmboon khráp.
SECRETARY:	khrai thoh maa khá?
JOE:	phǒm chêuh Joe khráp.
SECRETARY:	khun tâwngkaan phôot kàp khun Sǒmboon kìo kàp arai khá?
JOE:	phǒm tâwngkaan sâap wâa khun Sǒmboon ja maa khon dio réu plào khráp. mêua waan née phǒm khǎw hâi khun Sǒmboon thoh klàp tàe kháo mâi dâi thoh khráp.
SECRETARY:	tawn née khun Sǒmboon mâi yòo khâ. ja hâi jòt nóht wái mái khá?
JOE:	chûey bàwk wâa ja thoh maa èek khráng yen née khráp.
SECRETARY:	tàe yen née khun Sǒmboon mâi yòo khâ.
JOE:	khun sâap mái wâa kháo ja klàp kèe mohng khráp?
SECRETARY:	wan née yang mâi klàp khâ. klàp mareuhn née khâ.
JOE:	âo:! tàe ráo nát kan wan née khráp.
SECRETARY:	kàp khun Sǒmboon rěuh khá? nát kan thêe nǎi khá?
JOE:	thêe baw-risàt phǒm khráp.
SECRETARY:	pen pai mâi dâi: khâ. khun Sǒmboon pai pràchum thêe áwtsàtrelia khâ.

JOE:	phŏm mâi khâo jai. nêe thanaakhaan krung thai châi mái khráp?
SECRETARY:	nêe thanaakhaan tháhăan thai khâ.
JOE:	khăwthôht khráp. phŏm thoh phìt khráp.

Vocabulary

tháhăan	soldier, military
tàw	extension
ráp săi:	to answer (the phone)
tâwngkaan	to want (formal)
hanloh	hello (used when answering the phone)
khăw săi:	please put me through to . . . (may I speak to . . .?)
thoh klàp	to call back, return a call
sâap	to know (formal)
hâi jòt nóht wái	to leave a message
jòt nóht	to take a message
nóht	message
chûey . . .	please
mareuhn née	day after tomorrow
krung thai	name of bank
thoh phìt	call the wrong number

Language points

Asking to speak to someone

khăw săi: khun Sŏmboon?
May I speak to Mr Sŏmboon?
or **khăw phôot kàp khun Sŏmboon**

Giving your name when you're calling someone

	Ken phôot	This is Ken speaking
or	**nêe Ken**	
or	**nêe Ken phôot**	

Answering the phone

kamlang phôot	Speaking
khun thoh phìt	You've got the wrong number

Requests with chûey

To ask someone else to do something use **chûey** before the verb. To make the request sound more polite use one of these at the end of the sentence: **nòi**, **dûey**, **dâi: mái?**, **hâi phŏm/ chán**, **hâi nòi**:

chûey thoh pai hăa kháo nòi	Please call him
chûey thoh pai hăa kháo dûey	Please call him
chûey bàwk kháo hâi phŏm nòi	Please tell him (for me)

Asking if someone knows something

Use **khun sâap mái** or **khun róo mái** before the question you would ask:

khun sâap mái wâa kháo ja klàp kèe mohng?
Do you know what time he is coming back?

With yes/no questions use **réu plào**:

khun sâap mái wâa kháo ja pai réu plào?
Do you know if he is going?

Saying you want to know something

Use **tâwngkaan sâap** (or **yàak róo**) **wâa** before the actual question you would ask:

Question you want to ask:

khun ja pai réu plào?
Will you go?

Saying what you want to know:

chán tâwngkaan sâap wâa khun ja pai réu plào
I want to know if you will go

Culture point

Announcements

You will hear **sâap** used to introduce formal announcements (for example, in airports) in the phrase **pròht sâap** (literally 'please know'). โปรด is also commonly used in notices for 'please'.

Exercise 3

You are bedridden with the flu. Using **chûey,** ask your flatmate to help you:

Example: 1 buy you some food to eat
chûey séuh kàp khâo: hâi

2 clean the flat for you
3 telephone your teacher
4 buy the newspaper for you
5 take your car in for a check-up
6 take messages re. any phone calls
7 phone the bank manager, tell him you can't go to the meeting today
8 massage your shoulder for you
9 make some photocopies for you
10 fetch your driving licence at the police station

Exercise 4

Find questions that you could ask in these situations. Include these patterns:

kháo bàwk réu plào wâa . . .?
kháo bàwk wâa . . . réu plào?
khun róo mái wâa . . .?

Your assistant, who is rather vague, gives you these messages:

Example: 1 someone wants to meet you
kháo bàwk réu plào wâa tâwngkaan jer kan thêe năi?

2 some foreigners are coming to visit the factory
3 a firm is going to deliver something for you
4 your boss wants you to do something for him
5 your spouse asked you to buy a present for a friend
6 Dùsìt says thanks for the invitation
7 Kàmon says he'll see you at your party

Exercise 5

Complete the dialogue using the cues:

GARY:	hanloh.
CALLER 1:	khăw săi: khun Kàmon khráp.
GARY:	(nobody with that name here; wrong number)
CALLER 1:	khăwthôht khráp.
GARY:	(answers phone)
CALLER 2:	khăw săi: khun Dùsìt khâ.
GARY:	(he's not here: ask her to call back)
CALLER 2:	kèe mohng khá?
GARY:	(about 7 p.m.)
GARY:	(answers phone)
CALLER 3:	khăw săi: khun Gary khâ.
GARY:	(speaking)
CALLER 3:	nêe baw-risàt sàyăam thee wee. khrêuang sák phâa thêe khun Gary sàng maa láeo khâ.
GARY:	(ask them to deliver it after 5 p.m.)
CALLER 3:	khâ.

Reading and writing

Tricky spellings

สร้อยคอ	**sôi khaw**
ชาติ	**chaat**
ใส่บาตร	**sài bàat**
ทราบ	**sâap**

Exercise 6 Word study

Circle the words or phrases in these groups with similar or contrasting meanings:

1 ข้อมือ มะรืนนี้ ต้องการ ใส่บาตร ยาก ปรับ ฝาก
อยาก กำไร ไม่เป็นไร

2 ให้จดโน้ตไว้ ไม่น่าเชื่อ อนาคต ศาสนาพุทธ
เป็นไปไม่ได้ อยากรู้อยากเห็น

3 โทรมาหา โทรผิด รับสาย โทรไปหา ตู้โทรศัพท์
เบอร์โทรศัพท์ โทรศัพท์มือถือ

4 แปลก สะดวก โบราณ โอกาส สงสัย ใหม่แข็งแรง

5 ร้องไห้ รองเท้า ให้ยืม ทำให้เสีย ให้จดโน้ตไว้
ซ่อม ให้เช่า ให้ฉันช่วยอะไรได้บ้าง

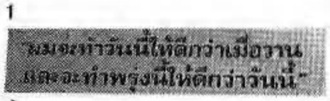
6 จบ สอบ สอน เรียบร้อย แปล
หมด เสร็จ

Exercise 7 Reading

1 Which of these posters contains: (a) a proverb; (b) a road safety warning; (c) a conservation message; (d) a party political slogan; (e) an advertisement for a bank; (f) a headline about city transport; (g) an advertisement for a college?

Translate them.

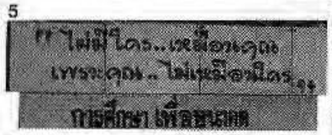
phít poison **sùraa** liquor
din ground, soil **phêua** for

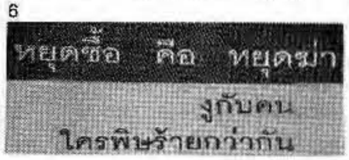
1


2


3


4


5


6


7


2 Mark has started selling toys imported from Thailand. Translate this email from his girlfriend for him:

สวัสดีค่ะ คุณสบายดีไหมคะ?

ฉันคิดถึงคุณมาก ตั้งแต่คุณกลับไป
แล้วฉันต้องทำงานหนักมากเลยไม่มีวันหยุด ฉันทำพาสปอร์ตเรียบร้อยแล้ว
พรุ่งนี้ฉันจะไปสถานทูตอังกฤษเรื่องขอวีซ่า ฉันคิดว่าจะไปวันนี้
แต่ถ่ายเอกสารยังไม่เสร็จ คงจะไปจองเที่ยวบินไว้วันมะรืน
แล้วก็จะซื้อตั๋วเครื่องบินอาทิตย์หน้า
เมื่อวานนี้ฉันโทรไปหาเจ้าของโรงงานแต่เขาไม่อยู่
เลขานุการอธิบายเกี่ยวกับของเล่นว่ามีหลายแบบ
วันพฤหัสฯ ฉันจะขอให้บริษัทส่งตัวอย่างไปให้คุณเลือกที่น่าสนใจ
เลขานุการถามว่าคุณจะโอน

เงินเข้าบัญชีของบริษัทรึเปล่า ฉันบอกว่าฉันไม่ทราบ
ฉันหวังว่าของเล่นที่คุณสั่งซื้อจากกรุงเทพฯคงขายหมดแล้ว
และขอให้คุณได้กำไรเยอะๆ นะคะ
ช่วยโทรมาหาฉันวันพรุ่งนี้ถ้าคุณมีเวลาว่าง

เที่ยวบิน flight ตัวอย่าง sample
เลือก to choose โอน to transfer

Exercise 8 Writing

Write notes for Mark's reply. Include these points:

1 hopes she is well; telephoned yesterday but nobody answered
2 had a car accident yesterday; bumped into a tree but okay
3 busy right now; thinks he will get a new job
4 given up smoking; bought her a present – will send it next week
5 don't yet know how he'll transfer money to the company
6 hasn't sold everything he bought in Bangkok yet but good profit

15 Good news, bad news

In this unit you will deal with requests and discuss the news.

You will learn how to:

- use clauses with **thêe**
- use passive constructions
- translate 'early' and 'late'

You will also consolidate grammar and vocabulary you learned in previous units.

Dialogue 1

Dao: has asked Tony to meet her and has told him she has a favour to ask him. What news does she give him and what does he agree to?

DAO: khăwthôht thêe maa cháa pai nòi khâ. chán tòk rót khâ. wan née tham ngaan lúang waylaa khâ.
TONY: mâi pen rai khráp.
DAO: rêep klàp bâan tham kàp khâo: hâi mâe tàe mâi than khâ.
TONY: mâi pen rai ràwk khráp. phŏm phêrng maa thĕung khráp.
DAO: khàwpkhun mâak thêe maa chûey khâ.
TONY: mâi mee panhăa khráp.
DAO: chán bàwk khun réu yang wâa náwng săo: chán dâi ngaan mài khá?
TONY: yang mâi dâi bàwk khráp.
DAO: náwng săo: tâwng klàp bâan tawn dèuk. chán yàak séuh rót mawtersai hâi náwng săo: phráw wâa mâi yàak hâi kháo dern klàp bâan tawn dèuk.

TONY: châi khráp. chûang née tâwng ráwang khráp. dèk wairûn nísăi mâi dee yér.
DAO: sàmùt banchee khăwng chán hăi:. chán thăwn ngern mâi dâi:. chán khăw róbkuan khun khăw yeuhm ngern khun dâi: mài khá?
TONY: thâorài khráp?
DAO: chán khăw yeuhm săam mèuhn khâ. chán mâi yàak róbkuan khun tàe chán mâi róojàk khrai loei khâ. khàwp-khun mâak thêe mee náam jai.
TONY: ja ao maa kheuhn mêuarài khráp?
DAO: deuan nâa khâ.
TONY: nâe nawn mái khráp?
DAO: nâe nawn khâ.

Vocabulary

tòk rót	to miss a bus, train	**lúang**	to go beyond
		rêep	to hurry
than	to be in time	**tawn dèuk**	late at night
wairûn	teenager	**sàmùt banchee**	passbook (for bank account)
sàmùt	notebook	**thăwn**	withdraw
róbkuan	to bother		

Culture points

Consideration for the feelings of others (krayngjai)

Thais are well known for showing consideration for others. For example, when asking a favour they will usually apologise for bothering and offer an explanation. When offered something they might well refuse (with **mâi pen rai** or **mâi tâwng**) out of politeness.

Appointments and meetings

Thais are not well known for their punctuality and people sometimes stress an appointment is **nát fàràng** not **nát thai**. Times,

for both informal meetings and fixed appointments, may be approximate and promises often optimistic. Many Thais are also more likely to do things on the spur of the moment than plan ahead. They will often consult an astrologer beforehand, though, to set an auspicious time for an important occasion such as a wedding, moving house or buying a car.

Language points

'Early' and 'late'

Thai has several words for 'early' and 'late':

early in the morning	**cháo**
before time	**kàwn waylaa**
on time	**trong waylaa**

khun tâwng maa trong waylaa
You should come on time

not on time
săi: or **cháa** (slow)

'late in the morning'
săi: (also used more generally)

'late at night'
dèuk

Clauses with thêe

Use **thêe** before a clause following words expressing emotions (for example, **khăwthôht**, **khàwpkhun**, **dee**, **dee jai**, **sĭa jai**, **chôhk dee** and **châwp**):

phŏm dee jai thêe khun mâi dâi pai
I'm happy that you didn't go

chán sĭa jai thêe mâi dâi jer Dao:
I'm sorry I didn't meet Dao:

chôhk dee thêe kháo rát khĕm khàt
It was lucky he fastened his seat belt

Uses of loei

loei adds emphasis to what you are saying:

- 'not (any) at all'

  kháo phôot phaasăa angkrìt mâi kèng loei
  He doesn't speak English well at all

  mâi dâi séuh arai loei
  I didn't buy anything at all

- 'just', 'simply', 'straightaway'

  pai loei
  Let's just go (straightaway)

- 'absolutely', 'definitely', 'completely'

  kháo kin mòt loei
  He ate it up completely

loei can be used with **jang**:

sŭey jang loei!
So pretty!

Exercise 1

What would you tell your friend in these situations? Use **khăwthôht thêe**, **khàwpkhun thêe**, **dee thêe**, **dee jai thêe**, **sĭa jai thêe** or **châwp thêe**:

Example: 1 She passed her exam
phŏm dee jai thêe khun sàwp dâi:

2 She lost her necklace
3 You're disturbing her
4 She lent you her camera
5 She's started smoking again
6 She didn't come to your party
7 She brought you some flowers
8 She was driving under the speed limit through a speed trap

Exercise 2

Ask your friend to lend you these things and use the cues to explain why you need them:

Example: 1 a dictionary (need to translate a document)
chán khăw yeuhm phótjànaanúkrom dâi: mài? chán tâwng plae àykasăan

2 80,000 baht	(buy a car)
3 her mobile	(call a friend)
4 her suntan lotion	(going to the seaside)
5 her insect repellent	(walk in the forest)
6 gloves	(it's cold)
7 her camera	(boxing)
8 her house key	(lost)



Dialogue 2

Joe is chatting to a colleague, Fáa, over a coffee break. What is the piece of good news Joe refers to?

JOE: mêua kheuhn née khun doo khào: réu plào khráp?
FÁA: mâi dâi doo khâ. chán bèua doo khào: khâ. mee tàe khào: mâi dee. sàyt-takìt mâi dee. phôo râi: yér. khon tìt yaa sàyptìt yér. khon tìt rôhk àyd kô yér. nâa bèua mâak.
JOE: châi khráp. phŏm hĕn dûey khráp.
FÁA: thăam tham-mai khá? mee arai kért khêun réu plào khá?
JOE: mee fàràng khon nèung dohn khâa thêe phookèt.
FÁA: rĕuh khá?
JOE: phôo râi: khâo bâan. fàràng dohn khàmohi khăwng yér.
FÁA: mee khrâwpkhrua réu plào khá?
JOE: khào: mâi dâi bàwk wâa mee khrâwpkhrua nai meuang thai rĕuh mâi. láeo kô mêua waan née nák kaan meuang dohn tamrùat jàp.
FÁA: phráw khawràpchân réu plào khá?
JOE: sŏngsăi khráp. tàe mee khào: dee nèung yàang khráp.
FÁA: khào: née arai khá?
JOE: théem châat thai chánáá malaysia săwng sŏon khráp.
FÁA: mâi nâa chêua khâ.

Vocabulary

sàyt-takìt	economy		
tìt	be addicted to, to catch a disease		
yaa sàyptìt	drugs (narcotics)		
rôhk àyd	Aids		
rôhk	disease, illness		
hĕn dûey	to agree with		
kért khêun	to happen		
dohn	marker of passive voice		
phookèt	holiday destination south of Bangkok		
nák kaan meuang	politician		
kaan meuang	politics		
jàp	to arrest, catch, take hold of		
khawràpchân	corruption	**théem**	team
châat	national	**chánáá**	beat, win

Language points

Passive constructions

Use **dohn** or **thòok** before the verb:

active: **tamrùat jàp phŏm**
The police arrested me

passive: **phŏm dohn jàp**
I was arrested

The passive is used less in Thai than in English and it is used mainly when the subject suffers something unpleasant. When the agent is mentioned it comes between **dohn** and the main verb:

phŏm dohn tamrùat jàp
I was arrested by the police

thòok is a more formal alternative to **dohn.**

chánà

chánà can be used either with an object ('beat') or without ('win'). 'Lose' is **pháe**.

Culture point

News



It is difficult to open a newspaper in Thailand without reading about the problems of Aids, drug abuse and suspected corruption of politicians and officials. Many newspapers feature gruesome accounts and pictures of crimes and accidents. Economic problems such as price rises in food and petrol are also a regular talking point. Thailand's flourishing press, radio and television are freer than those of most countries in the region.

Exercise 3

Use these notes to list some accidents that happened to a friend. Use **dohn** or **thòok** plus these verbs: **jàp**, **pràp**, **kàt**, **chon**, **khàmohi**, **khâa**. List accidents involving:

1 police
2 animals
3 vehicles
4 criminals
5 property

Example: **kháo dohn tamrùat jàp phráw khawràpchân**

Exercise 4

Give someone this news about a friend (use **bàwk réu yang**):

Example: 1 he broke his arm
chán bàwk réu yang wâa khăen kháo hàk?

2 he passed his exam
3 he was fined 5,000 baht
4 he has been arrested
5 he's joined the army
6 his father died
7 he was knocked down by a car
8 he was bitten by a snake

Dialogue 3: Comprehension and review

Tony is working for a local magazine and is interviewing a masseuse about her work. Find out:

1 her feelings about the work
2 how she compares it with her previous work
3 her working conditions and income
4 what she thinks of clients
5 health problems

TONY: khun tham aachêep nûat phăen bohraan maa naan rĕu yang khráp?

MASSEUSE: hòk pee láeo khâ. tâng tàe chán maa yòo chieng mài khâ.

TONY: kìo kàp ngaan née khun mee khwaam khít hĕn yàang-grai khráp? châwp mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: châwp rĕuh? kô tâwng châwp phráw wâa chán mâi mee thaang lêuak châi mái khá? chán mâi mee khwaam róo khâ. thâa pai tham ngaan yàang èuhn kô tham ngaan nàk láeo kô dâi ngern mâi khôi dee khâ.

TONY: nâwk jàak nûat khun khoei tham ngaan arai khráp?

MASSEUSE: mêua kàwn chán khăi: kwŭey tĭo khâ.

TONY: ngaan née yûng mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: arai ná khá? khăi: kwŭey tĭo rĕuh? tâwng mee khon chûey khâ phráw wâa kìo kàp tham kwŭey tĭo ngaan man yér. tham ngaan khon dio mâi wăi. láeo kô tâwng tèuhn cháo pai tàlàat. tâwng jài: khâa rót dohisăan ayng. klàp maa tâwng tham ayng láeo kô pai khăi: ayng châi mái khá? chán mâi wăi. tham ngaan nûat mâi yûng yâak khâ.

TONY: khun tham ngaan wan lá kèe chûamohng khráp?

MASSEUSE: pai tham ngaan sìp mohng cháo láeo kô lêrk thîang kheuhn khâ. tàe thâa lôok kháa maa thîang kheuhn tâwng nûat thĕung tee săwng. thúk wan klàp thêe phák dèuk khâ. nawn tee săwng tee săam phráw wâa tâwng àap náam wâi phrá kàwn nawn khâ.

TONY: nèung deuan khun tham ngaan kèe wan khráp?

MASSEUSE: nèung deuan rĕuh khá? sùan mâak ngaan née mâi yùt nâwk jàak mee thúrá jampen rĕuh wâa mâi sabai: àat ja yùt khâ.

TONY: ngern deuan thêe khun dâi phaw chái mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: ngern deuan mâi mee khâ! mee ngaan tham kô dâi ngern. thâa lôok kháa mâi maa mâi mee ngaan kô mâi dâi ngern khâ. măw nûat dâi chûamohng lá sèe sìp bàat khâ. sùan mâak tham ngaan nèung wan săwng rĕuh sèe chûamohng khâ.

TONY: lôok kháa hâi thíp mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: pòk-katì hâi khâ.

TONY: hâi thâorài khráp?

MASSEUSE: kô láeo tàe lôok kháa khâ. sùan mâak hâi hâa sìp bàat thĕung nèung rói khâ. baang khráng mâak kwàa khâ.

TONY: thâa mâi mee lôok kháa khun tham arai bâang khráp?

MASSEUSE: tâwng nâng raw khâ. chán ao nangsĕuh maa àan kâe ngăo khâ.

TONY: khun khoei mee panhăa kàp lôok kháa rĕu plào khráp?

MASSEUSE: mâi khoei khâ. sùan mâak lôok kháa nísăi dee khâ.

TONY: sămràp khun lôok kháa thêe nísăi dee kheuh arai khráp?

MASSEUSE: sùphâap rîapróì. mee náam jai khâ.

TONY: láeo kô lôok kháa thêe khun mâi châwp mee mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: lôok kháa thêe châwp bòn láeo kô khêe nĭo khâ.

TONY: khâa chái jài: khun thêe jampen kheuh arai khráp?

MASSEUSE: kô jampen thúk yàang khâ. tham ngaan née tâwng tàeng tua láeo kô tâwng sòng ngern hâi phâw mâe khâ.

TONY: khun mee panhăa kìo kàp sùk-khàphâap khun phráw ngaan née mái khráp?

MASSEUSE: jèp meuh tàlàwt khâ. jèp tàlàwt mâi hăi:. baang wan mâi mee raeng nûat láeo kô lôok kháa ja bòn thêe phôo jàt kaan. mêua kàwn tawn rêrm jèp chán kin yaa tàe yaa kàt kràpháw khâ. măw thăam wâa 'tham ngaan arai?' 'kô nûat phăen bohraan.' 'yang ngán kô jèp mâi jèp dâi: yang-ngai? thâa khun yùt tham ngaan nûat khun kô mâi jèp. thâa khun jèp kô maa chèet yaa phráw wâa pen ròhk thêe kìo kàp ngaan née.' măw bàwk wâa chèet yaa bòi kô antarai:. măw hâi chán yùt aachêep nûat phăen bohraan.

Vocabulary

aachêep	profession, occupation		
yàangrai	how, what (formal)		
thaang lêuak	alternative	**nâwk jàak**	apart from
wăi	to be able to (normally used in the negative)		
dohisăan	passenger	**wăi phrá**	say prayers
thíp	tip	**kràpháw**	stomach

Exercise 5 Word study

(a) Compound words

Find pairs from these words to make compound nouns which translate the English words below:

พยาบาล ค่า ไปรษณีย์ ดนตรี พูดตอบ บ้าน
โดยสาร เพลง ชาติ เพื่อน รถ เครื่อง ตู้

1 fare
2 national anthem
3 neighbour
4 postbox
5 ambulance
6 musical instrument
7 answering machine

(b) Words in context

Here are some familiar words in different contexts. Match them to the translation below:

1 ติดธุระ 2 ติดบุหรี่ 3 ติดเครื่อง 4 ติดคอ
5 ตกใจ 6 ตกงาน 7 น้ำเสีย 8 เสียหน้า
9 มีชื่อเสียง

(a) to lose face
(b) busy
(c) lose one's job
(d) famous
(e) polluted water
(f) addicted to smoking
(g) start an engine
(h) stick in one's throat
(i) startled

Exercise 6 Reading comprehension

Interview with a model (นางแบบ). Note what Nók, the model, says about:

1 her life (ชีวิต) as a model
2 what makes her happy
3 her views on pets
4 her first marriage
5 her feelings about having had a child when she was still young
6 how she met her present husband
7 her plans for the future

ชีวิตนางแบบเป็นอย่างไร

"สนุก ได้อยู่กับสิ่งของสวยๆ ได้รู้จักโลก ได้เดินทาง รู้จักคนเยอะ

โชคดีที่ได้เป็นนางแบบไทย เราทำงานกันเหมือนเป็นครอบครัว
เรามีปัญหา

รถเสียหรือไม่สบาย บอกเพื่อนๆได้ มีที่นี่ที่เดียวนะคะ
แต่เป็นอาชีพที่มีระยะเวลาสั้น เงินได้มาง่ายใช้ง่าย"

คุณเป็นคนอย่างไร

"เป็นคนอยู่ง่ายๆ กินง่ายๆ ดูหนังที่ชอบก็มีความสุขแล้ว
อยากเป็นคนน่ารักค่ะ ไม่ต้องสวยหรอก นิสัยดีก็พอแล้วค่ะ"

คุณเลี้ยงสัตว์รึเปล่า

"นก มีปลา 3 ตัวที่น่ารักดี แล้วก็รักนกด้วยนะคะ จริงๆ
อยากจะเลี้ยงหมากับแมว แต่ไม่ค่อยจะมีเวลาเลี้ยงเท่าไหร่"

ตอนแต่งงานครั้งแรกอายุเท่าไรคะ

"ตอนนั้นนกอายุยี่สิบเอ็ดยี่สิบสอง ความคิดแบบเด็กๆ มีแฟนเป็นคนไทย
แต่งงานก็มีลูกเลยเพราะอยากมีลูก แต่เขาเป็นคนที่ไม่จริงใจ
ทำไมผู้ชายไทย เป็นแบบนี้ แล้วก็นกมาเจอคนฝรั่งเศส"

ตัดสินใจอยู่นานไหมก่อนเลิกกับสามี

"นานเหมือนกัน แต่นกไม่เสียใจเลย เพราะนกมีลูก นกมีลูกตั้ง
แต่อายุยังน้อย ตอนนี้ลูกโตนกก็ยังสาวอยู่

ถ้านกอยู่จนถึงสามสิบนกอาจจะยังไม่อยากมีลูกก็ได้ คิดว่าดีแล้วที่แต่งงาน
ดีแล้วที่มีลูก"

พบกับสามีได้อย่างไร

"นกเป็นเพื่อนกับเขามาก่อน เขาเคยมาทำงานเมืองไทย ไปๆ มาๆ
เขาไม่มีใครในกรุงเทพเลยคุยกัน เห็นกันมาเจ็ดปีได้แล้ว
เป็นเพื่อนกันมาก่อน แต่เริ่มเป็นแฟนกันจริงๆ ไม่ถึงปี
เจ็ดปีนี้ฉันรู้ว่าเขาเป็นคนยังไง นกไม่เคยมีแฟนที่เป็นเพื่อนกันมาก่อน"

ถ้าต้องย้ายตามสามีไปต่างประเทศล่ะคะ

"อย่างน้อยเราก็จะอยู่ที่นี่อีกสองปี
ถ้าตอนนั้นสามีอยากไปอยู่ต่างประเทศนกไปได้
แต่นกคิดว่าเราจะกลับมาอยู่เมืองไทย เพราะเราก็ได้เห็นโลกแล้ว
ชีวิตในเมืองไทยตอนนี้มีความสุข ปลอดภัย และสวยที่สุดแล้วนะคะ"

ได้ (before a verb) get to do something   สิ่งของ things
ระยะเวลา period of time   โต grown up
จน until   อย่างน้อย at least

Exercise 7 Writing

You have met a singer from England. Write notes on him to include in a letter:

1 enjoys his life as a singer
2 travels to many countries, earns a lot of money but has to spend a lot, career won't last long
3 used to enjoy going out with friends; since he is married and has a child prefers to stay with his family
4 has no regrets; happy just listening to music
5 has a dog and two cats
6 would like to be a doctor if he wasn't a singer
7 would like to live in the US but all friends live in England

Grammar summary

1 Basic sentence patterns

1.1 Affirmative statements

Thai basic word order is usually the same as in English (subject + predicate), for example, subject + verb + object or subject + verb + adverbial:

Maalee châwp phŏnlamái
Maalee likes fruit

Maalee pai tàlàat
Maalee is going to the market

The subject of a sentence can be omitted if it can be understood from the context:

pai tàlàat
(I, etc.) am going to the market

Adverbials indicating a point of time usually come first in a sentence:

wan née ja pai tàlàat
I'm going to the market today

1.2 The verb 'to be'

When the predicate is an adjective, Thai does not use a verb 'to be':

aahăan aròi
(The) food (is) delicious

Another way of looking at it is to regard adjectives as doubling as verbs, so **aròi** means 'delicious' or 'to be delicious'.

When the predicate contains a noun complement the verb **pen** is used:

Maalee pen khroo
Maalee is a teacher

When explaining, clarifying or defining something **kheuh** is used:

sàwp tòk kheuh sàwp mâi dâi:
'Fail' means 'not pass'

pen is descriptive; **kheuh** links a term with its definition, name or key characteristic.

1.3 Negative sentences

mâi is added immediately before the adjective or verb:

aahăan mâi aròi
(The) food (is) not nice

Maalee mâi pai
Maalee is not going

When **pen** is used to mean 'to be' the negative is made by replacing it with **mâi châi:**

Sùphachai mâi châi khroo
Sùphachai isn't a teacher

1.4 Yes/no questions

Yes/no questions are made by adding a question marker or tag at the end of a statement:

mái **pai mái?**
Are you going?
General question form but can also imply a suggestion or invitation

châi mái **Maalee yòo châi mái?**
Maalee is here, isn't she?
Checks what you think is the case; corresponds to a question tag or 'right?' in English

rĕuh **Maalee mâi yòo rĕuh?**
Maalee's not here?
Also a question for confirmation

réu plào **Maalee pai réu plào?**
Is Maalee going?
Literally '. . . or not?'; used to ask a question of fact especially about the past

réu yang **Maalee pai réu yang?**
Has Maalee gone yet?
Used where 'yet' could be used in English

1.5 Answering questions

Questions with **mái**, **châi mái**, **rĕuh** or **réu plào**. For example: **khun châwp aahăan thai mái?**

Affirmative answer			*Negative answer*
khráp	–	use the polite particle alone	**mâi khráp**
châwp khráp	–	repeat the verb or adjective in the question	**mâi châwp khráp**

1.6 Answering questions with réu yang

For example: **Maalee pai réu yang?**

Yes answer			*No answer*
pai láeo	–	repeat the verb or adjective in the question and add **láeo** (already)	**yang (mâi dâi pai)**

1.7 Negative questions

With **châi mái** and **rĕuh** you can also ask negative questions:

khun mâi châwp aahăan thai châi mái?
You don't like Thai food, do you?

khun mâi châwp aahăan thai rĕuh?
You don't like Thai food?

To confirm the question		*To contradict the question*	
châi	'I don't like it'	**mâi châi**	'I do like it'
mâi châwp		**châwp**	

1.8 Questions with question words

Question words normally come at the end of the question or in the same position as the word(s) they replace:

arai	**khun kin arai?**	What are you eating?
	arai tòk?	What fell?
thêe năi	**Maalee yòo thêe năi?**	Where is Maalee?
khrai	**maa hăa khrai?**	Who have you come to see?
	khrai maa?	Who's coming?
tham-mai	**khun maa tham-mai?**	Why have you come?
	tham-mai mâi séuh an yài?	Why don't you buy the big one?
		(**tham-mai** can be initial or final)
mêuarài	**khun pai meuang thai mêuarài?**	When did you go to Thailand?
	mêuarài khun ja pai meuang thai?	When are you going to Thailand?
		(with future meaning **mêuarài** can come at the beginning or end of the question)
thâorài	**náam sôm khùat thâorài?**	How much is a bottle of orange juice?
	chái welaa naan thâorài?	How long does it take?
yang-ngai	**ja pai yang-ngai?**	How will you go?

Two question words are used with classifiers:

năi	**ja ao an năi?** Which one do you want?
kèe	**mee lôok kèe khon?** How many children do you have?

1.9 Imperative sentences

The main verb is used without a subject and with **yàa** for the negative:

pai thaang née khâ	Go this way
yàa leuhm!	Don't forget!

1.10 Direct and indirect objects

The direct object normally precedes the indirect:

Kâeo hâi naalíkaa lôok chai:
Kâeo gave his son a present

1.11 Passive sentences

Passive sentences are formed using **dohn** or **thòok**. The passive is used less in Thai than in English, mainly when the subject suffers something unpleasant.

Word order in passive sentences is:

subject + **dohn** + agent + main verb

where agent is the person or thing that does the action

Kâeo dohn tamrùat jàp
subject agent

Kâeo was arrested by the police
subject agent

thòok is a more formal alternative to **dohn**.

1.12 Variations on word order

Familiar or less important information is usually given first in the sentence with new or more prominent information placed towards the end:

	Subject + verb + object	*Time and place: adverbials sentence initial*
Normal word order	**chán châwp an née** I like this one	**wan née ráwn mâak** It's very hot today **thêe nêe kaafae aròi** The coffee here is delicious
Varied to move new information last	**an née chán châwp** This one I like	**pai wan née** It's today I'm going **kaafae aròi kwàa thêe nôhn** That's where the coffee is better

1.13 Particles

Particles add meaning rather like stress and intonation in English:

khâ	Polite particles female speakers, for statements	sentence final	**mâi phèt khâ** It's not spicy
khá	female speakers, for questions	sentence final	**phèt mái khá?** Is it spicy?
khráp	male speakers	sentence final	**mâi phèt khráp** It's not spicy
ná	invites agreement, softens a warning or request	sentence final but before **khâ, khráp**	**ráwang ná khráp!** Be careful!
ràwk	used in contradicting or correcting	sentence final but before **khâ, khráp**	**mâi phaeng ràwk khráp** No, it's not expensive
sèe	'sure' or 'really' (emphasises a positive response)	sentence final but before **khâ, khráp**	**pai sèe khâ** Sure, let's go

kô	shows hesitancy, politeness	sentence initial	**kô yâak mĕuan kan** Well, yes it is quite difficult
kô	also, either (with negative statement)	connects clauses with different subjects; placed after the second subject	**phaasăa thai yâak, phaasăa angkrìt kô yâak** Thai is difficult, English is too

1.14 Comparisons

Comparative adjective or adverb + **kwàa**	**khrêuang bin phaeng kwàa rót fai** The plane is more expensive than the train **kháo khàp rót rayo kwàa phŏm** He drives faster than me
verb + **mâak kwàa**	**phŏm châwp aahăan jeen mâak kwàa aahăan fàràngsàyt** I like Chinese food more than French food
Degree of difference	**an née phaeng kwàa an nán mâak** This one is much more expensive than that one
Superlatives: adjective, adverb or verb + **thêe sùt**	**rót thua thòok thêe sùt** The coach is the cheapest **phŏm châwp aahăan fàràngsàyt (mâak) thêe sùt** I like French food the most
the same: **mĕuan**	**bâan khun mĕuan (kàp) bâan phŏm** Your house is the same as mine **bâan khun kàp bâan phŏm mĕuan kan** Your house and my house are the same
equal: **thâo**	**rót fai kàp rót thua raakhaa thâo kan** The train and the coach are the same price **rót fai rayo thâo kàp rót thua** The train is as fast as the coach
identical: **dio kan**	**Kâeo kàp phŏm yòo thêe dio kan** Kâeo and I live in the same place
similar: **khlái kan** or **khlái khlái kan**	**bâan khlái khlái kan** The houses are similar

2 Nouns and noun phrases

2.1 Personal pronouns

Thai has over forty pronouns, which are used according to the age, status and relationship of the speakers. These are the most useful:

phŏm	I (male speaker)
chán	I (female speaker, informal)
kháo	he, she, they
ráo	we
man	it, they (for things)

Thai does not have separate object or possessive pronouns so the same words can also mean 'him', 'his', 'me', 'mine', etc.

The grammar does not require the pronouns to be used and they are often omitted in informal speech if they can be understood from the context.

Other words are often used in place of pronouns:

- Relationship words, e.g. **phâw** (father), **phêe chai:** (elder brother)
- Personal names
- Occupation terms, e.g. **măw** (doctor), **aajaan** (teacher)

2.2 Nouns

Thai does not have separate singular and plural forms of nouns and there are no articles.

2.3 Classifiers

Classifiers are used when counting or referring to nouns; there are different classifiers for particular types of things and people. The general classifier **an** can be used for any object but it is better to use the specific classifier.

ao hòk an	I want six (things)
ao see dee hòk phàen	I want six CDs

When to use classifiers:

counting	**ao kâeo săwng bai** I want two glasses
asking how many	**mee krapăo kèe bai?** How many cases do you have?
with demonstratives	**krapăo bai née** This bag
with 'which'	**krapăo bai năi?** Which bag?
with 'each'	**bai lá sìp bàat.** Ten baht each (e.g. glass)
with 'every'	**kâeo thúk bai** Every glass
with 'another'	**ao kâeo bai èuhn** I'll have another glass

Common classifiers

Classifier	*Used to refer to*	*Example*
khon	people	**mee lôok sìp khon** I have ten children
phàen	CDs, paper and flat things	**ao see dee hòk phàen** I want six CDs
bai	glasses, bags, pictures	**mee krapăo kèe bai?** How many cases are there?
khrêuang	machines	**ao khawmpiutêr thúk khrêuang** I want every computer
lôok	round things including some fruits, e.g. mangoes, limes, oranges, balls	**lôok lá sìp bàat** Ten baht each
khan	vehicles	**mee rót kèe khan?** How many cars are there?
lăng	houses	**bâan lăng née sŭey** This house is pretty
tua	furniture, clothes, animals	**séuh sêua săwng tua** I bought two shirts

In some compounds the classifier is the first part of the compound, for example **hâwng** and **rohng**. In some cases the noun and the classifier are the same, for example: **khon**, **ráan**, **wát**, **sěe**, **tiang**.

2.4 Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

	Adjective		*Pronoun*	
Near the speaker	**née**	**bâan lăng née sŭey** This house is pretty	**nêe**	**nêe mâi phaeng** This is not expensive
Away from the speaker	**nán**	**bâan lăng nán sŭey** That house is pretty	**nân**	**nân mâi phaeng** That one is not expensive
Further away from the speaker	**nóhn**	**bâan lăng nóhn sŭey** That house over there is pretty	**nôhn**	**rót khăwng khun yòo thêe nôhn** Your car is way over there

In spoken Thai the demonstrative is often used without the classifier:

bâan nóhn sŭey That house is pretty

2.5 Adjectives

Adjectives follow the nouns they modify and do not agree with them.

bâan sŭey The pretty house(s)
The house(s) is/are pretty

Adjectives follow a verb without an equivalent of 'to be':

yàak phăwm. mâi châwp ûwan
I want to be thin. I don't like being fat

2.6 Indicating possession

Pronouns and nouns can be used like adjectives to show possession:

phâw chán my father
mâe Maalee Maalee's mother

More explicitly, **khăwng** ('belonging to') can be added after the main noun:

nêe ngern khăwng phŏm This is my money

khăwng is optional unless the noun you are referring to is omitted:

nêe ngern khăwng khrai? Whose is this money?
khăwng phŏm Mine

2.7 Quantity

Words used with the appropriate classifier:

mee phôoyĭng lăi: khon There are a lot of women
mee phôochai: nói khon There are few men

Words used without a classifier:

mee bâan yér (mâak) There are a lot of houses
mee khon mâi yér There are not many people
mee ngern mâi mâak He doesn't have a lot of money
mee ngern phaw I have enough money
ngern mâi phaw I don't have enough money
an née yài phaw mái? Is this one big enough?

2.8 Forming nouns

Compounds		*Base nouns*	*Compound nouns*
Formed by adding a verb or another noun to a base noun		**náam** 'water' **hâwng** 'room' **jai** 'heart'	**hâwng náam** 'toilet' **náam tòk** 'waterfall' **náam jai** 'generosity'
Other common base nouns		**khrêuang** 'machine' **khăwng** 'things'	**khrêuang bin** 'airplane' **khăwng lên** 'toys'
Prefixes	*Prefix*	*Verb/adjective*	*Noun*
Make a verb into a noun	**khwaam**	**ráwn** 'hot' **jing** 'true' **rák** 'to love'	**khwaam ráwn** 'heat' **khwaam jing** 'truth' **khwaam rák** 'love'
Make a verb into a noun or a noun into a more abstract noun	**kaan**	**rian** 'to study' **ngern** 'money'	**kaan rian** 'studies' **kaan ngern** 'finance'

Make a verb into an adjective	**khêe** 'prone to' **nâa** (-ing)	**leuhm** 'to forget' **bèua** 'to be bored'	**khêe leuhm** 'forgetful' **nâa bèua** 'boring'

3 Verbs and verb phrases

There are no verb endings to show tense or aspect in Thai and no agreement between verb and subject.

3.1 Time reference and aspect

- With adverbials:

Past	Point of time	**mêua waan née pai tàlàat** I went to the market yesterday
	period + **thêe láeo**	**pee thêe láeo phŏm pai angkrìt** I went to England last year (a year ago)
	láeo	**pai hăa măw láeo** He went to see the doctor (already)
Present	Indicator of present time	**tawn née phŏm mee ngaan yér** I have a lot of work at the moment
Future	Point of time	**phrûng née mâi pai tàlàat** I'm not going to the market tomorrow
	Period of time + **nâa**	**pee nâa ja pai angkrìt** Next year we're going to England
On the point of doing	**kèuap (ja)** + verb	**kaafae kèuap (ja) mòt** The coffee is almost finished
	klâi (ja) + verb	**klâi ja sèt** I'm nearly ready
To have just done	**phêrng** + verb	**phŏm phêrng maa** I've just come
'still' and 'yet'	**yang**	**yang àap náam yòo** He's still having a shower
	yang mâi + verb	**yang mâi dâi pai** I haven't been yet
		yang mâi pai I'm not going yet

- With secondary verbs:
If there is a time adverbial or the reference is clear from the context, these are usually optional:

Present perfect	main verb + **maa**	**pai năi maa?** Where have you been?
	khoei + main verb	**mâi khoei rian phaasăa angkrìt** I have never studied English
Past	main verb + **pai**	**khăi: pai láeo** I sold it already
	negative statements with **dâi** (action verbs only)	**phŏm mâi dâi pai năi** I didn't go anywhere
Future	**ja** + main verb	**phŏm ja pai doo** I'll go and see
Action in progress	**kamlang** + main verb	**kháo kamlang kin khâo:** He's eating
	main verb + **yòo**	**kháo àap náam yòo** He's having a shower
	kamlang + main verb **+ yòo**	**kháo kamlang doo thee wee yòo** He's watching television
'used to'	**khoei** + main verb	**phŏm khoei sòop bùrèe** I used to smoke

The forms which express perfective and progressive aspects and future time can also be used relative to a past time reference:

dern naan láeo. kamlang ja klàp
I walked for a long time and I was about to return

3.2 Modal meanings and auxiliary verbs

'able to'	verb + **dâi:**	**phŏm chûey khun dâi:** I can help you **phŏm chûey khun mâi dâi:** I can't help you

'able to' (have the skill to or habit of)	verb + **pen**	**khun khàp rót pen mái?** Can you drive?
'must', 'should'	**tâwng**	**khun tâwng klàp bâan** You must/should go home
	khuan (ja)	**khun khuan (ja) klàp bâan** You should go home
'want' to do	**yàak (ja)** + verb	**yàak (ja) pai angkrìt** I want to go to England
	tâwngkaan + verb	**phŏm tâwngkaan pai pràchum** I want to go to the meeting
'want' something	**yàak dâi** (informal)	**yàak dâi naalíkaa mài** I want a new watch
	tâwngkaan	**phŏm tâwngkaan weesâa** I want a visa
Possibility, probability	**àat (ja)** + verb (adjective)	**àat ja pai** I might go
	khong (ja) + verb (adjective)	**khong ja pai** I'll probably go
	tâwng + verb (adjective)	**kháo tâwng kèng** He must be good (at it)
Past negative	**mâi dâi** + verb	**mâi dâi pai** I didn't go
Emphasis or succeed in doing	**dâi** + verb	**dâi dern thaang** I'm able to travel (I get the chance to travel)

3.3 Verb strings

1 Two or more verbs used together without any linking words:

pai thài: rôop	To go and take photographs
maa doo	Come and see
châwp dern	I like walking

2 Verbs of motion used to indicate the direction of an action:

pai and **maa**	action away from or towards the speaker	**àwk pai** go out
		khâo maa come in
		kháo dern klàp pai bâan láeo They've already walked back home
ao pai, ao maa	take, bring	**ao nangsĕuh pai** Take the book
		ao nangsĕuh maa Bring the book
klàp (pai, maa)	back	**kháo wîng klàp maa** He ran back (here)
àwk	out	**tâwng ao kunjae àwk kàwn** You must remove the key first
long	down	**ao pai long** Take it down
khêun	up	**ao pai khêun** Take it up

3 Indicating past time:

pai	action finished or gone	**thíng pai láeo** I've already thrown it away
maa	past action with present relevance	**séuh maa láeo** I've already bought it
		pai maa láeo I've been (and come back)

4 Add meaning to a verb:

lên	something not done seriously	**dern lên** to walk for pleasure
		phôot lên I'm joking (lit. 'speaking to play')

doo	something considered or judged	**khít doo kàwn** I'll think about it
wái	something kept in place	**leuhm wái** I forgot it (left it behind)

5 Two verbs needed to express a single action:

hâi yeuhm	to lend	**phêuan hâi yeuhm rót** A friend lent me his car
tham hăi:	to lose	**chán tham wăen hăi:** I lost my ring
tham sĭa	to break	**chán tham khrêuang wee dee oh sĭa** I broke the video

6 Combine verbs to express a complex idea or action:

lawng chim doo (lit. 'try taste see')	have a taste
lawng sài doo (lit. 'try wear see')	try something on
yàak róo yàak hĕn (lit. 'want to know want to see')	to be curious
kháo phaa ráo klàp maa sòng (lit. 'took us return come send')	he gave us a lift back

3.4 Frequency adverbs

'often'/ 'not often'	**bòi** or **mâi bòi** are used at the end of a statement	**pai doo năng bòi mái khráp?** Do you often go to watch films? **chán pai doo năng bòi** I often go to watch films **chán pai doo năng mâi bòi** I don't often go to watch films
'usually'	**tham-madaa** or **pòk-katì** are used at the beginning of the sentence	**pòk-katì chán pai wîng lên** I usually go running

'some-times'	**baang khráng** is used at the end of a statement	**pai wîng lên baang khráng** I sometimes go running
'always'	usually expressed by 'every day', etc.	**chán doo thee wee thúk wan aathít** I always watch television on Sunday (lit. 'I watch television every Sunday')
'never'	expressed by 'not' or **mâi khoei** ('never have')	**chán mâi pai khon dio** I never go on my own **chán mâi khoei pai khon dio** I have never been on my own

3.5 Other frequency expressions

tham ngaan aathít lá hâa wan
I work five days a week

Use the same pattern for hours in a day, weeks or months in a year, etc.:

pai doo năng deuan lá săwng rêuh săam khráng
I go to the cinema two or three times a month

chán pai wâi: náam aathít lá khráng
I go swimming once a week

Use the same pattern to say you go twice a year, etc.:

chán pai wâi: náam thúk wan/aathít/deuan/pee
I go swimming every day/week/month/year

3.6 Other adverbs

There is no adverbial ending to make adverbs from adjectives. A word is used either as an adjective or an adverb. Some words can be used as either:

nák ráwng khon née kèng
This singer is good (at singing)

nák ráwng khon née ráwng phlayng kèng
This singer sings well

Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives:

khrêuang bin rayo kwàa rót fai
The plane is quicker than the train

Kàmon khàp rót rayo kwàa Ùdom
Kàmon drives faster than Ùdom

The negative **mâi** normally comes before the adverb:

phŏm khàp rót mâi rayo
I don't drive fast

3.7 Prepositions (examples)

Place

'opposite;	**trong khâam**	**wát yòo trong khâam pámnám-man** The temple is opposite the petrol station
'behind;/ 'in front of;	**(khâang) lăng/nâa**	**wát yòo khâang lăng pámnám-man** The temple is behind the petrol station
'next to'	**tìt kàp**	**wát tìt kàp sanăam keelaa** The temple is next to the stadium
'between . . . and . . .'	**rawàng . . . kàp**	**phátlom yòo rawàang tiang kàp tôo yen** The fan is between the bed and the fridge
'on', 'under'	**bon, tâi**	**krapăo yòo bon báw** The bag is on the seat
'from'	**jàak**	**maa jàak angkrìt** I come from England
'at', 'in'	**thêe**	**yòo thêe sanăambin** He's at the airport
'in'	**nai**	**yòo nai hâwng** It's in the room

Other

'about', 'concerning'	**kìo kàp**	**khun tham ngaan kìo kàp arai?** What is your work to do with?
'as for'	**sămràp**	**sămràp phŏm châo rót yon dee kwàa** In my opinion it would be better to hire a car
'to', 'for'	**hâi**	**ao maa hâi phŏm** Bring it for me

Time

'before', 'after'	**kàwn, lăng**	**kin kàwn aahăan** Take before meals
'since'	**tâng tàe**	**tâng tàe wan nán phŏm mâi sŏnjai khèe cháang èek loei** Since that day I'm not interested in going elephant riding
'(from) . . . to'	**thĕung**	**phom tham ngaan kâo mohng thĕung sìp mohng** I worked from 9 a.m. to 10 a.m.
'all'	**tháng, tàlàwt**	**tham ngaan tàlàwt wan** I worked all day **chán doo thee wee tháng kheuhn** I watched television all night

4 Complex sentences

4.1 Relative clauses

thêe is used in relative clauses as an equivalent of either 'who', 'which' or 'that':

phôoyĭng thêe phôot kàp Ken sŭey
The woman who is talking to Ken is pretty

bâan thêe kháo séuh yài mâak
The house she bought is very big

4.2 Conjunctions

'and'		
to join nouns	**kàp, láe**	**phŏm séuh naalíkaa kàp pàak-kaa** I bought a watch and a pen
to join words and phrases	**láe, láeo kô**	**thêe nêe sŭey láe ngîap** It's pretty and quiet here
to join clauses	**láeo kô**	**pai dern lên láeo kô ja thài: rôop dûey** I'm going for a walk and I'm also going to take photos
'but'	**tàe**	**tham kàp khâo: aròi tàe chái waylaa naan** She cooks delicious food but she takes a long time
'because'	**phráw wâa**	**khun tâwng thoh jawng kàwn phráw wâa săo aathít ja mee nák thâwng thîo yér** You must book first because there will be a lot of tourists at the weekend
'if'	**thâa**	**thâa khâo wát tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîaprói** If you go in a temple you must dress politely
'or'	**rĕuh**	**ao khùat yài rĕuh khùat lék?** Do you want the large or the small bottle?

4.3 Conjunctions showing the order of events

'after'	**lăng (jàak)**	**lăng jàak pai ráan aahăan yêepùn tháwng sĭa** After I went to the Japanese restaurant I've had diarrhoea
'before'	**kàwn (thêe)**	**kàwn (thêe) klàp bâan phŏm tâwng séuh kàp khâo:** Before going home I must buy food
'then'	**láeo kô**	**khêun doi yòo láeo kô lŏng thaang** We went up the mountain then we lost our way

'since'	**tâng tàe**	**tâng tàe phŏm maa yòo krungthâyp phŏm àwk kamlang kai: thúk wan** Since I came to Bangkok, I have exercised every day
'when'	**mêua**	**mêua khâo wát tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîaprói** When you go in a temple you must dress politely

4.4 Reported speech

Actual words	*Reported words*
ja thoh maa mài I'll call back	**kháo bàwk wâa kháo ja thoh maa mài** He said he would call back
khun ja pai réu plào? Will you go?	**kháo thăam wâa phŏm ja pai réu plào** He asked me if I would go **kháo bàwk wâa ja pai réu plào?** Did she say if she was going?
kháo ja maa mêuarài? When will she go?	**kháo bàwk réu plào wâa kháo ja maa mêuarài?** Did she say when she was going?

4.5 Subordinate clauses after 'to know'

The clause after 'to know' has the same order of words as in a question:

Question	*'to know' + clause*
thohrasàp kháo ber arai?	**chán mâi róo wâa thohrasàp kháo ber arai** I don't know what his phone number is
kháo ja klàp kèe mohng?	**khun sâap mái wâa kháo ja klàp kèe mohng?** Do you know what time he is coming back?
kháo ja pai réu plào?	**khun sâap mái wâa kháo ja pai réu plào?** Do you know if he is going?
kháo ja pai réu plào?	**chán tâwngkaan sâap wâa kháo ja pai réu plào** I want to know if he will go

4.6 'That' clauses

wâa is used after these verbs and phrases:

phŏm khít wâa ja pai wîng
I think I'll go running

wăng wâa ráo ja mee ohkàat jer kan bòi
I hope we will meet often

pen pai dâi: wâa phŏm ja pai áwtsàtrelia
It's possible I'll go to Australia

4.7 Other clauses following verbs

tham hâi	**pai wîng tham hâi sùk-khàphâap dee** Running makes your health good
yàak hâi	**yàak hâi khun pai wîng** I want you to go running
hâi	**phŏm ja hâi lôok rian phaasăa angkrìt** I will have my children study English

4.8 clauses with thêe

khăwthôht, **khàwpkhun**, **dee**, **dee jai**, **sĭa jai**, **chôhk dee** and **châwp** are followed by **thêe** before a clause:

khăwthôht thêe maa săi: khâ
I'm sorry (that) I'm late

khàwpkhun mâak thêe maa chûey
Thank you very much for helping me

phŏm dee jai thêe khun mâi dâi pai
I'm happy that you didn't go

chán sĭa jai thêe mâi dâi cher Dao:
I'm sorry I didn't meet Dao:

dee (thêe) phŏm mâi dâi klàp bâan
It's good I didn't go home

4.9 Conditional clauses

thâa khâo wát tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîaprói
If you go in a temple you must dress politely

tâwng tàeng tua sùphâap rîapról thâa khâo wát
You must dress politely if you go in a temple

The same conditional sentences can also refer to the past. When referring to the future, **thâa** often means when:

thâa kháo maa phŏm ja bàwk kháo
When (or if) he comes, I'll tell him

Spoken Thai normally uses a negative conditional instead of 'unless':

sài kaang kayng khăa sân dâi: thâa mâi khâo wát
You can wear shorts unless you are going in a temple

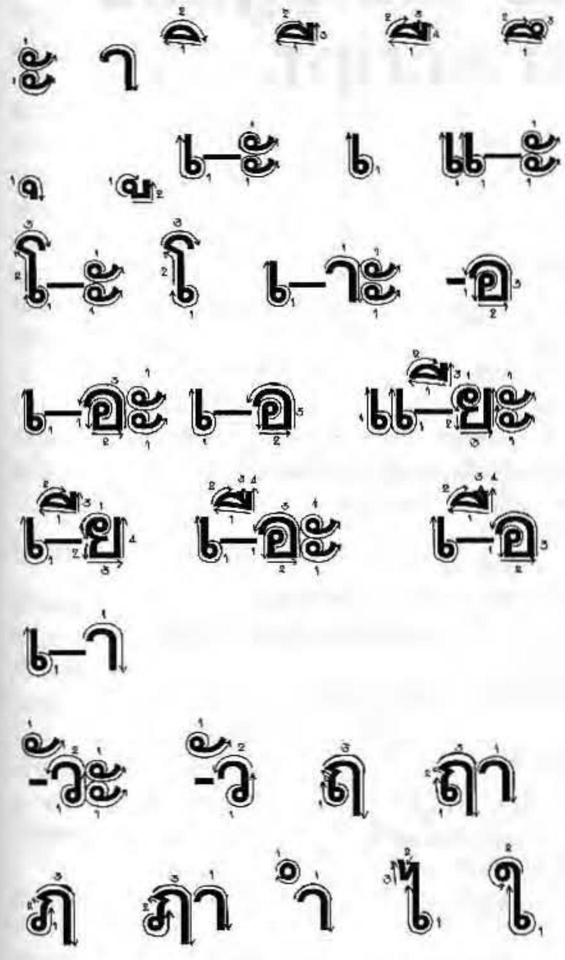
How to write Thai letters

Most letters can be written with a single stroke starting at the beginning of the line marked '1'.

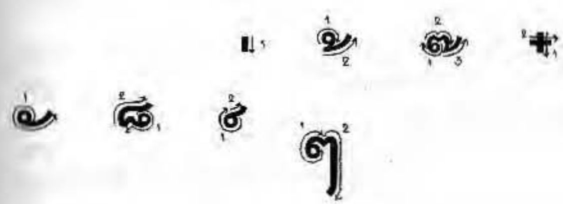
Consonants



Vowels



Tone and other markers



Sample dialogues in Thai script

Unit 6: Dialogue 5

ฟ้า: คุณมาเมืองไทยทำไมคะ?
GARY: มาทำงานครับ
ฟ้า: คุณทำงานอะไรคะ?
GARY: เป็นผู้จัดการครับ
ฟ้า: ทำงานเกี่ยวกับอะไรคะ?
GARY: ทำงานที่บริษัทเกี่ยวกับคอมพิวเตอร์ครับ
ฟ้า: จริงหรือคะ? เครื่องฉันไม่ทำงานค่ะ
คุณซ่อมได้ไหมคะ?
GARY: ไม่ได้ครับ ผมไม่ใช่ช่าง
ผมเป็นผู้จัดการครับ ซ่อมเครื่องไม่เป็นครับ
ฟ้า: น่าเสียดายนะคะ ขอโทษค่ะ คุณได้เงินเดือนเท่าไหร่คะ?
GARY: ไม่มากเท่าไหร่ครับ
ฟ้า: ผู้จัดการต้องได้เงินเดือนเยอะแน่นอนค่ะ

Unit 9: Dialogue 5

JOE: คุณเป็นข้าราชการใช่ไหมครับ?
แก้ว: ไม่ใช่ครับ เป็นพนักงานขายครับ
JOE: บริษัทใหญ่ไหมครับ?
แก้ว: ประมาณสองร้อยคนครับ
JOE: ใหญ่เหมือนกันนะครับ
แก้ว: พนักงานเยอะแต่ลูกค้าน้อย บริษัทขาดทุนครับ
JOE: งานยุ่งไหมครับ?
แก้ว: ก็ยุ่งครับ ทำงานวันละสิบชั่วโมง เริ่มสิบโมงเช้า
แล้วก็เลิกสองทุ่มครับ หยุดเดือนละสองวัน
JOE: ทำงานหนักจริง ๆ นะครับ
คุณได้เงินเดือนดีไหมครับ?
แก้ว: ไม่ค่อยดีครับ ผมได้เงินเดือนน้อย
JOE: ค่าใช้จ่ายเยอะใช่ไหมครับ?
แก้ว: ใช่ครับ ค่าเช่าบ้านแพงครับ ค่าไฟฟ้าก็แพงด้วยครับ
และผมต้องส่งเงินให้พ่อแม่ทุกเดือนครับ เงินเดือนไม่พอใช้ครับ

Unit 10: Dialogue 5

SUE: เครื่องบินกับรถไฟไปอะไรดีกว่าคะ?
แก้ว: ดีคนละอย่างครับ นั่งรถไฟชมวิวได้ครับ ไปเครื่องบินสะดวกกว่าครับ
ปลอดภัยด้วยครับ
SUE: แต่แพงกว่ารถไฟใช่ไหมคะ
แก้ว: ใช่ครับ ไปรถทัวร์ถูกที่สุดแต่อันตรายครับ
SUE: รถไฟกับรถทัวร์อย่างไหนเร็วกว่าคะ?
แก้ว: เท่ากันครับ
SUE: ฉันตัดสินใจไม่ได้ ทำยังไงดี?
แก้ว: สำหรับผมเช่ารถยนต์ดีกว่าครับ
SUE: น่าสนใจเหมือนกันนะคะ
แก้ว: แต่คุณต้องไปกับบริษัทที่มีประกันครับ
แล้วก็คุณต้องโทรจองก่อนเพราะว่าเสาร์อาทิตย์จะมีนักท่องเที่ยว
เยอะนะครับ
SUE: อาทิตย์หน้ารถคุณ คุณจะใช้ รึเปล่าคะ?
แก้ว: อ้าว เป็นรถใหม่ครับผมให้ยืมไม่ได้ครับ

Unit 12: Dialogue 3

เจ้าของ: ทำอะไรมาครับ?
SUE: กำลังขึ้นดอยอยู่แล้วก็หลงทางค่ะ
เจ้าของ: ถึงหมู่บ้านชาวเขารึเปล่าครับ?
SUE: ไม่ถึงค่ะเดินเกือบสามชั่วโมงค่ะ ฝนกำลังจะตก
โชคดีที่มีผู้ชายขับรถปิคอัพมาเจอ เขาพาเรากลับมาส่งค่ะ
เจ้าของ: เห็นผักกะหล่ำปลีเยอะไหมครับ?
SUE: ผักกะหล่ำปลีหรือคะ?
เจ้าของ: สมัยก่อนชาวเขาปลูกฝิ่น ตอนนี้ปลูกฝิ่นไม่ได้ ผิดกฎหมาย
ชาวเขาต้องเปลี่ยนมาปลูกผักกะหล่ำปลีแทน รัฐบาลช่วย
SUE: ไม่เห็นค่ะ เดินนานแต่ไม่เห็นไร่ไม่ได้เจอใคร
ฉันเหนื่อยมากค่ะ
เจ้าของ: อากาศร้อนครับ สงสัยยังไม่ชินครับ
SUE: วันไหนฉันจะชินคะ

Unit 13: Dialogue 2

ANN: อันนี้เรียกว่าอะไรคะ?
ใหญ่: เรียกว่าสักครับ ถามทำไมครับ?
ANN: ถามเฉย ๆ ค่ะ ส่วนมากผู้ชายที่มีสักเป็นคนร้ายใช่ไหมคะ?
ใหญ่: ไม่ใช่ครับ นักมวยนิยม นักศึกษาก็นิยม
ANN: อันนี้คืออะไรคะ?

ใหญ่: เป็นเครื่องมือเก่าครับ
ANN: เขาใช้ทำอะไรคะ?
ใหญ่: ป้ายนี้บอก คุณอ่านเป็นไหมครับ?
ANN: ฉันอ่านไม่ออกค่ะ อ่านได้แต่บางคำ ป้ายอ่านว่าอะไรคะ?
ใหญ่: อ่านว่าเขาใช้ทำสักครับ
ANN: ทำสักหรือคะ? จริงหรือคะ?
ใหญ่: พูดเล่นครับ เป็นอุปกรณ์ที่เมื่อก่อนชาวนาใช้ทำนา คุณต้องให้ครูสอนอ่านและเขียนภาษาไทย
ANN: ฉันไม่มีครูค่ะ ฉันเรียนด้วยตัวเองค่ะ
ใหญ่: หรือครับ?
ANN: แต่ฉันคิดว่าอ่านภาษาไทยไม่ค่อยมีประโยชน์ค่ะ ส่วนมากป้ายที่สำคัญเขียนเป็นภาษาอังกฤษ
ใหญ่: ป้ายนี้อ่านว่าอะไรครับ?
ANN: ไม่รู้ค่ะ
ใหญ่: อ่านว่า กรุณาถอดรองเท้า แล้วก็ป้ายนี้อ่านว่า ห้ามจับ ปรับห้าร้อยบาท บางครั้งอ่านภาษาไทย มีประโยชน์ใช่ไหมครับ?

Unit 13: Dialogue 4

ศุภชัย: วันนี้จะพา Lisa ไปวัด
LISA: ฉันใส่กางเกงขาสั้นได้ไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ไม่ได้ครับ ถ้าเข้าวัดต้องแต่งตัวสุภาพเรียบร้อยครับ
LISA: ต้องใส่เสื้อแขนยาวไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ไม่จำเป็นครับ แต่ถ้าใส่จะสุภาพกว่า
Lisa ต้องใส่หมวกในวัดไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ใส่ก็ได้ ไม่ใส่ก็ได้ แล้วแต่
LISA: ถ่ายรูปได้ไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ได้ครับ ถ้าไม่มีป้ายห้าม
LISA: คุณนับถือศาสนาพุทธใช่ไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ใช่ครับ
LISA: คุณไปวัดบ่อยไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ไปวันพระครับ เดือนละสี่ครั้ง แล้วก็ทุกอาทิตย์ผมใส่บาตรครับ
LISA: สำหรับชาวพุทธการทำบุญสำคัญใช่ไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ใช่ครับ ชาวพุทธต้องมีน้ำใจครับ
LISA: ศาสนาพุทธห้ามฆ่าสัตว์ใช่ไหมคะ?
ศุภชัย: ใช่ครับ
LISA: ทำไมมีคนล่าสัตว์เยอะคะ?
ศุภชัย: คุณมีคำถามเยอะเกินไปครับ

Unit 15: Dialogue 2

JOE: เมื่อคืนนี้คุณดูข่าวรึเปล่าครับ?
ฟ้า: ไม่ได้ดูค่ะ ฉันเบื่อดูข่าวค่ะ มีแต่ข่าวไม่ดี เศรษฐกิจไม่ดี ผู้ร้ายเยอะ คนติดยาเสพติดเยอะ คนติดโรคเอดส์ก็เยอะ น่าเบื่อมาก
JOE: ใช่ครับ ผมเห็นด้วยครับ
ฟ้า: ถามทำไมคะ? มีอะไรเกิดขึ้นรึเปล่าคะ?
JOE: มีฝรั่งคนหนึ่งโดนฆ่าที่ภูเก็ต
ฟ้า: หรือคะ?
JOE: ผู้ร้ายเข้าบ้าน ฝรั่งโดนขโมยของเยอะ
ฟ้า: มีครอบครัวรึเปล่าคะ?
JOE: ข่าวไม่ได้บอกว่ามีครอบครัวในเมืองไทยรึไม่ แล้วก็เมื่อวานนี้นักการเมืองโดนตำรวจจับ
ฟ้า: เพราะคอรัปชั่นรึเปล่าคะ?
JOE: สงสัยครับ แต่มีข่าวดีหนึ่งอย่างครับ
ฟ้า: ข่าวนี้อะไรคะ?
JOE: ทีมชาติไทยชนะมาเลเซียสองศูนย์ครับ
ฟ้า: ไม่น่าเชื่อค่ะ

Unit 15: Dialogue 3

TONY: คุณทำอาชีพนวดแผนโบราณมานานรึยังครับ?
หมอนวด: หกปีแล้วค่ะ ตั้งแต่ฉันมาอยู่เชียงใหม่ค่ะ
TONY: เกี่ยวกับงานนี้คุณมีความคิดเห็นอย่างไรครับ? ชอบไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: ชอบหรือ? ก็ต้องชอบเพราะว่าฉันไม่มีทางเลือกใช่ไหมคะ ฉันไม่มีความรู้ค่ะ ถ้าไปทำงานอย่างอื่นก็ทำงานหนัก แล้วก็ได้เงินไม่ค่อยดีค่ะ
TONY: นอกจากนวดคุณเคยทำงานอะไรครับ?
หมอนวด: เมื่อก่อนฉันขายก๋วยเตี๋ยวค่ะ
TONY: งานนี้ยุ่งไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: อะไรนะคะ? ขายก๋วยเตี๋ยวหรือ? ต้องมีคนช่วยค่ะ เพราะว่าเกี่ยวกับทำก๋วยเตี๋ยวงานมันเยอะ ทำงานคนเดียวไม่ไหว แล้วก็ต้องตื่นเช้าไปตลาด ต้องจ่ายค่ารถโดยสารเอง กลับมาต้องทำเอง แล้วก็ไปขายเองใช่ไหมคะ ฉันไม่ไหว ทำงานนวดไม่ยุ่งยากค่ะ
TONY: คุณทำงานวันละกี่ชั่วโมงครับ?
หมอนวด: ไปทำงานสิบโมงเช้าแล้วก็เลิกเที่ยงคืนค่ะ แต่ถ้าลูกค้ามาเที่ยงคืนต้องนวดถึงตีสอง ทุกวันกลับที่พักดึกค่ะ นอนตีสองตีสามเพราะว่าต้องอาบน้ำไหว้พระก่อนนอนค่ะ
TONY: หนึ่งเดือนคุณทำงานกี่วันครับ?

หมอนวด: หนึ่งเดือนหรือคะ?
ส่วนมากงานนี้ไม่หยุดนอกจากมีธุระจำเป็นหรือว่าไม่สบายอาจจะหยุดค่ะ
TONY: เงินเดือนที่คุณได้พอใช้ไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: เงินเดือนไม่มีค่ะ มีงานทำก็ได้เงิน
ถ้าลูกค้าไม่มาไม่มีงานก็ไม่ได้เงินค่ะ
หมอนวดได้ชั่วโมงละสี่สิบบาทค่ะ
ส่วนมากทำงานหนึ่งวันสองหรือสี่ชั่วโมงค่ะ
TONY: ลูกค้าให้ทิปไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: ปกติให้ค่ะ
TONY: ให้เท่าไหร่ครับ?
หมอนวด: ก็แล้วแต่ลูกค้าค่ะ ส่วนมากให้ห้าสิบบาทถึงหนึ่งร้อยค่ะ
บางครั้งมากกว่าค่ะ
TONY: ถ้าไม่มีลูกค้าคุณทำอะไรบ้างครับ?
หมอนวด: ต้องนั่งรอค่ะ ฉันเอาหนังสือมาอ่านแก้เหงาค่ะ
TONY: คุณเคยมีปัญหากับลูกค้ารึเปล่าครับ?
หมอนวด: ไม่เคยค่ะ ส่วนมากลูกค้านิสัยดีค่ะ
TONY: สำหรับคุณลูกค้าที่นิสัยดีคืออะไรครับ?
หมอนวด: สุภาพเรียบร้อย มีน้ำใจค่ะ
TONY: แล้วก็ลูกค้าที่คุณไม่ชอบมีไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: ลูกค้าที่ชอบบ่นและขี้เหนียวค่ะ
TONY: ค่าใช้จ่ายคุณที่จำเป็นคืออะไรครับ?
หมอนวด: ก็จำเป็นทุกอย่างค่ะ ทำงานนี้ต้องแต่งตัว
แล้วก็ต้องส่งเงินให้พ่อแม่ค่ะ
TONY: คุณมีปัญหาเกี่ยวกับสุขภาพคุณเพราะงานนี้ไหมครับ?
หมอนวด: เจ็บมือตลอดค่ะ เจ็บตลอดไม่หาย บางวันไม่มีแรงนวด
แล้วก็ลูกค้าจะบ่นที่ผู้จัดการ เมื่อก่อนตอนเริ่มเจ็บฉันกินยา
แต่ยากัดกระเพาะค่ะ หมอถามว่าทำงานอะไร ก็นวดแผนโบราณ
ยังงั้นก็เจ็บ ไม่เจ็บได้ยังไง ถ้าคุณหยุดทำงานนวดคุณก็ไม่เจ็บ
ถ้าคุณเจ็บก็มาฉีดยาเพราะว่าเป็นโรคที่เกี่ยวกับงานนี้
หมอบอกว่าฉีดยาบ่อยก็อันตราย หมอให้ฉันหยุดอาชีพนวดแผนโบราณ

English translations of dialogues for Units 6 to 15

Unit 6

Dialogue 1

LÉK: *Excuse me, where do you come from?*
KEN: *I come from Liverpool.*
LÉK: *What country is Liverpool in?*
KEN: *It's in England. Do you know the Beatles?*
LÉK: *No, I don't.*
KEN: *They came from Liverpool as well.*
LÉK: *They're footballers are they?*
KEN: *No, they were singers.*
LÉK: *I don't really like Western songs.*
KEN: *What sort of songs do you like to listen to?*
LÉK: *I like Isan songs.*
KEN: *Where are you from?*
LÉK: *I'm from Isan.*

Dialogue 3

NÍT: *Where are you going?*
JOE: *I'm going to fetch my children at the school.*
NÍT: *How many children do you have?*
JOE: *Two.*
NÍT: *Really? Boys or girls?*
JOE: *One boy, one girl.*
NÍT: *(That's) good. How old are they?*
JOE: *My son is fourteen, my daughter is six.*
NÍT: *Your daughter was born here, was she?*
JOE: *Yes.*

NÍT: *Most Western families (have few people) are small, aren't they?*
JOE: *Yes.*
NÍT: *Thai families are large (have many children). I have twelve children. My mother also had twelve children.*
JOE: *Do your parents live in Isan?*
NÍT: *My mother lives in Isan. My father's dead.*

Dialogue 5

FÁA: *Why did you come to Thailand?*
JOE: *I came to work.*
FÁA: *What work do you do?*
JOE: *I'm a manager.*
FÁA: *What is your work to do with?*
JOE: *I work for a computer company.*
FÁA: *Really? My computer isn't working. Can you repair it for me?*
JOE: *I can't. I'm not a technician. I'm a manager.*
FÁA: *That's a pity. Excuse me, how much is your salary?*
JOE: *Not very much. Enough to get by on.*
FÁA: *A manager must earn a lot for sure.*

Unit 7

Dialogue 1

JOE: *Look at that woman.*
SǑMBOON: *Which one?*
JOE: *The one wearing sunglasses.*
SǑMBOON: *Do you know her? She looks like a television star.*
JOE: *She's the wife of a friend.*
SǑMBOON: *Really?*
JOE: *What's that building?*
SǑMBOON: *It's a temple. Shall we go and have a look at it?*
JOE: *Yes. It's beautiful.*
SǑMBOON: *This temple is very old. About 300 years.*
JOE: *It looks new. It's quiet. I can't see any monks.*
SǑMBOON: *There's nobody here.*
JOE: *The trees are tall. The air is nice and cool.*
SǑMBOON: *Yes. (It's) better than the main road isn't it?*
JOE: *Much better.*

Dialogue 3

STEVE: *The traffic's stuck.*
ÙDOM: *It's stuck everywhere.*
STEVE: *Mind that motorbike! (That's) dangerous.*
ÙDOM: *That man is drunk for sure.*
STEVE: *Look out! You nearly ran into that tree. Calm down. Drive more slowly, it's safer. In Bangkok there are a lot of accidents.*
ÙDOM: *Yes, there are many sorts of problems. (to do with many things) Which way do we go?*
STEVE: *Straight on, then turn left at this side street.*
ÙDOM: *Do we go further?*
STEVE: *A little bit further. After the crossroads my house is on the left.*
Here we are (we've arrived). Stop here.

Dialogue 5

DAO: *What's the weather like in Chiang Mai?*
TONY: *Terrible. It's raining every day. There isn't any sun.*
DAO: *Really? Mind the mosquitoes (biting).*
TONY: *I'm fed up. Going anywhere is very difficult.*
DAO: *Why is that?*
TONY: *It's raining heavily and the roads are no good.*
DAO: *This month is the rainy season. The weather's like this every year.*
TONY: *Is it raining in Bangkok?*
DAO: *It rained this morning. It's stopped now.*
TONY: *It's raining again here. There are floods.*
DAO: *Really?*
TONY: *I want to go back to Bangkok. It's not fun here.*

Unit 8

Dialogue 1

SÙPHACHAI: *Can I see the menu? What should we order? The seafood here is fresh. What is there?*
WAITRESS: *There's prawns, fish, crab, what will you have?*

LISA: *I don't like seafood.*
WAITRESS: *I'll have one spicy seafood soup.*
LISA: *And one club sandwich.*
WAITRESS: *Yes. What will you drink?*
SÙPHACHAI: *A bottle of water.*
WAITRESS: *Yes.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Would you like anything else?*
LISA: *No.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Why are you only eating a little?*
LISA: *I'm full.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Are you not hungry?*
LISA: *If I eat a lot I'll get fat.*
SÙPHACHAI: *You should exercise. Get up early and go running.*
LISA: *I don't like getting up early.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Tomorrow I'll go and fetch you at your house and we'll go running together.*
LISA: *Tomorrow? All right.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Don't forget.*

Dialogue 3

ANN: *How much are the CDs?*
STALLHOLDER: *One CD a hundred and thirty baht. Three CDs for three hundred and sixty baht.*
ANN: *Can you reduce them a bit more for me?*
STALLHOLDER: *I've already reduced them. These CDs are hard to find. How many do you want?*
ANN: *Six.*
STALLHOLDER: *Altogether seven hundred and twenty baht.*
ANN: *Can you (sell them for) six hundred and fifty?*
STALLHOLDER: *Impossible! I'll have no profit. This price is very cheap.*
ANN: *In other places they sell them for only a hundred.*
STALLHOLDER: *Oh! Nowhere sells them cheaper than this. Let's make it seven hundred and be done with it. Special price. Is there anything else?*
ANN: *No.*
STALLHOLDER: *We're agreed on seven hundred baht, right? (From) one thousand, four hundred change, right?*
ANN: *Three hundred.*
STALLHOLDER: *Correct! I'm going to make a loss for sure.*

Dialogue 5

ATTENDANT: *What are you looking for?*
ANN: *I'm looking for my car.*
ATTENDANT: *Where did you park it?*
ANN: *I can't remember.*
ATTENDANT: *What make is it?*
ANN: *Toyota.*
ATTENDANT: *Is this car yours?*
ANN: *Which one?*
ATTENDANT: *The one that's parked in front of the gate.*
ANN: *No, my car's red. It's new as well.*
ATTENDANT: *What's the registration number?*
ANN: *I don't know. I hired it yesterday.*
ATTENDANT: *The one over there, right?*
ANN: *Where exactly?*
ATTENDANT: *The one next to the lorry.*
ANN: *I can't see. (The one) in front, right?*
ATTENDANT: *(No) behind.*
ANN: *I can see it. Yes.*

Unit 9

Dialogue 1

KATE: *Do you like watching boxing?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Well, it's good fun.*
What do you like doing in your free time?
KATE: *I like watching films.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Do you often watch films?*
KATE: *Not very often.*
SÙPHACHAI: *How many times a month?*
KATE: *Two or three times.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Why don't you rent videos to watch at home?*
KATE: *My video recorder is broken.*
SÙPHACHAI: *What sort of films do you like to watch?*
KATE: *I like ghost films.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Oh! Aren't you frightened?*
KATE: *Well, I am rather. But they are good fun.*

SÙPHACHAI: *I don't think watching films often is very good.*
KATE: *Why not?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Exercise is better. It's good for your health.*
KATE: *I exercise often. I go to the disco to dance every week.*

Dialogue 3

FÁA: *My elder sister lives in England. She's lived there many years. She got married there.*
JOE: *Is her husband a Westerner?*
FÁA: *Yes. They have a daughter of three. She's really cute.*
JOE: *What's your sister's husband like?*
FÁA: *He's old but very rich.*
JOE: *Is he kind?*
FÁA: *He drinks a lot and he smokes a lot. And he's very mean.*
JOE: *Really?*
FÁA: *They argue a lot. My sister is not happy. I worry about her.*
JOE: *Why doesn't your sister split up with her husband?*
FÁA: *Well, she loves her husband. And she loves her daughter. She can't split up.*

Dialogue 5

JOE: *You're a civil servant aren't you?*
KÂEO: *No, I'm a salesman.*
JOE: *Is the company big?*
KÂEO: *About 200 people.*
JOE: *That's quite big.*
KÂEO: *A lot of staff but not many customers. The company is making a loss.*
JOE: *Is the work difficult?*
KÂEO: *Well, yes. I work 10 hours a day. I start at ten o'clock and finish at eight. I have two days holiday a month.*
JOE: *You really do work hard. Do you get a good salary?*
KÂEO: *Not really. I get a little.*
JOE: *You have a lot of expenses, right?*
KÂEO: *Right. The rent is expensive. The electricity is also expensive. And I have to send money to my parents every month. The salary is not reasonable.*

Unit 10

Dialogue 1

LISA: *This morning I want to go to the seaside. Shall we go together?*
SÙPHACHAI: *I can't. I have to wash the car first.*
LISA: *You don't have to. You could wash it tomorrow, that would be all right.*
SÙPHACHAI: *I can't. The car is very dirty.*
LISA: *Can I help you?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Thanks. It doesn't matter. It doesn't take long. When it's finished, we can go in the afternoon.*
LISA: *I'm not free this afternoon. I have to clean my house.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Shall we go tomorrow?*
LISA: *Tomorrow I'm going to the hairdresser's. Are you free on Saturday?*
SÙPHACHAI: *On Saturday I want to take you to my house.*
LISA: *What for?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Nothing special.*
LISA: *When can we go to the seaside?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Any time. The sea will stay there all the time. It won't go anywhere.*

Dialogue 3

KÂEO: *Shall we go to the department store today?*
SUE: *I don't feel like going.*
KÂEO: *Why not?*
SUE: *I'm not well.*
KÂEO: *What's the matter?*
SUE: *I've got the flu. I've got a headache and a sore throat.*
KÂEO: *Have you been to see the doctor?*
SUE: *Not yet. I bought some medicine to take. I'll soon be better.*
I don't want to go and see the doctor.
KÂEO: *Why not? Are you frightened of the doctor?*
SUE: *I'm frightened he'll give me an injection.*
KÂEO: *There's no need to be afraid. An injection is just like a mosquito bite.*
SUE: *I'm afraid of mosquitoes, too.*

Dialogue 5

SUE: *Which is better, to go by plane or train?*
KÂEO: *They are good in different ways. If you go by train you can admire the view.*
The plane is more convenient. And it's safe.
SUE: *But it's more expensive than the train, isn't it?*
KÂEO: *Yes. Going by coach is cheapest but it's dangerous.*
SUE: *Which is quicker, the train or the coach?*
KÂEO: *They are the same.*
SUE: *I can't decide. What should I do?*
KÂEO: *In my view, it would be better to hire a car.*
SUE: *That sounds interesting.*
KÂEO: *But you must go with a company that has insurance and phone first to book as there will be a lot of tourists at the weekend.*
SUE: *Will you be using your car next week?*
KÂEO: *Hey! My car is new. I can't lend you mine.*

Unit 11

Dialogue 1

ASSISTANT: *Can I help you?*
LISA: *I'd like to change this blouse. I bought it yesterday.*
ASSISTANT: *Why?*
LISA: *It's too small. It's a little bit too tight. And there's a button broken.*
ASSISTANT: *Didn't you try it on in the shop?*
LISA: *Yes. At first I thought it was fine but then I changed my mind.*
ASSISTANT: *Did you bring the receipt?*
LISA: *Yes.*
ASSISTANT: *There isn't pale blue in large, would you like grey?*
LISA: *Yes.*
ASSISTANT: *Would you like to try it on?*
LISA: *Yes.*
ASSISTANT: *Come this way, please. Try the blouse on here.*
LISA: *Oh, this size is really big. I'd rather have the old one.*
ASSISTANT: *Yes. Wait a moment. I'll sew a button on for you. It's ready. Please come again.*

Dialogue 3

JOE: *Is my car ready yet? I brought it in for a service this morning.*
MECHANIC: *It's not ready yet. The mechanic is repairing it.*
JOE: *Oh! What's the matter with it? This morning it was running fine. There weren't any problems with it.*
MECHANIC: *The brake light is broken. The clutch is loose. And the battery is not good. You must change it. I suspect you don't take your car in for a service often.*
JOE: *What is the cost of the repairs?*
MECHANIC: *Altogether seven thousand baht.*
JOE: *When will it be ready?*
MECHANIC: *Is it urgent?*
JOE: *I have to use it tonight. What time does the garage close?*
MECHANIC: *Eight o'clock. I think it will be ready at seven thirty.*

Dialogue 5

MAALEE: *Happy New Year!*
ANN: *Thank you.*
MAALEE: *You don't look happy. Is something the matter?*
ANN: *I lost my handbag.*
MAALEE: *How did you lose it?*
ANN: *I left it in the car. It was on the back seat.*
MAALEE: *Was there a lot in the bag?*
ANN: *My house keys, a ring, a gold necklace; some silk pyjamas. There were some socks and a belt I'd bought as a birthday present for my husband. The belt was leather, made in Italy. I cried.*
MAALEE: *Did you lock your car?*
ANN: *No, I didn't. I just went for a moment.*
MAALEE: *What! You didn't lock the car? Nowadays there are lots of thieves. Why are you (so) forgetful?*
Have you reported it at the police station?
ANN: *Yes.*
MAALEE: *What did the police say?*
ANN: *They said I am forgetful.*

Unit 12

Dialogue 1

OWNER:	*Where did you go yesterday?*
KEN:	*We went to the zoo.*
OWNER:	*Did you see the elephants?*
KEN:	*No, there wasn't time.*
OWNER:	*There's a baby elephant just been born. Have you heard the news about it?*
KEN:	*No. Thai people love elephants very much, don't they?*
OWNER:	*Yes. They're strong animals. They're good at working. They are intelligent as well. Have you ridden an elephant?*
KEN:	*Yes.*
OWNER:	*When?*
KEN:	*Two years ago. When I was living in Chiang Mai. I rode just once.*
OWNER:	*Did you enjoy it?*
KEN:	*No, I was frightened. Since then I'm not interested in riding an elephant ever again.*

Dialogue 3

OWNER:	*What have you been doing?*
SUE:	*We were going up the mountain and we lost our way.*
OWNER:	*Did you reach the hill tribes village?*
SUE:	*No. We walked nearly three hours. It was about to rain. Fortunately a man driving a pick-up found us. He gave us a lift back.*
OWNER:	*Did you see a lot of cabbages?*
SUE:	*Cabbages?*
OWNER:	*Previously the hill tribes planted opium. Now they can't plant opium. It's illegal. They have had to change and plant cabbages instead. The government helped them.*
SUE:	*We didn't see any. We walked a long time but we didn't see any fields. We didn't meet anybody. I'm very tired.*
OWNER:	*The weather's hot. I suspect you're not used to it yet.*
SUE:	*When will I ever get used to it?*

Dialogue 5

NÓK:	*Have you been in Thailand long?*
JASON:	*Two years.*
NÓK:	*Two years? Will you stay much longer?*
JASON:	*Why?*
NÓK:	*It's too bad we didn't have a chance to meet before.*
JASON:	*Never mind. In the future we'll have many opportunities to meet.*
NÓK:	*I hope so but in two months I'm going to Canada. I'm going to teach Thai in the university.*
JASON:	*Are you going for long?*
NÓK:	*Six months. I'm coming back in November. We'll be able to meet then.*
JASON:	*Oh, in October I'm going back home to Australia. I haven't been back for a long time.*
NÓK:	*October? Will you stay in Australia for long?*
JASON:	*I'm not sure. I might stay a long time. Maybe I'll do a degree.*
NÓK:	*In that case, when will we meet again? In our next life?*

Unit 13

Dialogue 1

LISA:	*What are you looking for?*
SÙPHACHAI:	*I'm looking for the dictionary.*
LISA:	*Can you speak slowly? If you speak fast, I can't understand.*
SÙPHACHAI:	*I'm looking for the dictionary.*
LISA:	*What is 'phótjànaanúkrom'?*
SÙPHACHAI:	*It's a book to do with translation.*
LISA:	*What does 'plae' mean?*
SÙPHACHAI:	*'plae' means 'to change the language'. I'm not explaining right.*
LISA:	*What does 'athíbai' mean?*
SÙPHACHAI:	*You must look in the dictionary.*
LISA:	*'phótjànaanúkrom' . . .*
SÙPHACHAI:	*There's no need to ask. I've found it. This (book) is a dictionary.*

LISA: *I understand. Why were you looking for a dictionary?*
SÙPHACHAI: *I was looking for the meaning of a word.*
LISA: *I don't understand.*
SÙPHACHAI: *Why is it (so) difficult for us to understand each other today?*

Dialogue 2

ANN: *What is this called?*
YÀI: *It's called 'tattoo'. Why do you ask?*
ANN: *I'm just asking. Most men who have tattoos are criminals, right?*
YÀI: *No. They are popular with boxers. They're also popular with students.*
ANN: *What's this?*
YÀI: *It's an old tool.*
ANN: *What was it used for?*
YÀI: *This notice says. Can you read it?*
ANN: *No, I can't. I can only read a few words. What does it say?*
YÀI: *It says it was used to make tattoos.*
ANN: *To make tattoos? Really?*
YÀI: *I was joking. It's a tool that farmers used to use to farm the fields. You should ask your teacher to teach you to read and write Thai.*
ANN: *I don't have a teacher. I'm studying by myself.*
YÀI: *Really?*
ANN: *But I don't think reading Thai is very useful. Most of the time, important signs are written in English.*
YÀI: *What does this notice say?*
ANN: *I don't know.*
YÀI: *It says 'Please take off your shoes' and this sign says 'No touching. 500 baht fine'. Sometimes reading Thai is useful, isn't it?*

Dialogue 4

SÙPHACHAI: *Today I'll take you to the temple, Lisa.*
LISA: *Can I wear shorts?*
SÙPHACHAI: *No. If you enter a temple you must dress politely.*
LISA: *Do I need to wear a long-sleeved blouse?*

SÙPHACHAI: *It's not essential, but if you do it will be more polite.*
LISA: *Do I need to wear a hat in the temple?*
SÙPHACHAI: *You can wear one or not wear one. It's up to you.*
LISA: *Can I take photographs?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Yes, as long as there isn't a sign forbidding it.*
LISA: *You're a Buddhist (worship the Buddhist religion) aren't you?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Yes.*
LISA: *Do you often go the temple?*
SÙPHACHAI: *I go on holy days. Four days a month. Then every week I give food to monks.*
LISA: *For Buddhists making merit is important isn't it?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Very important. Buddhists must be generous.*
LISA: *Buddhism forbids people to kill animals, doesn't it?*
SÙPHACHAI: *Yes.*
LISA: *Why are there a lot of people who hunt animals then?*
SÙPHACHAI: *You ask too many questions!*

Unit 14

Dialogue 1

FÁA: *A Western man called you this morning.*
KATE: *Did he give his name?*
FÁA: *No. He didn't speak Thai very clearly.*
KATE: *Did he say he knew me?*
FÁA: *He asked 'Is Kate in?' I think it's one of your colleagues.*
KATE: *I don't know who it is. Did he leave a message?*
FÁA: *He said he would call again.*
KATE: *Did he say what time he would call?*
FÁA: *No, he didn't say.*
KATE: *He didn't say anything else?*
FÁA: *I'm not sure. It was a bad line. I guess he was calling from another province or from a call box, I don't know. He said something very strange but I didn't hear it clearly.*
KATE: *What was that?*
FÁA: *Something to do with an orange elephant.*

KATE: *An orange elephant? I don't understand what this is about.*
Oh, I understand. He meant the technician who is going to come and repair the washing machine.
FÁA: *Incredible! I thought 'this Westerner is really strange'.*

Dialogue 2

RECEPTIONIST: *Thai Military Bank. Good morning.*
JOE: *Extension 13 please.*
RECEPTIONIST: *Hold on a moment. There's no answer. Who do you want to speak to?*
JOE: *I want to speak to Mr Sŏmboon.*
RECEPTIONIST: *Hold the line.*
SECRETARY: *Hello.*
JOE: *Can you put me through to Mr Sŏmboon please?*
SECRETARY: *Who's calling?*
JOE: *My name is Joe.*
SECRETARY: *What do you want to speak to Mr Sŏmboon about?*
JOE: *I want to know if Mr Sŏmboon will come on his own.*
Yesterday I asked him to return my call but he didn't phone.
SECRETARY: *Mr Sŏmboon isn't here at the moment. Can I give him a message?*
JOE: *Please tell him I'll call him again this evening.*
SECRETARY: *But he won't be here this evening.*
JOE: *Do you know what time he will be back?*
SECRETARY: *He's not coming back today. He'll be back the day after tomorrow.*
JOE: *Oh, but we have an appointment for today.*
SECRETARY: *With Mr Sŏmboon? Where did you arrange to meet?*
JOE: *At my company.*
SECRETARY: *That's not possible. Mr Sŏmboon is at a meeting in Australia.*
JOE: *I don't understand. This is the Krung Thai bank, isn't it?*
SECRETARY: *No, this is the Thai Military Bank.*
JOE: *I'm sorry. I got the wrong number.*

Unit 15

Dialogue 1

DAO: *I'm sorry I'm a bit late. I missed the bus. I worked late today.*
TONY: *That's all right.*
DAO: *I hurried home to cook for my mother and I didn't have enough time.*
TONY: *That's all right. I've only just arrived.*
DAO: *Thank you very much for coming to help me.*
TONY: *No problem.*
DAO: *Did I tell you that my younger sister got a new job?*
TONY: *No.*
DAO: *She has to come back home late. I want to buy her a motorbike as I don't want her to walk back late on her own.*
TONY: *Right. You have to be careful nowadays. There are lots of badly behaved teenagers.*
DAO: *My bank book is lost. I can't withdraw money. Can I trouble you and borrow some money from you?*
TONY: *How much?*
DAO: *I'd like thirty thousand baht. I don't want to bother you but I don't know anybody. Thank you for your generosity.*
TONY: *When will you give it back?*
DAO: *Next month.*
TONY: *For sure?*
DAO: *Sure.*

Dialogue 2

JOE: *Did you watch the news last night?*
FÁA: *No, I'm bored with watching the news. There's only bad news. The economy is not good, lots of criminals, lots of drug addicts, lots of people with Aids. It's very boring.*
JOE: *That's right. I agree.*
FÁA: *Why do you ask? Did something happen?*
JOE: *There was a Westerner got killed in Phuket.*
FÁA: *Really?*
JOE: *The criminals got in the house. The foreigner had a lot of things stolen.*

FÁA: *Did he have a family?*
JOE: *The news didn't say whether he had a family in Thailand or not.*
And yesterday a politician was arrested by the police.
FÁA: *For corruption?*
JOE: *I expect so. But there's one piece of good news.*
FÁA: *What's that?*
JOE: *The Thai national team beat Malaysia two nil.*
FÁA: *Incredible!*

Dialogue 3

TONY: *Have you been in the traditional massage profession long?*
MASSEUSE: *Six years. Since I came to Chiang Mai.*
TONY: *What are your opinions about the work? Do you like it?*
MASSEUSE: *Do I like it? Well, I have to like it. I don't have an alternative, do I? I don't have any education (knowledge). If I go and do some other work I'll have to work hard and I won't get much money.*
TONY: *What other work have you done apart from massage?*
MASSEUSE: *I used to sell noodles.*
TONY: *Is the work hard?*
MASSEUSE: *What was that? Selling noodles? You have to have someone to help you. Because selling noodles involves a lot of work and working on your own you can't manage. You have to get up early to go to the market, you have to pay for the transport yourself. When you're back you have to make them yourself and go and sell them yourself, right? I couldn't manage. Massage work isn't so hard.*
TONY: *How many hours do you work a day?*
MASSEUSE: *I go to work at ten o'clock and finish at midnight. But if a client comes at midnight I have to massage them until two am. Every day I go back to my lodgings late. I go to bed at two or three am as I have to have a shower and say my prayers before I go to bed.*
TONY: *How many days do you work in a month?*
MASSEUSE: *In a month? Usually I don't have a day off unless I have some essential business or I'm not well then I take a day off.*

TONY: *Is your salary reasonable?*
MASSEUSE: *I don't get a salary! If there's work to do I get money. If no clients come there's no work and I don't get any money. A masseur gets 40 baht an hour and usually we work two or four hours a day.*
TONY: *Do clients give tips?*
MASSEUSE: *Usually, yes.*
TONY: *How much do they give?*
MASSEUSE: *Well, it depends on the client. Usually 50 to 100 baht. Sometimes more.*
TONY: *If there aren't any clients, what do you do?*
MASSEUSE: *We have to sit and wait. I bring a book to read to stop myself feeling lonely.*
TONY: *Have you ever had problems with clients?*
MASSEUSE: *Never. The clients mostly behave well.*
TONY: *What is a 'well behaved' client for you?*
MASSEUSE: *Polite. One who is generous.*
TONY: *And are there clients you don't like?*
MASSEUSE: *Ones who like complaining and are stingy.*
TONY: *What are your essential expenses?*
MASSEUSE: *Everything is essential! When you do this job you have to dress (well). And I have to send money to my parents.*
TONY: *Do you have any health problems related to your work?*
MASSEUSE: *My hands hurt all the time. They hurt all the time and never get better. Some days I haven't the strength to massage. Then clients will complain to the manager. Before, when they first started hurting I took medicine but the medicine was bad for my stomach. The doctor asked 'What's your job?' 'Traditional massage' 'In that case (your hands) will ache, how do you expect not to ache? If you stop working they won't hurt. If they hurt come and have an injection because it's an illness related to this job'. The doctor said having injections often is also dangerous. He advised me to give up the profession of traditional massage.*

Key to exercises

Unit 1

Exercise 1

2 aròi khráp (khâ). **3** mâi aròi khâ. **4** phèt khâ. **5** mâi sanùk khâ. **6** mâi châwp khâ. **7** châwp khâ. **8** mâi ao khâ.

Exercise 2 (examples)

2 sanùk mái khráp? **3** phèt mái khá? **4** sanùk mái khá? **5** aròi mái khráp? **6** ao (phŏnlamái) mái khá? **7** châwp (phŏnlamái) mái khá? **8** ao (phŏnlamái) mái khá?

Exercise 3 (example)

. . .
DÙSÌT: aahăan aròi mái khráp?
ANN: mâi aròi khâ.
DÙSÌT: phèt mái khráp?
ANN: phèt mâak khâ.
DÙSÌT: ao phŏnlamái mái khráp?
ANN: mâi ao khâ. khàwpkhun khâ. chán mâi châwp phŏnlamái khâ.

Exercise 4 (examples)

1	2
ao bia mái khá?	mâi ao khâ. mâi châwp bia khâ.
ao chaa mái khá?	ao khráp.
ao náam mái khá?	ao khráp.
ao nom mái khá?	mâi ao khâ. mâi châwp nom khâ.

Exercise 5 (examples)

2 châwp aahăan thai. **3** châwp phŏnlamái thai. **4** mâi châwp chaa. **5** châwp kaafae. **6** mâi châwp kaafae yen. **7** châwp chaa yen. **8** châwp bia yen. **9** châwp nom.

Exercise 6

2 sŭey mâak khráp. **3** châwp mâak khráp. **4** dee jai mâak khráp. **5** aròi mâak khráp. **6** ráwn mâak khráp. **7** jai dee mâak khráp. **8** sŭey mâak khráp.

Exercise 7

1 . . .
A: khun châwp khâo: phàt kài mái khá?
B: châwp khráp.
A: thêe nêe aròi.

2 A: ao phàt phàk mái khá?
B: phŏm mâi châwp phàt phàk khráp.
A: khun châwp khâo: phàt mái khá?
B: châwp khráp.
A: thêe nêe aròi.

3 A: ao khâo: phàt mŏo mái khá?
B: phŏm mâi châwp khâo: phàt mŏo khráp.
A: khun châwp khâo: phàt kûng mái khá?
B: châwp khráp.
A: thêe nêe aròi.

Exercise 8

1 dee *good* **2** mâak *very* **3** jai dee *kind* **4** thai *Thai* **5** khon *people* **6** nom *milk* **7** mâi *not* **8** kài *chicken* **9** thêe nêe *here*

Exercise 9

1 คน /ดี khon dee *a good person (good people)*
2 คน/ไทย khon thai *Thai people*
3 ดี/มาก dee mâak *very good*
4 ใจ/ดี/มาก jai dee mâak *very kind*
5 ดี/ใจ/มาก dee jai mâak *very happy*
6 ที่นี่/คน/ไม่/ดี thêe nêe khon mâi dee *The people here are bad*
7 คน/ไทย/ใจ/ดี/มาก khon thai jai dee mâak *Thai people are very kind*

Exercise 10

(a) **1** ไก่ **2** ใจ **3** มาก **4** ไม่ **5** มาก **6** คน **7** ไทย **8** นม
9 ที่นี่คนดีมาก **10** คนไทยใจดีมาก
(b) **1** ไก่ **2** ดีมาก **3** คนไทย **4** ดีใจ **5** นม **6** ดีใจมาก **7** ไม่ดี

Unit 2

Exercise 1

. . .
KEN: sawàtdee khráp. khun Ùdom yòo mái khráp?
NEE: mâi yòo khâ.
KEN: khun Ùdom (kháo) pai năi khráp?
NEE: pai tham ngaan khâ.
KEN: khàwpkhun khráp. sawàtdee khráp.
NEE: sawàtdee khâ.

Exercise 2

2 aahăan phèt rěuh khráp? **3** kaafae ráwn rěuh khráp? **4** năo: rěuh khráp? **5** tham ngaan rěuh khráp? **6** mâi pai sanăambin rěuh khráp? **7** mâi sabai: rěuh khráp? **8** khun Ùdom mâi yòo rěuh khráp?

Exercise 3

(a) **2** pai wát. **3** pai sanăambin. **4** pai chieng mài. **5** pai ráan aahăan. **6** pai tàlàat. **7** pai thanaakhaan. **8** pai sathăanee tamrùat. **9** pai rohng raem. **10** pai praisànee.
(b) *Example*
A: Sùnee yòo thêe năi?
B: yòo thêe praisànee.
A: tham ngaan thêe praisànee rěuh?
B: tham ngaan thêe sathăanee tamrùat.

Exercise 4 (suggested answers)

2 thăeo née mee ráan aahăan mái khráp? **3** thăeo née mee wát mái khráp? **4** tàlàat yòo thêe năi khráp? **5** thăeo née mee thanaakhaan mái khráp? **6** sathăanee tamrùat yòo thêe năi khráp? **7** praisànee yòo thêe năi khráp? **8** sanăambin yòo thêe năi khráp?

Exercise 5

kâo 9; sìp 10; pàet 8; săwng 2; sèe 4; hòk 6; săam 3; hâa 5; jèt 7; nèung 1

Exercise 6

(a) about 8 kms (b) about 30 kms (c) about 200 metres (d) about 40 metres (e) about 100 metres

Exercise 7

2 mâi mee kaafae châi mái khá?
3 Ùdom mâi yòo thêe tham ngaan châi mái khá?
4 wan née Ùdom mâi pai tham ngaan châi mái khá?
5 Ùdom pai krungthâyp châi mái khá?
6 sathăanee tamrùat yòo sái: meuh châi mái khá?
7 wan née thanaakhaan pìt châi mái khá?
8 praisànee yòo mâi klai châi mái khá?

Exercise 8 (examples)

2 A: khăwthôht khâ. thăeo née mee rohng phayaabaan mái khá?
B: mâi mee khâ. mee khlíník khâ.
A: klai mái khá?
B: mâi klai khâ. yòo khwăa meuh khâ.

3 A: . . . thăeo née mee hâang mái khráp?
B: mee khâ.
A: klâi mái khráp?
B: mâi klâi khâ.

4 A: . . . hâwng náam yòo thêe năi khráp?
B: yòo sái: meuh khráp.

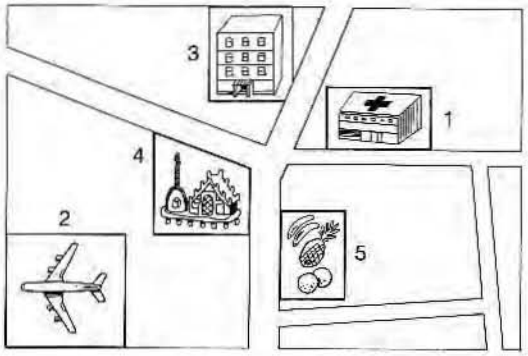
5 A: . . . thăeo née mee sà wâi: náam mái khá?
B: mâi mee khâ. mee sanăam keelaa.
A: klai mái khá?
B: mâi klai khâ. pramaan nèung rói máyt khâ. yòo khwăa meuh.

Exercise 9

1 กิโล the others are places
2 ไกล the others are numbers
3 สิบ the others are verbs
4 แปด the others are numbers of at least ten

Exercise 10

(a) **1** clinic **2** airport **3** hotel **4** temple **5** market



(b)

1	ไป/วัด	pai wát (I'm) going to the temple.
2	ไป/ตลาด	pai tàlàat (I'm) going to the market.
3	ไป/โรง/แรม	pai rohng raem (I'm) going to the hotel.
4	ไม่/ไป/คลินิค	mâi pai khlíník (I'm) not going to the clinic.
5	ไม่/ไป/สนามบิน	mâi pai sanăambin (I'm) not going to the airport.
6	ที่/ตลาด/ไม่/มี/ไก่	thêe tàlàat mâi mee kài There's no chicken in the market.
7	โรง/แรม/มี/คลินิค	rohng raem mee khlíník The hotel has a clinic.
8	ทำงาน/ที่/คลินิค	tham ngaan thêe khlíník (I) work in a clinic.
9	โรง/แรม/ ปิด	rohng raem pìt The hotel is closed.
10	ทำงาน/ที่/สนามบิน	tham ngaan thêe sanăambin (I) work at the airport.
11	ที่/สนามบิน/ไม่/มี/โรง/แรม	thêe sanăambin mâi mee rohng raem There's no hotel in the airport.

Exercise 11

1 ไปตลาด **2** ไปที่ทำงาน **3** ทำงานที่คลินิค **4** ไปสนามบิน **5** ไม่มาโรงแรม **6** ไม่มาทำงาน **7** ไปวัด **8** หาสิบคนมาทำงาน **9** ไปคลินิคที่สนามบิน **10** คลินิคปิด

Unit 3

Exercise 1

2 pai khon dio rĕuh khráp?
3 khun pai tham arai khráp?
4 sabai: dee rĕuh khráp?
5 khun châwp tham arai khráp?
6 khun tham ngaan thêe năi khráp?
7 khun pai thúrá châi mái khráp?
8 jer kan thêe năi khráp?

Exercise 2

2 (ja) pai thêe tham ngaan. pai dûey kan mái khá?
3 (ja) pai rohng raem. pai dûey kan mái khá?
4 (ja) pai sathăanee tamrùat. pai khon dio.
5 (ja) pai thanaakhaan. pai khon dio.
6 (ja) pai ráan aahăan. pai kàp phêuan.
7 (ja) pai wát. pai kàp phêuan.

Exercise 3 (suggested answers)

(a)

kin khâo:	ráan aahăan
doo năng	rohng năng
hăa phêuan	krungthâyp
séuh khăwng	hâang
dern lên	bon doi
doo wiu	námtòk
thài: rôop	wát
doo sàt	sŭan sàt
wâi: náam	chai: thalay

(b) *Example*

A: ja pai ráan aahăan.
B: ja pai tham arai?
A: pai kin khâo:.

Exercise 4

2 pai kèe aathít? pai săam aathít.
3 pai kèe deuan? pai hâa deuan.
4 pai kèe deuan? pai kâo deuan.
5 pai kèe pee? pai sèe pee.
6 pai kèe pee? pai hòk pee.
7 pai kèe wan? pai nèung aathít (jèt wan).
8 pai kèe pee? pai sìp pee.

Exercise 5

1 fried noodles 21 baht **2** chicken fried rice 35 baht **3** pork fried rice 29 baht **4** prawn fried rice 47 baht **5** iced coffee 30 baht **6** hot tea 21 baht

Exercise 6 (suggested answers)

2 pai kèe khon khá? **3** ja pai krungthâyp mêuarài khá? **4** ja pai yang-ngai khá? **5** ja pai năi khá? **6** chái waylaa naan mái? *or* pai kèe chûamohng khá? **7** phaeng mái khá? **8** pai khon dio châi mái khá?

Exercise 7

2 A: . . .
B: ja khàp rót.
A: mâi pai reua rĕuh?
B: khàp rót rayo kwàa.

3 A: . . .
B: ja nâng khrêuang bin.
A: mâi pai rót fai rĕuh?
B: rót fai chái waylaa naan kwàa.

4 A: . . .
B: ja nâng rót bát.
A: mâi khàp rót rĕuh?
B: rót bát rayo kwàa.

Exercise 8

น้ำผลไม้	ห้องน้ำ
น้ำตก น้ำทะเล	สนามบิน
ทำงาน ยี่สิบหก	สถานีรถไฟ

Exercise 9

1	chicken fried rice	35 baht
	prawn fried rice	40 baht
	fried noodles	25 baht
	vegetables	20 baht
	coffee	15 baht
	tea	10 baht
	fruit juice	22 baht

2 Toilet closed **3** Very cheap **4** Toilet 5 baht **5** Be careful the waterfall is dangerous. **6** Taking photographs of waterfalls is fun. **7** I like swimming in the sea. **8** I didn't have time to go to the train station. **9** The house is expensive. **10** I like Thai fruit.

Exercise 10

1 ผมสบายดี **2** ไปรถไฟ **3** ไม่มีสนามบิน **4** ไปว่ายน้ำที่ทะเล **5** สนุกมาก **6** ผมชอบดูทะเล **7** ผลไม้แพง **8** ไม่มีเวลาไปตลาด **9** โชคดี

Unit 4

Exercise 1

2 an lék thâorài khráp? **3** khùat lék thâorài khráp? **4** kaafae phaw mái khráp? **5** ja ao kaafae yen rĕuh kaafae ráwn? **6** ao an năi khráp? **7** ja ao khùat năi – sĕe lĕuang rĕuh sĕe dam? **8** ao náam kèe khùat?

Exercise 2

(a)

Requested	Available	Chosen
black	yellow, grey	grey

(b) **1** . . .
SHOPKEEPER: mâi mee khâ. mòt láeo khâ. mee sĕe nám taan rĕuh sĕe mûang.
KEN: ao sĕe mûang khráp.

2 Ken: sĕe khăo: mee mái khráp?
SHOPKEEPER: . . . mee sĕe chomphoo rĕuh sĕe nám ngern.
KEN: ao sĕe nám ngern khráp.

3	KEN:	sěe fáa mee mái khráp?
	SHOPKEEPER:	. . . mee sěe thao rěuh sěe sôm.
	KEN:	ao sěe sôm khráp.

Exercise 3 (suggested answers)

2 ja pai hâang séuh naalíkaa. ja pai hâang séuh krapăo sataang.
3 ja pai hâang séuh wâen kan dàet. ja pai ráan thài: rôop séuh klâwng thài: rôop.
4 ja pai ráan khăi: sêua phâa séuh sêua. ja pai ráan khăi: rawng tháo séuh rawng tháo.
5 ja pai ráan khăi: nangsěuh séuh nangsěuh. ja pai hâang séuh pàak-kaa
6 ja pai hâang séuh sêua phâa. ja pai ráan khăi: yaa séuh yaa kan yung.

Exercise 4 (suggested answer)

JOE:	sôm née khăi: loh lá thâorài khráp?
STALLHOLDER:	loh lá pàet sìp bàat khâ.
JOE:	lót raakhaa dâi: mái khráp?
STALLHOLDER:	mâi dâi: khâ. mâi phaeng khâ.
JOE:	sùk mái khráp?
STALLHOLDER:	sùk láeo khâ.
JOE:	thòok kwàa nêe mee mái khráp?
STALLHOLDER:	mâi mee khâ.
JOE:	hòk sìp bàat dâi: mái khráp?
STALLHOLDER:	săwng kìloh nèung rói sèe sìp kô dâi: khâ. ao mái khá?
JOE:	ao khráp.
STALLHOLDER:	ao kèe kìloh khá?
JOE:	ao sèe kìloh khráp.
STALLHOLDER:	săwng rói pàet sìp bàat khâ.

Exercise 5

(a) 2 wan née pai dern lên bon doi dâi: mái khá?
3 wan née pai séuh khăwng dâi: mái khá?
4 wan née pai hăa phêuan dâi: mái khá?
5 wan née maa kin khâo: thêe bâan dâi: mái khá?
6 wan née pai wâi: náam dâi: mái khá?
7 wan née pai doo năng dâi: mái khá?
8 wan née pai sŭan sàt dâi: mái khá?

(b) *Examples*
1 mâi dâi: khráp. pai deuan nâa dai:. **2** pai dern lên dâi: khráp. **3** mâi mee waylaa khráp. mâi mee ngern khráp. mâi sabai: khráp. mee thúrá khráp.

Exercise 6

2 ao náam sàp-parót nèung kâeo. **3** ao náam mâphráo: săwng thŭng. **4** ao náam manao: nèung kâeo. **5** ao malakaw nèung chín. **6** ao bia săwng khùat. **7** ao taeng moh săwng chín. **8** ao náam sôm săam kâeo.

Exercise 7 (example)

. . .
A: kâeo lá sìp sèe bàat khâ.
B: ao săwng kâeo khráp. láeo kô kaafae nèung thûey.

Exercise 8

1	สีเหลือง	โชค	the others are to do with prices and selling
2	ซื้อของ	เพื่อน	the others are fruit
3	เมืองไทย	เดือน	the others you wear
4	เมื่อไหร่	เปิด	the others are colours
5	ดอย	เกือบ	the others are forms of transport
6	ซ้าย	ไม่ค่อย	the others are question words

Exercise 9

The products and the places to buy them don't match:
(a) 1 cinema/mosquito repellent
2 photographer's/shirt
3 pharmacy/watermelons
4 bookshop/pineapples
5 clothes shop/a camera
6 shoe shop/sun cream
(b) 1 sunglasses prices reduced 20% today
2 cinema closed for one day
3 the bookshop is not open today
4 thank you very much
5 house for sale not expensive
6 boat for sale cheap
7 selling very cheap Toyota Corona car, year '99, grey, price 350,000 baht

Exercise 10

1 เมืองไทยสนุก **2** ชอบเดินบนดอย **3** เราซื้อรองเท้าสีเทา **4** เรากินข้าวที่โรงแรม **5** หมูอร่อย **6** ที่สนามบินมีเครื่องบินสีเหลือง **7** (ผม)จะไปดูหนัง **8** วันนี้หนาว **9** ผมเจอเพื่อน **10** ขอบคุณมากครับ

Unit 5

Exercise 1 (suggested answers)

2 Dao: tham ngaan yòo. **3** Sùnee séuh khăwng yòo. **4** Maalee wâi: náam yòo. **5** Daeng tham kàp khâo: yòo. **6** Sŏmboon séuh phŏnlamái yòo. **7** Kàmon kin bia yòo.

Exercise 2

2 séuh kàp khâo: réu yang? **3** pai wát réu yang? **4** tham kàp khâo: sèt réu yang? **5** klàp bâan réu yang? **6** (tham) ngaan sèt réu yang? **7** thài: rôop réu yang? **8** chái yaa kan yung réu yang?

Exercise 3 (examples)

	. . .
LISA:	tham arai yòo khá?
SŎMBOON:	nawn làp khráp.
LISA:	Sùnee yòo thêe năi khá?
SŎMBOON:	yòo hâwng náam khráp.
LISA:	tham arai yòo khá?
SŎMBOON:	àap náam khráp.

Exercise 4

	Questions	*Answers*
2	khun tham ngaan thêe nêe kèe deuan láeo?	tham ngaan thêe nêe hòk deuan láeo.
3	khun rian phaasăa angkrìt kèe deuan láeo?	. . . săam deuan láeo.
4	khun mâi sabai: kèe wan láeo?	. . . sèe wan láeo.
5	khun ja yòo thêe nêe èek kèe pee?	. . . èek săwng pee.
6	khun ja tham ngaan thêe nêe èek kèe deuan?	. . . èek kâo deuan.
7	khun ja pai thîo meuang thai kèe aathít?	. . . săwng aathít.
8	khun ja yòo thêe rohng raem èek kèe wan?	. . . èek săam wan.

Exercise 5 (suggested answers)

1 sĭa jai or mâi sabai: jai **2** klua **3** ngûang nawn **4** kròht or aarom mâi dee **5** khít thĕung or ngăo **6** nèuey **7** tèuhn tên **8** klua

Exercise 6

2 bâan phŏm mâi nâa yòo. **3** naalíkaa phŏm mâi phaeng. **4** krapăo phŏm mâi yài. **5** phêuan phŏm mâi klua. **6** ngaan phŏm mâi nâa sŏnjai. **7** phêuan phŏm mâi kròht. **8** nangsĕuh khăwng phŏm mâi nâa sŏnjai.

Exercise 7

1 phák thêe rohng raem Dùsìt khráp.
2 ber thohrasàp sŏon hâa săam pàet hòk jèt sèe nèung kâo.
3 phŏm ja tìt tàw khun thêe bâan.
4 ber thohrasàp meuh thĕuh sŏon nèung pàet hâa kâo jèt săwng nèung.
5 apháatmáyn yòo thêe năi khráp?
6 mee thohrasàp meuh thĕuh mái khráp?
7 chêuh khawndoh arai?
8 faen phák thêe năi khráp?
9 khăw ber thohrasàp meuh thĕuh khráp.
10 khăw chêuh rohng raem khráp.

Exercise 8 (suggested answers)

A	*B*
อาบน้ำ	ห้องน้ำ
ดูทีวี อ่านหนังสือ พักผ่อน นั่งคุยกับเพื่อน	ห้องรับแขก, ห้องนั่งเล่น
นอนหลับ	ห้องนอน
ทำกับข้าว	ห้องครัว
กินข้าว	ห้องอาหาร
ทำธุระ	ห้องทำงาน

Exercise 9

(a) **1** Reading. **2** I like watching television. **3** Taking photographs, walking, swimming. **4** Cooking. **5** I don't really have any.

6 Sleeping. **7** I'm studying English. **8** I like chatting with my friends. **9** Going to the restaurant to eat delicious food. **10** I like walking in department stores looking at pretty things. **11** I like going to the seaside to swim.

(b) **1** My friend is ill and in hospital. **2** I work in a bank. **3** Studying English is fun. Studying English is easy. You can speak English today. **4** Police station another 100 metres. **5** Next year I'm going to study Thai at university.

Exercise 10

1 ผมเรียนภาษาไทย
2 ไม่ยากมาก
3 ชอบพูดภาษาไทยกับเพื่อน
4 ที่นี่มีคนไทยทำงานที่ร้านอาหารไทย
5 วันนี้ผมจะไปธนาคาร จะไปโรงพยาบาลด้วย

Unit 6

Dialogue 1

She likes Isan music.

Exercise 1 (example)

. . .

LÉK: Tokyo yòo prathâyt arai khá?
TONY: yòo thêe yêepùn khráp. kháo pen khon yêepùn.

Exercise 2

1 kamphoochaa **2** phâak tâi **3** kaolěe něua **4** phâak něua **5** phâak eesăan **6** àmayríkaa něua **7** àefríkaa tâi **8** àmayríkaa tâi **9** aysia **10** phamâa lao: meuang thai **11** kaolěe tâi

Dialogue 3

Joe has a son aged fourteen and a daughter aged six. Nít has twelve children, as had her mother; her mother lives in the Isan, her father is dead.

Exercise 3

(a) *Examples*
khun mee lôok kèe khon? thêe tham ngaan mee phôochai: kèe khon? lôok chai: aayú thâorài?

(b) mee lôok săam khon. mee lôok chai: nèung khon. mee lôok săo: săwng khon.
thêe tham ngaan mee phôochai: sìp hòk khon, phôoyǐng kâo sìp pàet khon.
thêe rohng rian mee phôochai: nèung rói săam sìp khon, phôoyǐng nèung rói pàet sìp jèt khon. nai meuang mee nèung săen săwng mèuhn khon.
faen aayú sèe sìp kâo. lôok chai: aayú sìp pàet. lôok săo: aayú yêe sìp săam láe yêe sìp hâa.

Exercise 4 (examples)

Newton mee rohng raem yér (mâak). mee ráan aahăan nói (mâi yér, mâi mâak).
Oldsville mee rohng rian mâi yér, mee rohng phayaabaan mâak.
Oldsville mee thanaakhaan yér, mee wát nói.
Newtown mee thêe thîo yér, mee ráan nói.
Oldsville mee ráan aahăan yér, mee rohng raem nói.

Exercise 5

(a) **1** Mŏo ûwan, tua yài, sŏong, phŏm yao:
2 Daeng phăwm, tua lék, tîa, phŏm sân, sài wâen taa
(b) **2** ûwan mái? **3** làw mái? **4** sŏong mái? sŏong rěuh tîa? **5** phŏm sân rěuh yao:? **6** sài wâen taa mái? **7** tua yài rěuh tua lék?

Dialogue 5

He can't repair her computer.

Exercise 6 (examples)

2 tham-mai maa tham ngaan thêe krungthâyp? **3** pai kamphoochaa tham-mai? **4** séuh khawmpiutêr tham-mai? **5** pai rohng rian tham-mai? **6** tham-mai pai phâak tâi? **7** tham-mai khun mâi châwp phlayng fàràng? **8** tham-mai mâi séuh kàp khâo: thêe tàlàat?

Exercise 7 (examples)

2 chán tham kàp khâo: mâi kèng. khun tham kàp khâo: kèng mái?

Use the same patterns for the other questions.

3 chán kin aahăan phèt mâi pen.
4 chán chái khawmpiutêr kèng.
5 chán ráwng phlayng thai mâi pen.
6 chán sâwm rót pen tàe mâi kèng.
7 chán wâi: náam mâi kèng.
8 chán phôot phaasăa yêepùn pen.

Exercise 8 (suggested answers)

2 Alan tham ngaan thêe sathăanthôot. pen nák kaan thôot.
3 Ùdom tham ngaan thêe bawrisàt imphàwt eksáphàwt. pen nák thúrákìt.
4 Sùnee tham ngaan thêe máhăawít-tháyaalai. pen aajaan.
5 Yài tham ngaan thêe rohng phayaabaan. pen măw.
6 Chûm tham ngaan thêe ráan khawmpiutêr. pen phánák ngaan khăi:.
7 Lék tham ngaan thêe rohng rian. pen khroo.
8 Dao: tham ngaan thêe khlíník. pen phayaabaan.
9 Kàmon tham ngaan thêe phíphít-thaphan. pen yaam.

Exercise 9

ธุระ	เที่ยว
เปรี้ยว	หวาน
เล็ก	ใหญ่
เร็ว	ช้า
สูง	เตี้ย
ใต้	เหนือ
อ้วน	ผอม
น่าเบื่อ	น่าสนใจ
แพง	ถูก
ยาว	สั้น

Exercise 10

(a) 1 buy sell repair mobile phones 2 pretty apartment for sale 3 repair watches (clocks) 4 English language school now open 5 The French woman bought a newspaper 6 Is there a Post Office around here? 7 I have to go to the post Office and to the sports stadium. Tomorrow I'm going to the zoo.

(b) Writer: owner of a watch shop.
Spouse: business person, manager of an import export company, Japanese.
Son: university teacher, wife works in a bank, French.
Daughter: nurse, husband a doctor, South Korean. One son aged 4.

Exercise 11

1 ผมชอบอาหารฝรั่งเศส
2 อาหารไทยเผ็ด
3 ประเทศญี่ปุ่นสวย
4 อาหารญี่ปุ่นไม่เผ็ด
5 แคนาดาหนาวมาก
6 เยอรมันน่าเที่ยว
7 ออสเตรเลียใหญ่มาก
8 ประเทศจีนใหญ่กว่าแล้วก็สนุก
9 เกาหลีใต้น่าสนใจมาก
10 กัมพูชาสวย
11 ภาษาพม่ายากมาก

Unit 7

Dialogue 1

About 300 years

Exercise 1 (examples)

2 phôoyǐng thêe mee thohrasàp meuh thěuh. 3 phôoyǐng thêe tham ngaan thêe sathăanthôot. 4 phôochai: thêe maa kàp khon khàp rót. 5 phôochai: thêe mee phŏm yao:. 6 phôoyǐng thêe sài wâen kan dàet, phŏm sân. 7 phôoyǐng thêe phôot kàp Ùdom. 8 phôochai: thêe doo mĕauan mâi sabai:.

Exercise 2

1 mâi hĕn mee khrai. 2 mâi hĕn mee arai. 3 mâi mee khrai maa. 4 phêuan chán mâi pai năi. 5 mee khrai pai mái? 6 doo mĕauan nák fútbawn. 7 doo mĕauan fŏn ja tòk. 8 doo nák ráwng khon nán.

Exercise 3 (examples)

1 sòk-kapròk mĕn nâa klìat 2 hăwm ngîap 3 sa-àat ngîap 4 sòk-kapròk nâa klìat mĕn sĭang dang 5 chŏei chŏei sa-àat 6 sòk-kapròk mĕn sĭang dang

Dialogue 3

On the left, after an intersection.

Exercise 4

1 the temple **2** the ABC building **3** the embassy **4** the stadium

Exercise 5 (example)

...

B: nâng rót sǎwng thǎeo dee kwàa. rót túk túk antarai:.
A: tàe rót túk túk rayo kwàa.
A: nâng rót sǎwng thǎeo pai mái?
B: nâng rót tháeksêe dee kwàa. sǎwng thǎeo cháa.
A: tàe mee sǎwng thǎeo yér kwàa.

Dialogue 5

It has rained every day.

Exercise 6 (examples)

2 mâi yàak pai ráan aahǎan fàràngsàyt. yàak pai ráan aahǎan yêepùn. **3** mâi yàak pai thîo yêepùn. yàak pai thîo kamphoochaa. **4** mâi yàak jàwt thêe sàthǎanee tamrùat. yàak jàwt thêe rohng phayaabaan. **5** mâi yàak kin phàt thai. yàak kin khâo: phàt. **6** mâi yàak pai thîo phíphít-thaphan. yàak pai thîo sǔan sàt. **7** mâi yàak nâng rót táeksêe. yàak nâng rót túk túk. **8** mâi yàak pai doo nǎng. yàak doo thee wee.

Exercise 7

2 mêua waan née tawn cháo pai hǎa phêuan. **3** mêua waan née tawn bài: rian nangsěuh thêe bâan. **4** mêua waan née tawn yen pai ráan aahǎan. **5** mêua kheuhn née pai doo nǎng. **6** mêua cháo pai hǎa mǎw. **7** mêua cháo pai phiphít-tháphan. **8** tawn bài: pai sathǎan-thôot.

Exercise 8 (examples)

1 (a) mee himá nói. dàet mâi àwk.
(b) mee himá yér. mâi nǎo: mâak.

(c) mee phaayú. mâi mee dàet. fǒn tòk thúk wan. nǎo:. mee lom raeng.
(d) aakàat dee. dàet àwk thúk wan. mâi ráwn mâak. mâi mee mâyk.

2 ja mee phaayú. fǒn ja tòk nàk. thanǒn ja pìak. ja mee lom raeng. ráwang náam thûam. ráwang yung kàt.

Exercise 9

รู้จัก	รู้
เอา	อยาก
อร่อย	น่ากิน
สวย	หล่อ
หนาว	เย็น
อาหาร	กับข้าว
พูด	คุย
ขวบ	ปี

Exercise 10

(a) hotel: newly opened 110 rooms; rooms clean; safe, not expensive, Thai restaurant with karaoke; pretty view.
(b) Bangkok: a.m. clouds, heavy rain, p.m. strong winds.
North: cloudy a.m. cold with light rain; wind speed 15–30 kilometres per hour.
South: a.m. cool p.m. sunny; sea: high waves.
(c) Straight on then turn right at the cross roads. There's a cinema on the left. Just beyond the cinema, about 20 metres, there's a red light. Go straight on for another 100 metres and you'll reach my house.

Exercise 11

เลยสถานีตำรวจประมาณสองร้อยเมตรแล้วก็เลี้ยวซ้ายที่สามแยก
ตรงไปถึงไฟแดงแล้วเลี้ยวขวาแล้วก็จะถึงที่ทำงานผม

Unit 8

Dialogue 1

She agrees to go running with Sùphachai.

Exercise 1

2 khun tâwng phákphàwn. **3** khun tâwng àap náam. **4** yàa khàp rót rayo mâak ná. (mâi tâwng khàp rót rayo mâak.) **5** khun tâwng séuh naalíkaa. **6** khun tâwng pai phiphít-tháphan. **7** khun tâwng séuh yaa kan yung. **8** yàa leuhm krapăo sataang ná.

Exercise 2

2 khăw tôm yam kûng. **3** khăw bia săwng khùat. **4** khăw náam dèuhm sèe khùat. **5** khăw kaafae yen nèung kâeo. **6** khăw khâo: phàt poo săwng thêe. **7** khăw yam thalay săam thêe.

Exercise 3

1 . . .
B: ja dèuhm arai khá?
A: khăw náam mâphráo: nèung kâeo sài nám taan ná khráp.

2 A. khăw kwŭey tĭo sên yài hâeng láeo kô kài yâang săwng thêe.
B: . . .
A: khăw náam sôm săam kâeo mâi sài nám taan ná khráp.

3 A: khăw khâo: phàt poo săwng jaan sài khài láeo kô plaa thâwt nèung thêe.
B: . . .
A: khăw náam sàp-paról nèung kâeo sài nám taan ná khráp.

Dialogue 3

Starting price: 130 baht for 1; 360 baht for 3.
She bought six for 700 baht.

Exercise 4

2 krapăo săwng bai **3** kradàat hòk phaen **4** kâeo săam bai **5** sôm sèe lôok **6** thohrasàp meuh thĕuh săam khrêuang **7** rôop thài: sìp bai **8** khawmpiutêr săwng khrêuang

Exercise 5

1 mamûang lăi: lôok mâi wăan. **2** mee kâeo kèe bai? **3** sôm wăan thúk lôok. **4** krapăo bai née phaeng. **5** phŏm séuh sôm hâa lôok; săwng lôok wăan lôok èuhn yang mâi sùk. **6** rôop thài: bai née sŭey. **7** khawmpiutêr khrêuang năi mâi tham ngaan? **8** pai wát èuhn mái?

Exercise 6

1 láek plìan ngern dâi: mái khráp? **2** chái bàt khraydìt dâi: mái khráp? **3** láek plìan chék dern thaang dâi: mái khráp? **4** séuh ngern angkrìt dâi: mái khráp? **5** ngern sòt mâi phaw. phŏm jài: mâi dâi:. **6** mâi mee bàt khraydìt. **7** mâi mee chék dern thaang. phŏm tâwng plìan ngern yer-raman.

Dialogue 5

It was a new red Toyota.

Exercise 7 (example)

	. . .
ATTENDANT:	jàwt thêe năi khráp?
JOE:	jàwt khâang lăng rót sìp láw khráp.
ATTENDANT:	nêe rót khun réu plào?
JOE:	khan năi khráp?
ATTENDANT:	khan thêe jàwt thêe nôhn khráp. nâa rót săwng thăeo.
JOE:	mâi châi khráp. khan nóhn kào. láeo kô rót khăwng phŏm sèe nám ngern.
ATTENDANT:	khan nóhn châi mái khráp?
JOE:	châi khráp.

Exercise 8

2 tâwng kheuhn rót mawtersai mêuarài?
3 tâwng waang ngern mátjam thâorài khráp?
4 tem tháng khráp.
5 mee pràkan mái?
6 mâi mee bai khàp khèe thai.
7 waang ngern mátjam hâa rói bàat.
8 ja kheuhn rót jàk-krayaan phrûng née.

Exercise 9

ใบขับขี่	วางเงินมัดจำ	อาหารทะเล	รหัสไปรษณีย์
เครื่องดื่ม	อยากรู้อยากเห็น	โทรศัพท์มือถือ	
ห้องรับแขก	กล้องถ่ายรูป	กระเป๋าสตางค์	

Exercise 10

(a) หมายเลขทะเบียน IOU 24T ยี่ห้อรถ Toyota
แบบ Spiderhunter
สีรถ red ซีซี 1700 ที่นั่ง 2
ชื่อผู้ขับ Jane Brown อายุ 18 ชื่อเจ้าของรถ Tom Brown

(b) spicy seafood soup steamed fish in lime
mixed vegetables spicy fish soup seafood salad
fried chicken fried fish spicy chicken soup
barbecued chicken barbecued pork sweet and sour fish
pork/chicken/beef noodles
Drinks: lime juice coconut juice Chinese tea

(c) **1** The pork noodles here are delicious. There is barbecued chicken here. There's vegetarian food today.
2 Hong Kong 7 days special price Holland 10 days 5 star hotel. Air and train tickets.
3 Buy a mobile phone and get a wallet free. Spend more than 2,000 baht and get an exercise bag free. Promotion today, every bag reduced 20%. Cheap price every day.
4 Cash 0.95% credit cards from all banks accepted
5 Motorcycle park. You can park in front of the gates.
6 Apartment for rent
7 Happy New Year
8 Yesterday I hired a car. The woman member of staff asked for my telephone number. I couldn't remember it.
9 Car hire self drive or with driver. Safe. Drivers have mobile phones and can repair cars.

Note: it is often not necessary to translate บริการ

Exercise 11

1 รถสีเทากับสีเหลือง **2** ผมจำหมายเลขทะเบียนไม่ได้ **3** ยี่ห้อรถโตโยต้า
4 ผมไม่เห็นเจ้าของรถ **5** เขาขับรถเร็วมาก **6** ผมจอดรถหน้าประตู
7 รถผมใหม่ **8** ผมเช่าเมื่อวานนี้ **9** ผมไม่มีเบอร์โทรศัพท์

Unit 9

Dialogue 1

She goes dancing at a disco every week.

Exercise 1 (examples)

1 pòk-katì Chûm tham kàp khâo:. pai ráan aahăan mâi khôi bòi. àan nangsĕuh deuan lá khráng. àwk kamlang kai: baang khráng.
2 pai doo năng bòi mái? àwk kamlang kai: aathít lá kèe khráng?

Exercise 2 (example)

. . .
A: fang phlayng bòi mái khráp?
B: wan lá săwng rĕuh săam khráng khâ. láeo kô thúk wan lên bàetmintân. tàe châwp fang phlayng mâak kwàa.

Dialogue 3

Her husband drinks and smokes a lot and is mean.

Exercise 3 (suggested answers)

2 náwng chai: yòo áwtsàtrelia naan réu yang? yòo săam pee láeo.
3 náwng chai: dâi ngern deuan dee réu plào? ngern deuan mâi khôi dee.
4 náwng chai: tàeng ngaan réu yang? tàeng ngaan láeo.
5 mee lôok réu yang? yang khâ.
6 faen pen khon áwtsàtrelia réu plào khráp? châi khâ.
7 phanráyaa jai dee réu plào khráp? jai dee khâ.
8 náwng chai: séuh bâan réu yang? séuh láeo khâ.
9 náwng chai: mee khwaam sùk réu plào khráp? mee khâ.

Exercise 4 (example)

FÁA: . . . yòo lăi: pee láeo. tàeng ngaan thêe nôhn khâ.
JOE: faen pen khon eesăan rĕuh khráp?
FÁA: khâ. mee lôok săam khon. nâa rák mâak khâ.
JOE: faen jai dee réu plào khráp?
FÁA: jai dee khâ. nísăi dee. náwng chai: pen khon jon tàe mee khwaam sùk.
JOE: rĕuh khráp?
FÁA: náwng chai: khàyăn mâak tàe phanráyaa khêe kìat tham ngaan.

Dialogue 5

Kâeo works 10 hours a day (10 a.m. to 8 p.m.) with two days holiday a month.

Exercise 5

1 Opening time: 10 a.m. Closing time: 10 p.m.

2 ...

KATE:	ráan aahăan pèrt kèe mohng khá?
SHOPPER:	pèrt kâo mohng khâ.
KATE:	...
SHOPPER:	pìt hâa thûm khâ.

Exercise 6

2 Chûm rèrm tham ngaan pàet mohng cháo láeo kô lêrk hòk mohng yen.
3 Lék ... sìp èt mohng cháo ... săam thûm.
4 Nít ... nèung thûm ... hòk mohng cháo.
5 Kan ... hòk mohng yen ... tee săwng.
6 Sùnee ... tee hâa ... thîang wan.
7 Daeng ... bài: săam mohng ... thîang kheuhn.
8 Nee ... bài: mohng ... hâa thûm.

Exercise 7 (example)

	...
AGENT:	mee khâ. lăng née khâ.
ANN:	mee kèe hâwng khá?
AGENT	mee săwng hâwng nawn khâ. láeo kô hâwng ráp khàek khâ.
ANN:	mee ae mái khá?
AGENT:	mâi mee khâ. mee phátlom.
ANN:	mee thohrasàp mái khá?
AGENT:	mee khâ.
ANN:	mee fernichêr arai khá?
AGENT:	mee sohfaa, mee tó, mee kâoêe sèe tua.
ANN:	mee kèe tiang khá?
AGENT:	săwng tiang khâ.

Exercise 8

ความดี	goodness
ความคิดเห็น	opinion
ความรู้	knowledge
ความจริง	truth
ความคิด	idea
ความเร็ว	speed
ความรัก	love
ความร้อน	heat
ความจำ	memory
ความอยากรู้อยากเห็น	curiosity

Exercise 9

(a) 1 Advertiser: businessman, aged 33, height 166 cm., good character, doesn't smoke or drink; loves children; hard-working.
Partner: female, sincere, loves cleanliness, 30 or under.
2 Advertiser: female, lonely, aged 25, works in a Japanese company; speaks French and Chinese, knows about computers.
Partner: kind man with a good character to do business together.

(b) Near the university; air-con, furniture; 2 bedrooms, kitchen, living room, 2 toilets; beautiful fruit orchard; quiet; clean swimming pool; cheap rent; vacant, contact 05 798 6541

(c) 1 and 5; 3 and 7; 4 and 11; 8 and 2; 10 and 6; 12 and 9

Expenses	Water, electricity, telephone, rent
Problems	Health
Fears	Poverty, not having work to do
Working hours	
per day	9 hours per day
days per month	23 days per month
Free time	watching boxing
Worries	health of family

Exercise 10

1 เป็นนักธุรกิจ อายุประมาณสามสิบปี
2 ทำงานที่บริษัทอิมพอร์ตเอ็กสพอร์ต
3 ชอบสูบบุหรี่กินเหล้า ทำงานวันละสิบหกชั่วโมง
4 เวลาว่างชอบร้องเพลงกับเพื่อน ไปดูมวยไทยเดือนละหนึ่งครั้ง ออกกำลังกายไม่บ่อย สุขภาพไม่ค่อยดี
5 มีปัญหาเกี่ยวกับเงิน
6 ภรรยาเป็นพนักงานธนาคารของญี่ปุ่น มีลูกชายสองคนลูกสาวหนึ่งคนอายุห้าขวบ

Unit 10

Dialogue 1

On Saturday Sùphachai wants to take Lisa to his home.

Exercise 1

(a) wan angkhaan pai thîo hâang mái khráp?
(b) wan angkhaan mâi wâang. chán tâwng tham ngaan. pai wan jan mái khá?
(a) wan phút pai tên ram mái khá?
(b) . . . chán tâwng rian nangsĕuh. pai wan angkhaan mái khá?
(a) wan pháréuhàt pai doo năng phĕe mái khá?
(b) . . . chán tâwng pai ráp bai khàp khèe. pai wan phút mái khá?
(a) wan sùk lên dontree mái khá?
(b) . . . chán tâwng pai hăa măw. lên dontree wan pháréuhàt mái khá?
(a) wan săo tham khwaam sa-àat bâan mái khá?
(b) . . . chán tâwng séuh thohrasàp meuh thĕuh. tham wan sùk mái khá?
(a) wan aathít pai châo rót mái khá?
(b) . . . chán tâwng sà phŏm. pai châo wan săo mái khá?

Exercise 2 (example)

. . .

MAALEE: wan angkhaan tawn bài: chán tâwng pai pràchum láeo kô tawn yen chán tâwng pai ngaan sòp khâ.

Dialogue 3

She's afraid the doctor will give her an injection.

Exercise 3

. . .

SUE: chán mâi sabai: khâ.
KÂEO: pen arai khráp?
SUE: pen khâi. láeo kô jèp meuh. pùat fan dûey.
KÂEO: pai hăa măw réu yang khráp?
SUE: pai láeo khâ. măw hâi yaa. chán tâwng kin yaa wan lá săwng khráng kàwn aahăan.

Exercise 4

1 aayú thâo kan. **2** taa sĕe mĕuan kan. **3** rót sĕe mâi mĕuan kan. **4** phŏm sĕe khlái khlái kan. **5** tham ngaan thêe bawrisàt dio kan. **6** ngern deuan thâo kan. **7** rèrm tham ngaan waylaa dio kan. **8** yòo thêe bâan dio kan. **9** khâa châo thâo kan. **10** khâa chái jài: thâo kan. **11** khwaam khít hĕn khlái khlái kan.

Exercise 5

2 B: khăw yaa kâe jèp khaw.
A: yaa née kin wan lá săam khráng lăng aahăan.
3 B: . . . kâe pùat.
A: . . . săwng khráng lăng aahăan.
4 B: . . . kâe khâi.
A: . . . săam khráng kàwn aahăan.
5 B: . . . kâe phĭu mâi.
A: . . . khráng dio lăng aahăan.
6 B: . . . kâe khâi wàt yài.
A: . . . khráng dio kàwn aahăan.
7 B: . . . kâe tháwng sĭa.
A: . . . săam khráng kàwn aahăan.
8 B: . . . kâe pháe.
A: . . . khráng dio lăng aahăan.

Dialogue 5

Kâeo recommends hiring a car from a company that gives insurance and suggests calling first to book.

Exercise 6 (examples)

1 khăwn kàen klâi kwàa chieng mài. chieng mài sŭey kwàa khăwn kàen. **2** pai khăwn kàen sàdùak kwàa pai chieng mài. **3** chieng mài mee thêe thîo yér kwàa khăwn kàen. **4** pai krungthâyp phaeng thêe sùt.

Exercise 7

(a) Every foreigner entering Thailand must have a passport. As a rule you need a visa but you can apply for one at the airport. Foreigners who stay in Thailand must report to the immigration police every three months.

(b) **1** khon tàang prathâyt thúk khon tâwng mee weesâa.
2 khăw weesâa dâi: thêe tamrùat trùat khon khâo meuang thêe sanăambin.
3 khâo meuang thaang reua mâi dâi:.
4 khon tàang prathâyt thêe yòo prathâyt phamâa tâwng pai jâeng thêe tamrùat thúk săwng aathít.
5 yàa leuhm pháasáphawt.

Exercise 8

1 ล้าง ทำความสะอาด ซัก สระ	(similar meanings)
2 ปวด เจ็บ	(similar meanings)
3 เดียวกัน ใกล้กัน เท่ากัน เหมือนกัน	(similar meanings)
4 ประเทศ เมือง	(similar meanings)
5 ขาดทุน กำไร	(contrasting meanings)
6 ขี้เกียจ ขยัน	(contrasting meanings)

Exercise 9

(a) **1** Museum closed on Thursdays
Working days: open 8.00 closed 19.00
Saturday/Sunday closed

2 Dental clinic working hours
Monday to Thursday: morning 08.00 to 13.00
evening 16.30 to 20.30 p.m.
Friday closed
Saturday, Sunday open 11.00 closed 19.00

(b)

Monday	Went to museum, took car in to be checked
Tuesday	Went to funeral
Wednesday	Went to a party, lost wallet
Thursday	Meeting at insurance company
Friday	Appointment with dentist
Saturday	Went to swimming pool, cleaned house, had a headache
Sunday	Ill, had flu, doctor gave injection

(c)

1 สหรัฐอเมริกา	USA has the greatest length of roads.
2 ประเทศอินเดีย	India has most spoken languages.
3 ประเทศจีน	China produces most tobacco.
4 ประเทศไทย	Thailand produces most pineapples.
5 ประเทศอิตาลี	Italy produces most wine.
6 ประเทศญี่ปุ่น	Japan produces most cars.
7 ประเทศอินโดนีเซีย	Indonesia produces most coconuts.
8 ประเทศบราซิล	Brazil produces most coffee.
9 ประเทศเวเนซุเอลา	Venezuela has the highest waterfall.

Exercise 10

วันจันทร์	เป็นหวัด
วันอังคาร	ปวดฟัน ไปหาหมอฟัน หมอฉีดยา
วันพุธ	วันนี้หยุด ไปพิพิธภัณฑ์ วันนี้ปิด
วันพฤหัส	จ่ายค่าโทรศัพท์ เอารถไปล้าง
วันศุกร์	ไปตรวจสุขภาพ
วันเสาร์	พักผ่อน
วันอาทิตย์	ตอนเช้าอ่านหนังสือ ตอนบ่ายนอนหลับ

Unit 11

Dialogue 1

She decides not to change it.

Exercise 1 (examples)

(a) **2** khun doo sàt thêe sŭan sàt réu plào? **3** khun châo rót réu plào? **4** khun nâng reua réu plào? **5** khun pai wîng lên réu plào? **6** khun yeuhm ngern khăwng phêe săo: réu plào? **7** khun rian phaasăa jeen réu plào?

(b) *Examples*
2 mâi dâi doo. klai kern pai/waylaa mâi phaw.
3 . . . phaeng kern pai.
4 . . . mee khon yér kern pai.
5 . . . ráwn kern pai.
6 . . . ngern phêe săo: mâi phaw.
7 . . . yâak kern pai.

Exercise 2

1 khăw doo kraprohng / sêua yêuht / chút wâi: náam / kaang kayng khăa sân / sêua khăen sân / sêua khăen yao: / chút săakon.

2 *Examples*
khăw plìan kaang kayng tua née. lŭam (kern pai).
khăw plìan chút wâi: náam chút née. man lék kern pai. kháp pai nói khâ.

Dialogue 3

Probably at 7.30 p.m.

Exercise 3 (examples)

(a) **1** B: ...
A: ja plìan mêuarài?
B: kamlang ja plìan.
2 A: sâwm khawmpiutêr réu yang khráp? ...
3 A: láang rót réu yang khráp? ...
4 A: àap náam réu yang khráp? ...
5 A: sà phŏm réu yang khráp? ...
6 A: sák phâa réu yang khráp? ...

(b) **1** kamlang plìan yòo.
Use the same pattern for other answers.

(c) *Examples*
1 ja plìan kàwn pai séuh khăwng.
2 kin khâo: sèt láeo ja sâwm.
3 ja láang kawn ao pai sâwm.
4 láang rót sèt láeo ja àap.
5 àap náam sèt láeo ja sà.
6 ja sák kàwn ja pai hăa phêuan.

Exercise 4

(a) LISA: ... thâorài
CLERK: rót dùan ... khon lá ...
CLERK: thîo dio.
LISA: ... àwk ...
LISA: ... chûamohng ...
CLERK: hòk mohng cháo
LISA: thêe

(b) *Example*
...
CLERK: rót tham-madaa khon lá hòk rói khráp.
TONY: pai klàp rĕuh khráp?
CLERK: thîo dio khráp.
TONY: rót àwk kèe mohng khráp?
CLERK: àwk hòk mohng cháo khráp.
TONY: thĕung kèe mohng khráp?

CLERK: thĕung bài: sèe mohng khráp.
TONY: séuh tŭa săam thêe khráp.

Dialogue 5

Ann reported the loss of her bag; when she told they police she had forgotten to lock the car door, they said she was forgetful.

Exercise 5

2 kunjae yòo tâi kâoêe.
3 hâwng náam yòo khâang bon.
4 rót mawtersai yòo khâang lăng rót sìp láw.
5 khrêuang sák phâa yòo khâang nâwk.
6 sôi khaw yòo bon tó.
7 hâwng pràchum yòo chán bon.
8 praisànee yòo khâang nâa sathăanee rót fai.

Exercise 6 (suggested answers)

1 bao năa baang **2** sèe lìam klom săam lìam mái **3** phlaasàtìk klom bao **4** phâa fâi: baang **5** mái sèe lìam léuk kwâang khâep **6** ngern phlaasàtìk klom sèe lìam **7** kwâang khâep **8** klom baang plawm tháe **9** léuk kwâang **10** kwâang khâep mái **11** ngern plawm tháe

Exercise 7

1 ถุงมือ	**2** ของเก่า	**3** ของเล่น
4 หมอดู	**5** เครื่องซักผ้า	**6** โรงงาน
7 ตู้โทรศัพท์	**8** ยาสูบ	**9** แม่บ้าน

Exercise 8

(a) **1** Air-conditioning: cools rooms quickly, quiet.
2 Cassette walkman: new design, pink or silver; remote; weight 148 grams, width 78 mm, length 108 mm, thickness 38 mm.
3 Fridge: 3 doors, wide tall and deep; can hold many vegetables and fruit; can hold up to eight 2 litre bottles of drinks.
4 Mobile phone: clear sound, can use in whole country, any time; convenient Thai menu, music programmes; can take photographs to send friends.
5 Photocopier: 15 sheets a minute, up to 120,000 sheets a month; digital; black and white and colour.

(b) 1 Don't let electrical goods come into contact with water.
2 Don't use electrical goods in the bathroom.
3 Don't put heavy things on electrical wires.
4 If possible take plug out after use.
5 When buying electrical goods you should buy genuine products.
6 Read manual before using electrical goods.

Exercise 9

1 ซื้อโทรศัพท์มือถือที่ห้างเมื่อวานนี้ ห้างให้กระเป๋าสตางค์ฟรี
2 ไม่แพง ราคาพิเศษ ลดราคา 20% แต่ไม่มีคู่มือภาษาอังกฤษ
3 สีสวย สีชมพู เล็ก เบา น้ำหนัก 80 กรัม เสียงชัดดี
4 เมนูภาษาอังกฤษ ถ่ายรูปได้ ใช้แบตเตอรี่สองชั่วโมงได้

Unit 12

Dialogue 1

He went once but he was frightened.

Exercise 1

1 khoei . . . khoei . . . khráng . . . tawn. **2** tâng tàe **3** khoei . . . tawn **4** phêrng **5** tâng tàe **6** tâng tàe . . . khoei **7** tâng tàe **8** khoei . . . khráng . . . khráng

Exercise 2 (suggested answers)

1 ngoo **2** malaeng **3** mǎa **4** ling **5** nók **6** khwai: **7** maeo **8** jarákhây

Dialogue 3

The government have subsidised hill tribe people to plant cabbages instead of opium.

Exercise 3

2 Dao: pai séuh khǎwng maa. kamlang tham kàp khâo: yòo. kamlang ja doo thee wee.
3 Kâeo pai khèe cháang maa. phákphàwn yòo. kamlang ja pai doo jarákhây.
4 Fáa lǒng thaang maa. kamlang dern pai sathǎanee rót fai. kamlang ja séuh tǔa.

5 Sǒmboon plòok tônmái maa. kamlang phaa mǎa pai dern. kamlang ja kin kwǔey tǐo.
6 Nók doo khào: maa. kamlang doo nǎng. kamlang ja doo keelaa.
7 Sùphachai tham khwaam sa-àat bâan maa. kamlang sák phâa yòo. kamlang ja láang rót.

Exercise 4

1 faam **2** pàa **3** khlawng **4** mâe náam **5** dàwk mái **6** kàw **7** sàphaan **8** phookhǎo . . . lôhk

Dialogue 5

In October.

Exercise 5

1 A: khun plòok dàwk mái deuan kumphaa châi mái?
B: mâi châi. plòok deuan mókaraa.
A: khun pai ngaan sòp deuan meenaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan kumphaa.
A: khun mee ùbàt hàyt deuan maysǎa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan meenaa.
A: khun sǎwn phaasǎa fàràngsàyt deuan phréutsaphaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan maysǎa.
A: khun lêrk sòop bùrèe deuan míthunaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan phréutsaphaa.
A: khun pen khâi wàt yài deuan karakádaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan míthunaa.
A: khun khâo máhǎawít-tháyaalai deuan sǐnghǎa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan karakádaa.
A: khun pai hǎa mǎw fan deuan kanyaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan sǐnghǎa.
A: khun jawng tǔa khrêuang bin deuan tulaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan kanyaa.
A: lôok chai: khun kèrt deuan phréutsajikaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan tulaa.
A: khun pai tàang prathâyt deuan thanwaa châi mái?
B: . . . deuan phréutsajikaa.

2 A: khun tàeng ngaan deuan mókaraa châi mái?
B: mâi châi. tàeng ngaan deuan kumphaa.

Other answers follow the same pattern.

Exercise 6 (examples)

2 chán wǎng wâa khun ja pai yòo mâi naan. **3** khong ja dâi ngaan thêe dee. **4** àat ja nèuey. **5** sǒngsǎi pìt. **6** khong sòk-kapròk mâak. **7** sǒngsǎi mâi hâi pràkan. **8** wǎng wâa kháo mâi jèp mâak.

Exercise 7 (examples)

2 kháo lên káwp maa naan réu yang? **3** khun yòo angkrìt kèe pee láeo? **4** khun sǎwn phaasǎa fàràngsàyt maa kèe pee láeo? **5** khun yòo New York maa kèe wan láeo? **6** khun lêrk kàp sǎamee maa naan réu yang? **7** khun rian phaasǎa angkrìt maa kèe pee láeo?

Exercise 8

1 sàwp phàan **2** sàwp tòk **3** wíchaa **4** jòp **5** nák sèuksǎa **6** nák rian

Exercise 9

General word	*Specific words*
ผลไม้	แตงโม มะพร้าว น้ำมะนาว กล้วย มะละกอ
เฟอร์นิเจอร์	โต๊ะ เตียงนอน เก้าอี้
เครื่องดื่ม	กาแฟ เหล้าไวน์ เบียร์
กีฬา	เทนนิส มวย แบดมินตัน
เสื้อผ้า	กระโปรงกางเกงขาสั้น ชุดสากล
ประเทศ	สหรัฐอเมริกา ออสเตรเลีย เยอรมัน แคนาดา

Exercise 10

15 April – 14 May
People looking for work will get some good news related to work. People out of work will have an opportunity of getting a new job. People who already have a job will have a long journey.

15 June to 14 July
People working in education will get good news form afar. Be careful of accidents in the home.

15 August – 14 September
You will get good news from afar to do with money. People who work for the government will have opportunities to travel frequently. Be careful of food in the middle of the month. You will get a present from afar.

15 October – 14 November
People who work in insurance will have the opportunity to work with a foreign company. People who work to do with the law will have more possible opportunities.
Be careful of things getting lost. You will be happier with people in your family than you were last month.

15 December – 14 January
People in the restaurant business will have to solve problems to do with other people. People who work in production or to do with children will receive new knowledge to do with their work. You must decide a question of love before the 30th.

15 February – 14 March
People working to do with second-hand cars will get good news from afar about a new job. Be careful of car accidents. People with a family (i.e. married) but no children will get some good news before the 20th.

Exercise 11 (examples)

ผม/ ฉันชอบเล่นหิมะ ไปเที่ยวน้ำตกสนุก ผม/ ฉันไม่ชอบดูตึกเก่า
ไปซื้อของที่ห้างน่าสนใจ
ชอบชายทะเลมากกว่าภูเขา
ผม/ ฉันสนใจดูนกแต่ไม่ชอบเดินในป่า
ชอบเล่นกีฬาที่ชายทะเล

Unit 13

Dialogue 1

She doesn't understand the words for 'dictionary', translate' and 'explain', and when Sùphachai says he's looking for the meaning of a word.

Exercise 1 (examples)

2 phôot dang dang nòi dâi: mái khá?
3 athíbai: èek nèung khráng dâi: mái khá?
4 sǎwn phaasǎa yêepùn hâi (chán) nòi dâi: mái khá?
5 khàp rót cháa cháa nòi dâi: mái khá?
6 plae hâi (chán) nòi dâi: mái khá?
7 bàwk èek nèung khráng dâi: mái khá?
8 láang rót rayo rayo nòi dâi: mái khá?

Dialogue 2

1 Please take off your shoes **2** Do not touch. 500 baht fine.

Exercise 2 (suggested answers)

1 chán khĭan tàe baang kham.
2 ùp-pàkawn née kháo chái tham kàp khâo:.
3 phŏm thài: rôop chŏei chŏei. mâi dâi jàp arai.
4 nák ráwng khon née róojàk phlayng yàang dio.
5 pâi: née àan wâa "hâam sòop bùrèe".
6 phaasăa angkrìt mee pràyòht phráw wâa lăi: prathâyt phôot phaasăa angkrìt.
7 chán sâwm rót ayng.

Exercise 3

1 (If you) you love wild animals (animals of the forest), don't hunt animals.
2 No photography.
3 No entry after 18.00. It is forbidden to bring pets in.
4 Please drive slowly.
5 Please don't feed the cats, thank you.
6 It is forbidden to go down and play with the water (or) fish.
7 Don't throw rubbish.
8 Please take off your shoes.
9 Do not wash your hands.

Dialogue 3

She was speeding, her tax is out of date and she was not wearing a seat belt.

Exercise 4

OFFICER:	. . . khăw doo bai khàp khèe nói khráp. bai khàp khèe mòt aayú láeo khráp. khun tâwng khăw bai khàp khèe mài khráp. khâa pràp nèung phan bàat khráp.
JOE:	phŏm jài: thêe sathăanee tamrùat dâi: mái khráp?
OFFICER:	dâi: khráp. tàe khun tâwng khĭan bàep fawm láeo kô fàak bai khàp khèe khráp.
JOE:	thài: àykasăan kàwn dâi: mái khráp?
OFFICER:	dâi: khráp.
JOE:	sèt láeo rĕuh khráp?
OFFICER:	khráp. chôhk dee khráp. dern thâang plàwtphai ná khráp.

Dialogue 4

Four times a month on holy days.

Exercise 5

(a) **1** thâa khun yàak khâo máhăawít-tháyaalai khun tâwng sàwp kàwn.
2 thâa khun yàak pai tàang prathâyt khun tâwng mee pháasáphawt.
3 thâa khun yàak chái khrêuang sák phâa khun tâwng àan khôo meuh kàwn.
4 thâa khun yàak dâi ngaan thêe dee khun tâwng phôot phaasăa angkrìt kèng.
5 thâa khun yàak châo rót khun tâwng fàak pháasáphawt.
6 thâa khun yàak hâi châo bâan khun tâwng tham khwaam sa-àat kàwn.
7 thâa khun yàak dern nai pàa khun tâwng ao yaa kan yung pai.
8 thâa khun yàak khăi: rót khun tâwng ao pai sâwm kàwn.

(b) **1** khâo máhăawít-tháyaalai mâi dâi: thâa mâi sàwp kàwn

Use the same pattern for other answers.

Exercise 6 (examples)

2 thâa mee waylaa ja săwn.
3 thâa sâwm rót sèt láeo ja pai sòng.
4 thâa mâi yâak plae dâi:.
5 thâa khun bàwk chêuh khăwng yaa ja séuh hâi.
6 thâa pen wàt hăi: láeo ja pai.
7 thâa Maalee maa phŏm ja bàwk.
8 thâa ngern phaw ja séuh.

Dialogue 5

Joe has a pain in his left shoulder.

Exercise 7

. . .

ANN: chán pùat lài khâ.
MASSEUSE: khâang năi khá?
ANN: khâang khwăa khâ.
MASSEUSE: dĭo chán ja nûat hâi khâ. khun châwp nûat nàk rĕuh bao khá?
ANN: châwp nûat bao khâ. nûat nàk kern pai jèp khâ.
MASSEUSE: bàep née jèp mái khá?
ANN: nûat nàk kwàa nêe nítnòi dâi: mái khá?
MASSEUSE: dâi: khâ. nûat lăng mái khá?
ANN: khâ. tàe mâi tâwng nûat khâw tháo kàp khâw meuh khâ.

Exercise 8

การท่องเที่ยว	tourism
ความนิยม	popularity
การแปล	translation
ความเป็นไปได้	possibility
การบัญชี	accounts
การเมือง	politics
พอใจ	satisfied
เสียใจ	sorry
ของปลอม	fake
นักกีฬา	athlete
นักข่าว	journalist
นักออกแบบแฟชั่น	fashion designer
ผู้ซื้อ	purchaser
ผู้เริ่มเรียน	beginner

Exercise 9

(a) 1 dress impolitely.
2 none, because it depends on the culture.
3 come and open stores in Thailand, take Thai people's money back to their own country.
4 none as I don't have any foreign friends.
5 don't really dress properly.
6 on the whole lose their temper easily.
7 not generous like Thais.
8 when shopping tend to bargain too much.

9 when drunk some people impolite.
10 some don't understand Thai culture.
11 some foreigners who live in Thailand complain a lot; if they're not satisfied why do they stay here?

(b) never sometimes often
1 don't sleep
2 don't want to meet people
3 headache on one side of the head
4 feel unhappy
5 feel tired all the time
6 feel like doing nothing all the time
7 frightened of many things
8 easily excited
9 worry about a lot of things
10 often in a bad mood
11 not well but don't go and see a doctor
12 you have problems with many things
13 smoke more than 5 cigarettes a day
14 drink more than 2 glasses of alcohol a day
15 don't exercise more than 2 hours a week
16 have more than 1 tablespoonful of sugar a day
17 eat meat almost every day or more than 5 times a week

Exercise 10

1 อากาศแย่ ฝนตกทุกวัน ไม่มีความสุข ไม่สบายสามวันแล้ว ไม่อยากพบแขกที่โรงแรม **2** เสียงดัง นอนไม่หลับ ปวดหัว อารมณ์ไม่ดี เป็นห่วงพ่อแม่
3 ร้อนมาก ออกกำลังกายทุกวันแต่รู้สึกเหนื่อย ทะเลลึกมากว่ายน้ำไม่ได้
4 ที่ร้านอาหารเขาห้ามสูบบุหรี่แต่มีคนสูบเยอะ
5 ในอาหารเขาใส่น้ำตาลเยอะเกินไป

Unit 14

Dialogue 1

It was a man who didn't speak Thai clearly. He said he would call back, she understood him to say something about an orange elephant.

Exercise 1

2 Kâeo thoh maa sìp èt mohng cháo.
3 Fáa thoh maa. ja thoh maa mài yen née.

4 khun tâwng thoh pai hăa châang thêe òo kìo kàp rót.
5 khun tâwng thoh pai hăa châang fai fáa bài: née.
6 mee khon thoh maa; chái thohrasàp meuh thĕuh; săi: mâi dee; kháo bàwk wâa arai mâi róo phráw wâa dâi yin mâi chát.
7 Lék thoh maa jàak tôo thohrasàp tàe ngern mòt kàwn bàwk kìo kàp rêuang arai.

Exercise 2 (examples)

2 châang thoh maa. rót sèt láeo. plìan bàet-ter-rêe láeo. mâi dâi bàwk wâa thâorài.
3 phôochai: thoh maa. kháo bàwk wâa jer khun mêua kheuhn née, ja thoh maa mài. phŏm thăam kháo wâa ber thohrasàp arai. kháo mâi dâi tàwp. mâi dâi bàwk wâa ja thoh kèe mohng.
4 Sùnee thoh maa. ja pai tàang prathâyt. ja mee ngaan líang phrûng née. mâi dâi bàwk wâa ja pai mêuarài.
5 kháo bàwk réu plào kìo kàp rêuang arai?
6 kháo bàwk réu plào wâa raakhaa thâorài / sâwm fai bràyk réu yang?
7 kháo bàwk chêuh réu plào? kháo bàwk réu plào wâa jer kan kèe mohng / jer kan trong năi / ja thoh maa kèe mohng?
8 kháo bàwk réu plào wâa ja pai năi / ja mee ngaan líang kèe mohng / thêe năi?

Dialogue 2

He confused the Thai Military Bank with the Krung Thai bank.

Exercise 3

2 chûey tham khwaam sa-àat bâan dâi: mái?
3 chûey thoh pai hăa aajaan nòi.
4 chûey séuh nangsĕuh phim hâi dûey.
5 chûey ao rót pai chék.
6 chûey jòt nóht wái thâa mee khon thoh maa.
7 chûey thoh pai phôo jàt kaan thanaakhaan bàwk wâa wan née phŏm pai pràchum mâi dâi:.
8 chûey nûat lài nòi.
9 chûey thài: àykasăan hâi dâi: mái?
10 chûey pai ráp bai khàp khèe thêe sathăanee tamrùat dâi: mái?

Exercise 4 (examples)

2 khun róo mái wâa ja maa mêuarài?
3 kháo bàwk réu plào wâa ja sòng arai maa?

4 kháo bàwk wâa dùan réu plào?
5 khun róo mái wâa tâwng séuh khăwng khwăn hâi khrai?
6 kháo bàwk wâa ja maa réu plào?
7 kháo bàwk wâa ja maa khon dio réu plào?

Exercise 5

GARY: thêe nêe mâi mee khrai chêuh née khráp. khun thoh phìt khráp . . .
hanloh . . .
Dùsìt mâi yòo khráp. khun thoh maa mài dâi: mái khráp?
. . .
pramaan nèung thûm khráp.
hanloh . . .
GARY: kamlang phôot khráp . . .
GARY: phŏm khăw hâi sòng maa lăng hâa mohng yen khráp.

Exercise 6

1	ต้องการ อยาก	(similar)
2	ไม่น่าเชื่อ เป็นไปไม่ได้	(similar)
3	โทรมาหา โทรไปหา	(contrasting)
4	โบราณ ใหม่	(contrasting)
5	ทำให้เสีย ซ่อม	(contrasting)
6	จบ เรียบร้อย หมด เสร็จ	(similar)

Exercise 7

1 (a) No. 3 'Teach a crocodile to swim' (b) No. 4 'Drinking alcohol then driving is dangerous and illegal' (c) No. 6 'To stop buying means to stop killing. Which are more poisonous – snakes or people?' (d) No. 1 'I will make today better than yesterday and tomorrow better than today.' (e) No. 7 'If in this world there were no credit cards' (f) No. 2 'Underground railway arrives in Thailand' (g) No. 5 'Nobody is like you because you are like nobody. Education for the future.'

2 Hello. Are you well? I miss you a lot. Since you went back I've had to work very hard – I haven't had a holiday. I've got my passport. Tomorrow I'll go to the British Embassy to ask for a visa. I thought I would go today but my photocopies weren't finished. I'll probably book my flight the day after tomorrow and I'll buy the ticket next week. I phoned the factory owner yesterday but he wasn't there. The secretary explained that regarding the toys there

are many different kinds. On Thursday I'll ask the company to send you some samples for you to choose those that you're interested in. The secretary asked me if you would transfer money into the company's account. I said I didn't know. I hope that you sold all the toys you bought in Bangkok and made a good profit. Please phone me tomorrow if you have time.

Exercise 8

1 ผมหวังว่าคุณสบายดี ผมโทรหาคุณเมื่อวานนี้แต่ไม่มีใครรับสาย
2 เมื่อวานนี้มีอุบัติเหตุรถชนต้นไม้แต่ไม่เป็นไร
3 ตอนนี้มีงานเยอะ คิดว่าจะได้งานใหม่
4 ผมเลิกสูบบุหรี่แล้ว ผมซื้อของขวัญให้คุณ อาทิตย์หน้าจะส่งไปให้คุณ
5 ผมยังไม่ทราบว่าจะโอนเงินให้บริษัทยังไง
6 ของเล่นที่ผมสั่งซื้อจากกรุงเทพฯ ยังขายไม่หมดแต่กำไรดี

Unit 15

Dialogue 1

She's lost her bank book, her younger sister has got a new job. He agrees to lend her 30,000 baht till next month.

Exercise 1

2 chán sĭa jai thêe sôi khaw khun hăi:. 3 khăwthôht thêe róbkuan. **4** khàwpkhun mâak thêe hâi yeuhm klâwng thài: rôop. **5** chán mâi châwp thêe khun rèrm sòop bùrèe èek láeo. **6** chán sĭa jai thêe khun mâi dâi maa ngaan líang. **7** khàwpkhun thêe ao dàwk mái maa hâi. **8** dee thêe khun mâi dâi khàp rót rayo.

Exercise 2 (examples)

2 khăw yeuhm ngern pàet mèuhn bàat dâi: mài? chán yàak séuh rót yon.
3 ... thohrasàp meuh thĕuh dâi: mài? chán tâwng thoh pai hăa phêuan.
4 ... khreem kan dàet dâi: mài? chán ja pai chai: thalay.
5 ... yaa kan yung dâi: mài? chán ja pai dern nai pàa.
6 ... thŭng meuh dâi: mài? aakàat năo:.
7 ... klâwng thài: rôop dâi: mài? chán ja thài: rôop muey thai.
8 ... kunjae bâan dâi: mài? chán tham kunjae chán hăi:.

Dialogue 2

The Thai national team beat Malaysia two nil.

Exercise 3 (examples)

1 kháo dohn tamrùat pràp.
2 kháo dohn măa kàt.
3 kháo dohn rót chon.
4 kháo dohn khon rái: khâa.
5 klâwng thài: rôop dohn khàmohi

Exercise 4

2 chán bàwk réu yang wâa kháo sàwp dâi:? **3** ... kháo dohn pràp hâa phan bàat? **4** ... kháo dohn tamrùat jàp? **5** ... kháo pen tháhăan? **6** ... phâw kháo tai:? **7** ... kháo dohn rót chon? **8** ... kháo dohn ngoo kàt?

Dialogue 3

1 She says she has to like it because, not having any education, she has no alternative – any other work would be hard and not pay as well.
2 It is not as hard as trying to sell noodles on your own.
3 She goes to work at 10 a.m. and finishes at midnight, but if a client comes at midnight she doesn't finish until 2 a.m. She only takes a day off if she is unwell or has business to do. She does not have a salary; if she has a client she earns 40 baht an hour; she normally works 2 or 4 hours a day; clients usually give a tip of 50 to 100 baht, sometimes more.
4 Most clients are well behaved; she likes ones who are polite and generous; she does not like those who complain or are stingy.
5 She has constant pains in her hands; she used to take medicine for it but it was bad for her stomach; the doctor told her injections were the only solution as her pains were linked to her job; too frequent injections could be harmful and he advised her not to go on working as a masseuse.

Exercise 5

(a) **1** ค่าโดยสาร **2** เพลงชาติ **3** เพื่อนบ้าน **4** ตู้ไปรษณีย์ **5** รถพยาบาล **6** เครื่องดนตรี **7** เครื่องพูดตอบ

(b) **1** b **2** f **3** g **4** h **5** i **6** c **7** e **8** a **9** d

Exercise 6

1 Her life as a model is fun: she gets to be with beautiful things and to know the world, travel and meet lots of people. She's glad she's a Thai model as they work together like a big family. If the car breaks down or you're not well you can always call your friends; this is the only place you can do that; but it's a profession that doesn't last long; you earn money easily but spend it easily.
2 She's an easy-going person and seeing a film she likes is enough to make her happy.
3 She has three fish she loves and that love her; she would like to keep cats and dogs but doesn't have the time.
4 She married when she was 21/22; she still had a child's ideas; she married her Thai boyfriend and had a child straightaway; but her husband was not sincere and she met a Frenchman.
5 She doesn't regret it; now her child is growing up and she is still young; if she had waited until she was 30 she might not have wanted children yet.
6 She knew him as a friend for seven years; he worked in Thailand on and off; he didn't know anyone in Bangkok.
7 They will stay here (in Thailand) for at least another two years; if her husband then wants to work abroad she will go too; but she expects they will return to live in Thailand; she has seen the world already and feels happiest and safest in Thailand.

Exercise 7

1 ชีวิตนักร้องสนุก
2 ได้เดินทางรู้จักโลก ได้เงินมากแต่ต้องจ่ายเงินมาก เป็นอาชีพที่มีระยะเวลาสั้น
3 เมื่อก่อนชอบเที่ยวกับเพื่อน ตั้งแต่แต่งงาน และมีลูกชอบอยู่กับครอบครัวมากกว่า
4 ไม่เสียใจเลย ฟังเพลงมีความสุขแล้ว
5 เลี้ยงหมาหนึ่งตัวกับแมวสามตัว
6 เขาอยากจะเป็นหมอถ้าเขาไม่ใช่นักร้อง
7 อยากไปอยู่ที่สหรัฐอเมริกาแต่เพื่อนทุกคนอยู่อังกฤษ

Thai–English glossary

A

aachêep	อาชีพ	profession, occupation
aahǎan	อาหาร	food
aahǎan cháo	อาหารเช้า	breakfast
aahǎan jay	อาหารเจ	vegetarian food
aahǎan klaang wan	อาหารกลางวัน	lunch
aahǎan thalay	อาหารทะเล	seafood
aahǎan yen	อาหารเย็น	evening meal
aajaan	อาจารย์	university or senior teacher
aakàat	อากาศ	weather, air
àan nangsěuh	อ่านหนังสือ	to read (a book)
àap náam	อาบน้ำ	to shower
aarom	อารมณ์	mood
àat ja	อาจจะ	maybe
aathít	อาทิตย์	week
aayú	อายุ	age
aayú mâak	อายุมาก	old
aayú nói	อายุน้อย	young
ae	แอร์	air-conditioning
àefríkaa	แอฟริกา	Africa
ai	ไอ	to cough
àmayríkaa	อเมริกา	America
ampher	อำเภอ	district
an	อัน	general classifier for things
an nǎi kô dâi:	อันไหนก็ได้	whichever, either, any one
ànaakhót	อนาคต	future
angkrìt	อังกฤษ	English, England
antarai:	อันตราย	dangerous
âo:	อ้าว	exclamation of surprise
ao maa	เอามา	to bring
ao pai	เอาไป	to take

aphártmáyn อพาร์ทเม้นท์ — apartment
arai อะไร — what
arai kô dâi: อะไรก็ได้ — anything
aròi อร่อย — delicious
athíbai: อธิบาย — to explain
àwk ออก — to go out, leave, to be able to
àwk kamlang kai: ออกกำลังกาย — to exercise
áwtsàtrelia ออสเตรเลีย — Australia
àykasǎan เอกสาร — document
ayng เอง — oneself, just, only
aysia เอเชีย — Asia

B

bâan บ้าน — house, home
baang บาง — thin
baang khráng บางครั้ง — sometimes
bàat บาท — baht, unit of Thai currency
bàep แบบ — sort, pattern, model
bàep fawm แบบฟอร์ม — form
bàet-ter-rêe แบตเตอรี่ — battery
bàetmintân แบดมินตัน — badminton
bai ใบ — classifier for drinking glasses, bags, pictures
bai khàp khèe ใบขับขี่ — driving licence
bai sèt ใบเสร็จ — receipt
banchee บัญชี — account
bao เบา — light, soft, gentle (e.g. of a weight, a noise)
bàt khraydìt บัตรเครดิต — credit card
bàw เบาะ — seat (of a car), cushion
bàwk บอก — to tell, say
bawn บอล — ball
bawrikaan บริการ — service
bawrisàt บริษัท — company
bawrisàt imphàwt eksáphàwt บริษัทอิมพอร์ตเอ็กสพอร์ต — import/export business
ber เบอร์ — number
ber thohrasàp เบอร์โทรศัพท์ — telephone number
bèua เบื่อ — to be bored
bia เบียร์ — beer
bin บิน — to fly
bohraan โบราณ — ancient, traditional

bòi บ่อย — often
bon บน — on
bòn บ่น — to complain
bràyk เบรค — brake
bùrèe บุหรี่ — cigarette

C

chaa ชา — tea
cháa ช้า — slow, late (not on time)
cháang ช้าง — elephant
châang ช่าง — skilled worker
châat ชาติ — life (i.e. incarnation), national
châi ใช่ — that's right
chái ใช้ — to use
châi mái ใช่ไหม — question tag: is that right?
chái waylaa ใช้เวลา — to take time
chai: thalay ชายทะเล — seaside
chàlàat ฉลาด — clever
chán ชั้น — floor, storey
chán ฉัน — I (female speaker)
chán bon ชั้นบน — upstairs
chán lâng ชั้นล่าง — downstairs
cháná ชนะ — beat, win
cháo เช้า — early in the morning
châo เช่า — hire
chao: ชาว — group of people
chao: khǎo ชาวเขา — hill tribes
chao: naa ชาวนา — farmer
chao: tàang prathâyt ชาวต่างประเทศ — foreigner
chát ชัด — clear, clearly
cháwn ช้อน — spoon
châwp ชอบ — to like
châwp mâak kwàa ชอบมากกว่า — to prefer
chèet ฉีด — to inject
cheewít ชีวิต — life
chék เช็ค — to check
chék bin เช็คบิล — bill (in a restaurant)
chék dern thaang เช็คเดินทาง — travellers' cheque
chern เชิญ — to invite
chêua เชื่อ — to believe

chêuh ชื่อ	name, to be called
chêuh lên ชื่อเล่น	nickname
chieng mài เชียงใหม่	Chiang Mai (city in northern Thailand)
chim ชิม	to taste
chin ชิน	to get used to
chín ชิ้น	piece
chŏei chŏei เฉยๆ	indifferent, so-so
chôhk โชค	luck
chom ชม	to admire
chon ชน	crash (into), run over
chûamohng ชั่วโมง	hour
chûang (waylaa) ช่วง(เวลา)	period of time
chûey ช่วย	to help, please
chút nawn ชุดนอน	pyjamas
chút săakon ชุดสากล	Western-style suit
chút wâi: náam ชุดว่ายน้ำ	swimsuit

D

daaraa ดารา	star, celebrity
dàet แดด	sunshine
dâi (dâi:) ได้	can, to be able to, possible, to get
dâi yin ได้ยิน	to hear (about)
dang ดัง	loud
dàwk mái ดอกไม้	flower
dawnlâa ดอลลาร์	dollar
dee ดี	good
dee jai ดีใจ	happy
dèk เด็ก	child
derm เดิม	the same as before
dern เดิน	to walk
dern lên เดินเล่น	to walk for pleasure
dern thaang เดินทาง	to travel
deuan เดือน	month
deuan kanyaa (yon) เดือนกันยายน	September
deuan karakádaa (khom) เดือนกรกฎาคม	July
deuan kumphaa (phan) เดือนกุมภาพันธ์	February
deuan maysăa (yon) เดือนเมษายน	April
deuan meenaa (khom) เดือนมีนาคม	March
deuan míthunaa (yon) เดือนมิถุนายน	June

deuan mókaraa (khom) เดือนมกราคม	January
deuan phréutsajikaa (yon) เดือนพฤศจิกายน	November
deuan phréutsaphaa (khom) เดือนพฤษภาคม	May
deuan sĭnghăa (khom) เดือนสิงหาคม	August
deuan thanwaa (khom) เดือนธันวาคม	December
deuan tulaa (khom) เดือนตุลาคม	October
dèuhm ดื่ม	to drink
dio เดียว	just one
dĭo เดี๋ยว	in a moment, soon
dio kan เดียวกัน	the same
ditsàkôh ดิสโก้	disco
dohn โดน	to hit against, marker of passive voice
doi ดอย	mountain
dontree ดนตรี	music
doo ดู	to see, watch, look at
doo mĕauan ดูเหมือน	to look like
dùan ด่วน	urgent
dûey ด้วย	also, as well
dûey kan ด้วยกัน	together
dûey tua ayng ด้วยตัวเอง	by oneself

E

èek อีก	more, in addition
èek láeo อีกแล้ว	again
eesăan อีสาน	Isan, the north-east part of Thailand
èuhn อื่น	another, other

F

fáa ฟ้า	sky
fàak ฝาก	to deposit
faam ฟาร์ม	farm (general)
faen แฟน	boyfriend, girlfriend, spouse
fai ไฟ	light
fai daeng ไฟแดง	traffic light
fai fáa ไฟฟ้า	electricity
fan ฟัน	tooth
fang ฟัง	to listen to
fàràng ฝรั่ง	Western, Westerner
fàràngsàyt ฝรั่งเศส	France

fernijêr เฟอร์นิเจอร์	furniture
fin ฝิ่น	opium
fŏn ฝน	rain
free ฟรี	free
fútbawn ฟุตบอล	football

H

hâa ห้า	five
hăa หา	to look for, visit, go and see
hâam ห้าม	to forbid
hâang ห้าง	department store
hàeng แห่ง	classifier for places
hâeng แห้ง	dry
hâi ให้	for, to give
hâi châo ให้เช่า	for rent
hâi yeuhm ให้ยืม	to lend
hăi: หาย	to recover, to be lost
hàk หัก	to break into two or more pieces
hanloh ฮัลโล	hello (used when answering the phone)
hawlaen ฮอล์แลนด์	Holland, Dutch
hăwm หอม	to smell good
hâwng ห้อง	room
hâwng aahăan ห้องอาหาร	dining room, restaurant
hâwng khrua ห้องครัว	kitchen
hâwng náam ห้องน้ำ	toilet, bathroom
hâwng nâng lên ห้องนั่งเล่น	sitting room
hâwng nawn ห้องนอน	bedroom
hâwng ráp khàek ห้องรับแขก	living room
hâwng tham ngaan ห้องทำงาน	study (room)
hâwngkong ฮ่องกง	Hong Kong
hĕn เห็น	to see
hĕn dûey เห็นด้วย	to agree with
himá หิมะ	snow
hĭu khâo: หิวข้าว	hungry
hĭu náam หิวน้ำ	thirsty
hòk หก	six
hŭa หัว	head

I

ìm อิ่ม	full (i.e. had enough to eat)

J

ja จะ	will (future time)
jàak จาก	from
jaan จาน	plate
jâeng แจ้ง	notify
jai ใจ	heart (used in noun compounds)
jai dee ใจดี	kind, good natured
jai ráwn ใจร้อน	hot-tempered
jai yen ใจเย็น	calm
jai yen yen ใจเย็นๆ	calm down!
jài: จ่าย	to pay, spend
jam จำ	to remember
jamkàt จำกัด	to limit
jampen จำเป็น	necessary
jang loei จังเลย	so, really
jangwàt จังหวัด	province
jâo khăwng เจ้าของ	owner
jàp จับ	to touch, arrest, catch, take hold of
jarákhây จระเข้	crocodile
jàt จัด	to arrange
jawng จอง	reserve
jàwt จอด	to stop, park (a car)
jeen จีน	China
jèp เจ็บ	to hurt, sore
jer เจอ	to meet, to find
jèt เจ็ด	seven
jing จริง	true
jing jai จริงใจ	sincere
jing jing จริงๆ	really
jon จน	until
jon จน	poor
jòp จบ	to finish (e.g. studies)
jòt nóht จดโน้ต	to take a message

K

kaafae กาแฟ	coffee
kaan bâan การบ้าน	homework
kaan banchee การบัญชี	accounts
kaan jàt kaan การจัดการ	management
kaan kháa khăi: การค้าขาย	trade
kaan meuang การเมือง	politics

kaan ngern การเงิน	finance
kaan sàwp การสอบ	test, exam
kaan sèuksăa การศึกษา	education
kaan tàlàat การตลาด	marketing
kaan thanaakhaan การธนาคาร	banking
kaang kayng กางเกง	trousers, slacks
kaang kayng khăa sân กางเกงขาสั้น	shorts
kàe แก่	old
kâe แก้	to correct, cure, mend
kâe khăi แก้ไข	to solve, correct, cure
kâeo แก้ว	glass
kài ไก่	chicken
kàlàmplee กะหล่ำปลี	cabbage
kamlang (yòo) กำลัง . . . (อยู่)	to be doing something
kamlang ja กำลังจะ	to be about to
kamphoochaa กัมพูชา	Cambodia
kamrai กำไร	profit
kào เก่า	old (of things)
kâo เก้า	nine
kâoêe เก้าอี้	chair
kaolĕe nĕua เกาหลีเหนือ	North Korea
kaolĕe tâi เกาหลีใต้	South Korea
kàp กับ	with, and
kàrúnaa กรุณา	please (formal, written)
kàt กัด	to bite
kàw เกาะ	island
kàwn ก่อน	first, before
kàwn thĕung ก่อนถึง	before
kàwn waylaa ก่อนเวลา	early (before time)
káwp กอล์ฟ	golf
kèe กี่	how many
kèe mohng กี่โมง	what time is it?
keelaa กีฬา	sport
kèng เก่ง	to be good at something
kèp เก็บ	to collect
kern pai เกินไป	too (excessive)
kèrt เกิด	to be born
kèrt khêun เกิดขึ้น	to happen
kèuap เกือบ	nearly
khâ, khá ค่ะ คะ	(polite particle used by women)

khâa ค่า	cost
khâa ฆ่า	to kill
khăa ขา	leg
khâa chái jài: ค่าใช้จ่าย	expenses
khâa châo ค่าเช่า	rent
khâa dohisăan ค่าโดยสาร	fare
khâam ข้าม	to cross
khâang bon ข้างบน	upstairs
khâang lâng ข้างล่าง	downstairs
khâang lăng ข้างหลัง	behind
khâang nâwk ข้างนอก	out, outside
khâarâachakaan ข้าราชการ	civil servant
khàat ขาด	broken, i.e. torn
khàat thun ขาดทุน	make a loss
khàek แขก	guest
khăen แขน	arm
khaenaadaa แคนาดา	Canada
khăeng raeng แข็งแรง	strong
khâep แคบ	narrow
khài ไข่	egg
khâi ไข้	fever
khăi: ขาย	to sell
kham คำ	word
khàmohi ขโมย	thief, to steal
khan คัน	classifier for vehicles
khànàat ขนาด	size
khâo เข้า	to enter
khào เข่า	knee
kháo เขา	he, she, they
khâo jai เข้าใจ	to understand
khào: ข่าว	news
khâo: ข้าว	rice
kháp คับ	tight
khàp ขับ	to drive
khaw คอ	throat, neck
khăw ขอ	to request
khâw meuh ข้อมือ	wrist
khâw tháo ข้อเท้า	ankle
khawmpiutêr คอมพิวเตอร์	computer
khăwn kàen ขอนแก่น	Khon Kaen, town in north-east Thailand
khawndoh คอนโด	condominium

khǎwng ของ	thing, marker of possession
khǎwng kào ของเก่า	antique
khǎwng khwǎn ของขวัญ	present
khǎwng lên ของเล่น	toy
khàwpkhun ขอบคุณ	thank you
khawràpchân คอรัปชั่น	corruption
khǎwthôht ขอโทษ	excuse me
khayà ขยะ	rubbish
khàyǎn ขยัน	hard-working
khèe ขี่	to ride
khêe kìat ขี้เกียจ	lazy, not feel like
khêe nǐo ขี้เหนียว	stingy
khěm khàt เข็มขัด	belt
kheuh คือ	to be
kheuhn คืน	to return, bring back
khêun ขึ้น	to go up
khǐan เขียน	to write
khít คิด	to think
khít phìt คิดผิด	to be wrong
khít thěung คิดถึง	to miss
khít wâa คิดว่า	to think that
khlab saenwít คลับแซนด์วิช	club sandwich
khlái (khlái) คล้าย	similar
khlát คลัทช์	clutch
khlawng คลอง	canal
khlíník คลินิค	clinic
khoei เคย	ever, used to
khon คน	person, people
khon dio คนเดียว	alone
khon khàp rót คนขับรถ	driver
khon lá yàang คนละอย่าง	in different ways
khon rái: คนร้าย	criminal
khong (ja) คงจะ	probably
khôo meuh คู่มือ	manual
khrai ใคร	who
khráng ครั้ง	time, occasion
khráp ครับ	(polite particle used by men)
khrâwpkhrua ครอบครัว	family
khreem kan dàet ครีมกันแดด	suntan lotion
khrêuang เครื่อง	machine, classifier for machines
khrêuang bin เครื่องบิน	plane

khrêuang dèuhm เครื่องดื่ม	drink (noun)
khrêuang dontree เครื่องดนตรี	musical instrument
khrêuang meuh เครื่องมือ	tool
khrêuang phôot tàwp เครื่องพูดตอบ	answering machine
khrêuang sák phâa เครื่องซักผ้า	washing machine
khrêung ครึ่ง	half
khroo ครู	schoolteacher
khùap ขวบ	year (when giving the age of a child up to 12)
khùat ขวด	bottle
khui คุย	to talk, chat
khun คุณ	you, polite title
khwǎa ขวา	right (-hand side)
khwaam dee ความดี	goodness
khwaam jam ความจำ	memory
khwaam jing ความจริง	truth
khwaam khít ความคิด	idea
khwaam khít hěn ความคิดเห็น	opinion
khwaam mǎi: ความหมาย	meaning
khwaam phìt ความผิด	mistake, fault
khwaam rák ความรัก	love
khwaam ráwn ความร้อน	heat
khwaam rayo ความเร็ว	speed
khwaam róo ความรู้	knowledge
khwaam sùk ความสุข	happiness
khwaam yàak róo yàak hěn ความอยากรู้อยากเห็น	curiosity
khwai: ควาย	water buffalo
kiloh, kilohkram กิโล, กิโลกรัม	kilogram
kilohmáyt กิโลเมตร	kilometre
kin กิน	eat
kin khâo: กินข้าว	to have something to eat
kìo kàp เกี่ยวกับ	concerning
klaang กลาง	middle, central
klai ไกล	far
klâi ใกล้	near
klàp กลับ	return
klàp rót กลับรถ	U-turn

klâwng thài: rôop กล้องถ่ายรูป	camera
klom กลม	round
klua กลัว	afraid
klûey กล้วย	banana
kô ก็	polite and linking particle
kô dâi: ก็ได้	all right
kô láeo kan ก็แล้วกัน	that's it
kòtmăi: กฎหมาย	law
kradàat กระดาษ	paper
kràdum กระดุม	button
krapăo กระเป๋า	suitcase, bag (not a plastic bag), pocket
krapăo sataang กระเป๋าสตางค์	wallet
kràpháw กระเพาะ	stomach
kraprohng กระโปรง	skirt
kròht โกรธ	angry
krungthâyp กรุงเทพฯ	Bangkok
kúk กุ๊ก	cook, chef
kûng กุ้ง	prawn
kunjae กุญแจ	key, lock
kwàa กว่า	more
kwâang กว้าง	wide
kwŭey tĭo ก๋วยเตี๋ยว	noodles

L

lá ละ	per
lâa ล่า	to hunt
láan ล้าน	one million
láang ล้าง	to wash
láe และ	and
láek plìan, plìan แลกเปลี่ยน	to exchange
láeo แล้ว	already
láeo jer kan แล้วเจอกัน	see you!
láeo kô แล้วก็	and, and then
láeo tàe แล้วแต่	it's up to (you), depending on
lài ไหล่	shoulder
lăi: หลาย	many
lăi: yàang หลายอย่าง	many things
lambàak ลำบาก	difficult (physically), troublesome
lăng หลัง	behind, after, back
lăng หลัง	classifier for houses
lăng jàak หลังจาก	after

lâo เหล้า	spirits, liquor
lao: ลาว	Laos
làw หล่อ	handsome
lawng ลอง	to try (i.e. test out)
laykhăanúkaan เลขานุการ	secretary
lék เล็ก	small
lên เล่น	to play
lêrk เลิก	to break up, end, quit, give up
lêuak เลือก	to choose
leuhm ลืม	forget
léuk ลึก	deep
líang เลี้ยง	to entertain to a meal, raise, keep (pets)
ling ลิง	monkey
lío เลี้ยว	turn
loei เลย	further, beyond, at all, right away, completely
lôhk โลก	world
lók ล็อค	lock
lom ลม	wind
long ลง	to go down
lŏng thaang หลงทาง	to get lost
lôok ลูก	child, i.e. offspring
lôok ลูก	classifier for round things
lôok chai: ลูกชาย	son
lôok kháa ลูกค้า	customer
lôok săo: ลูกสาว	daughter
lót ลด	to reduce
lŭam หลวม	loose
lûang ล่วง	to go beyond
lûang nâa ล่วงหน้า	in advance

M

maa มา	to come
măa หมา	dog
maa (following a verb) มา	to have done, have been doing
mâak มาก	very, very much
mâe แม่	mother
mâe náam แม่น้ำ	river
maeo แมว	cat
máhăawít-tháyaalai มหาวิทยาลัย	university

mái	ไม้	wood
mài	ใหม่	new, again
mâi	ไหม้	to burn
mái	ไหม	question marker
mâi	ไม่	negative marker
mâi . . . èek loei	ไม่อีกเลย	never again
mâi khôi	ไม่ค่อย	not really
măi: khwaam wâa	หมายความว่า	to mean
mâi mee arai	ไม่มีอะไร	nothing
mâi mee khrai	ไม่มีใคร	nobody
mâi nâa chêua	ไม่น่าเชื่อ	unbelievable
mâi . . . năi	ไม่ . . . ไหน	nowhere
mâi pen rai	ไม่เป็นไร	that's all right, it doesn't matter
mâi sabai:	ไม่สบาย	ill
mâi sabai: jai	ไม่สบายใจ	unhappy, uneasy, worried
mâi wâang	ไม่ว่าง	busy
mâi . . . thâorài	ไม่ . . . เท่าไหร่	not very . . .
măi: lâyk	หมายเลข	number
măi: lâyk thábian	หมายเลขทะเบียน	registration number
malaeng	แมลง	insect
malakaw	มะละกอ	papaya
mamûang	มะม่วง	mango
man	มัน	it
manao:	มะนาว	lime
mao	เมา	drunk
mâphráo:	มะพร้าว	coconut
mareuhn née	มะรืนนี้	day after tomorrow
măw	หมอ	doctor
măw doo	หมอดู	fortune teller
măw fan	หมอฟัน	dentist
măw nûat	หมอนวด	masseur/euse
mâyk	เมฆ	cloud
maynoo	เมนู	menu
máyt	เมตร	metre
mĕauan	เหมือน	like, the same as
mee	มี	to have, there is
mee arai rĕuh?	มีอะไรหรือ	is anything the matter?
mĕn	เหม็น	to smell bad
mêua cháo	เมื่อเช้า	this morning
mêua kàwn	เมื่อก่อน	in the past
mêua kêe née	เมื่อกี้นี้	a moment ago

mêua kheuhn née	เมื่อคืนนี้	last night
mêua waan née	เมื่อวานนี้	yesterday
mĕuan derm	เหมือนเดิม	same as before, same as usual
mĕuan kan	เหมือนกัน	also, the same, fairly
meuang	เมือง	country, town
meuang thai	เมืองไทย	Thailand
mêuarài	เมื่อไหร่	when
mêuarài kô dâi:	เมื่อไหร่ก็ได้	any time
meuh	มือ	hand
mèuhn	หมื่น	ten thousand
mŏo	หมู	pork, pig
mòo bâan	หมู่บ้าน	village
mòt	หมด	finished, used up
mòt aayú	หมดอายุ	expired, out of date
mùak	หมวก	hat, cap
muan	มวน	classifier for cigarettes
muey	มวย	boxing

N

ná	นะ	particle (softens warnings or invites agreement)
nâa	หน้า	next, in front of, season, face
naa	นา	farm, rice field
năa	หนา	thick
nâa bèua	น่าเบื่อ	boring, annoying
nâa doo	น่าดู	worth looking at
nâa kin	น่ากิน	tasty-looking
nâa kliat	น่าเกลียด	ugly, disgusting
nâa rák	น่ารัก	cute, lovable
nâa sĭa dai:	น่าเสียดาย	what a shame
nâa sŏnjai	น่าสนใจ	interesting
nâa thîo	น่าเที่ยว	worth visiting
nâa yòo	น่าอยู่	nice to live in
naalíkaa	นาฬิกา	watch, clock
náam	น้ำ	water
náam jai	น้ำใจ	generosity
náam khăeng	น้ำแข็ง	ice
náam manao:	น้ำมะนาว	lime juice
náam sôm	น้ำส้ม	orange juice
náam thûam	น้ำท่วม	flood
naan	นาน	a long time
naang bàep	นางแบบ	model

naathee นาที	minute
nâe (jai) แน่ใจ	to be sure
nâe nawn แน่นอน	certain, for sure
nai ใน	in, inside
năi ไหน	where, which
nàk หนัก	heavy, excessively
nák นัก	someone skilled in something
nák kaan meuang นักการเมือง	politician
nák kaan thôot นักการทูต	diplomat
nák ráwng นักร้อง	singer
nák rian นักเรียน	student (at school)
nák sèuksăa นักศึกษา	student (at college, university)
nák thâwng thîo นักท่องเที่ยว	tourist
nák thúrákìt นักธุรกิจ	businessman, woman
nám taan น้ำตาล	sugar
nám-man น้ำมัน	petrol
námnàk น้ำหนัก	weight
námtòk น้ำตก	waterfall
nán นั้น	that (adjective)
nân นั่น	that (pronoun)
nâng นั่ง	to sit, or to travel as a passenger
năng หนัง	leather
năng หนัง	film (movie)
nangsĕuh หนังสือ	book
nangsĕuh phim หนังสือพิมพ์	newspaper
năo: หนาว	cold
náptheŭh นับถือ	to believe in, respect
nát นัด	to make an appointment, arrange to meet
nâwk นอก	out, outside
nâwk jàak นอกจาก	apart from
nawn làp นอนหลับ	to sleep (literally lie and sleep)
náwng น้อง	younger person
náwng chai: น้องชาย	younger brother
náwng săo: น้องสาว	younger sister
nêe นี่	this (pronoun), these
née นี้	this (adjective), these
nĕua เหนือ	north

néua เนื้อ	beef, meat
nèuey เหนื่อย	tired
nèung หนึ่ง	one
nêung นึ่ง	steamed
nèung thûm หนึ่งทุ่ม	7 p.m.
ngaan งาน	work
ngaan líang งานเลี้ยง	party (celebration)
ngaan sòp งานศพ	funeral
ngaan tàeng ngaan งานแต่งงาน	wedding
ngâi: ง่าย	easy
ngăo เหงา	lonely
ngern เงิน	money, silver
ngern deuan เงินเดือน	salary
ngern sòt เงินสด	cash
ngîap เงียบ	quiet
ngoo งู	snake
ngûang (nawn) ง่วงนอน	sleepy
nísăi นิสัย	character, behaviour
nít dio นิดเดียว	just a little, few
nítnòi นิดหน่อย	a little
níyom นิยม	to appreciate, to be popular with
nóhn โน้น	that over there (adjective)
nôhn โน่น	over there (pronoun)
nóht โน้ต	message
nói น้อย	a little, few
nòi หน่อย	just a little
nók นก	bird
nom นม	milk
nûat นวด	massage
nûat phăen bohraan นวดแผนโบราณ	traditional massage

O

ôh-hóh โอโฮ้	exclamation showing you're surprised or impressed
ohkàat โอกาส	opportunity
ohn โอน	to transfer
òo อู่	car repair shop

P

pàa ป่า	forest
pàak-kaa ปากกา	pen

páep dio แป๊บเดียว	just a moment
pàet แปด	eight
pai ไป	to go
pai klàp ไปกลับ	return
pâi: ป้าย	sign, notice
pám nám-man ปั๊มน้ำมัน	petrol station
panhăa ปัญหา	problem
pee ปี	year
pen เป็น	to be, to be able to
pen arai? เป็นอะไร	what's the matter?
pen hùang เป็นห่วง	to worry
pen khâi wàt yài เป็นไข้หวัดใหญ่	to have the flu
pen pai mâi dâi: เป็นไปไม่ได้	that's not possible
pen wàt เป็นหวัด	to have a cold
pen yang-ngai bâang เป็นยังไงบ้าง	what's it like? how is it?
pèrt เปิด	to open, to be open
phaa พา	to take someone
phâa ผ้า	cloth
phâa fâi: ผ้าฝ้าย	cotton
phâa măi ผ้าไหม	silk
phâak ภาค	part (of a country)
phâak klaang ภาคกลาง	central Thailand
phàan ผ่าน	to pass
phaasăa ภาษา	language
pháasáphawt พาสปอร์ต	passport
phaasĕe ภาษี	tax
phaayú พายุ	storm
pháe แพ้	allergic to
pháe แพ้	lose
phàen แผ่น	classifier for CDs, paper and flat things
phaeng แพง	expensive
phák พัก	to stay somewhere temporarily
phàk ผัก	vegetable(s)
phákphàwn พักผ่อน	to rest
phamâa พม่า	Myanmar
phan พัน	thousand
phánák ngaan พนักงาน	person responsible for, staff
phánák ngaan khăi: พนักงานขาย	sales person

phánák ngaan sèrp พนักงานเสิร์ฟ	waiter (waitress)
phanráyaa ภรรยา	wife
phàt ผัด	fried
phàt thai ผัดไทย	fried noodles, Thai-style
phátlom พัดลม	fan
phaw พอ	enough
phâw พ่อ	father
phaw chái พอใช้	reasonable, fair
phaw dee พอดี	just right
phaw jai พอใจ	satisfied
phâw mâe พ่อแม่	parents
phăwm ผอม	thin (of people)
phayaabaan พยาบาล	nurse
phĕe ผี	ghost, spirit
phêe พี่	older person
phêe chai: พี่ชาย	elder brother
phêe náwng พี่น้อง	brothers and sisters
phêe săo: พี่สาว	elder sister
phêrng เพิ่ง	just now
phèt เผ็ด	spicy
phêuan เพื่อน	friend
phêuan bâan เพื่อนบ้าน	neighbour
phêuan rûam ngaan เพื่อนร่วมงาน	colleague
phim พิมพ์	to print
phíphít-thaphan พิพิธภัณฑ์	museum
phísàyt พิเศษ	special
phìt ผิด	wrong
phìt kòtmăi: ผิดกฎหมาย	illegal
phĭu ผิว	skin
phĭu mâi ผิวไหม้	sunburn
phlaasàtik พลาสติก	plastic
phlayng เพลง	song
phlayng châat เพลงชาติ	national anthem
phlìt ผลิต	to produce, manufacture
phŏm ผม	I (male speaker)
phŏm ผม	hair
phŏnlamái ผลไม้	fruit
phôo ผู้	person
phôo châo ผู้เช่า	tenant
phôo dohisăan ผู้โดยสาร	passenger

phôo jàt kaan ผู้จัดการ	manager
phôo râi: ผู้ร้าย	criminal
phôochai: ผู้ชาย	male, man, boy
phookhăo ภูเขา	mountain
phôot พูด	speak
phôot koh-hòk พูดโกหก	to tell a lie
phôot lên พูดเล่น	to joke
phôot mâak พูดมาก	to speak offensively
phôot phìt พูดผิด	to say something wrong
phôot thòok พูดถูก	to say something that is correct
phôoying ผู้หญิง	female, woman, girl
phóp พบ	to meet
phótjànaanú-krom พจนานุกรม	dictionary
phrá พระ	monk
phráw เพราะ	because of
phráw wâa เพราะว่า	because (followed by clause)
phráwm พร้อม	together with
phrík พริก	pepper
phrûng née พรุ่งนี้	tomorrow
pìak เปียก	wet
pìt ปิด	to close, closed
plaa ปลา	fish
plae แปล	to translate
plàek แปลก	strange
plào เปล่า	empty
plawm ปลอม	fake
plàwtphai ปลอดภัย	safe
plìan jai เปลี่ยนใจ	to change one's mind
plìan phâa เปลี่ยนผ้า	to change clothes
plòok ปลูก	to plant
pòk-kati ปกติ	usually
poo ปู	crab
pràchum ประชุม	meeting
praisànee ไปรษณีย์	post office
pràkan ประกัน	insurance
pramaan ประมาณ	about
pràp ปรับ	to fine
prathâyt ประเทศ	country
pràtoo ประตู	door, gate
pràyòht ประโยชน์	usefulness
prinyaatree ปริญญาตรี	first degree

prîo เปรี้ยว	sour
pùat ปวด	to ache

R

raakhaa ราคา	price
ráan ร้าน	shop
ráan aahăan ร้านอาหาร	restaurant
ráan khăi: nangsěuh ร้านขายหนังสือ	bookshop
ráan khăi: rawng tháo ร้านขายรองเท้า	shoe shop
ráan khăi: sêua phâa ร้านขายเสื้อผ้า	clothes shop
ráan khăi: yaa ร้านขายยา	pharmacy
ráan thài: rôop ร้านถ่ายรูป	photographer's (shop)
râek แรก	first
raeng แรง	strong, strength
rahàt praisànee รหัสไปรษณีย์	post code
râi ไร่	plantation, field
rái: ร้าย	bad, wicked
rák รัก	to love
ráo เรา	we
ráp รับ	to receive, take, get, fetch
ráp săi: รับสาย	to answer (the phone)
rát รัด	fasten, tighten
rát-thabaan รัฐบาล	government
raw รอ	to wait
rawàang ... kàp ระหว่าง ... กับ	between ... and
ráwang ระวัง	to be careful, to beware of
ràwk หรอก	particle used in contradicting or correcting
ráwn ร้อน	hot
ráwng hâi ร้องไห้	to cry
ráwng phlayng ร้องเพลง	to sing
rawng tháo รองเท้า	shoe
ráyá waylaa ระยะเวลา	period of time
rayo เร็ว	fast, early
rêep รีบ	to hurry
rèrm เริ่ม	to start, begin
réu plào รึเปล่า	question marker
réu yang รึยัง	question marker used to ask about something in the past
reua เรือ	boat

rêuang เรื่อง	affair, story, event
rĕuh หรือ	or
rĕuh หรือ	polite response, question marker
rîak wâa เรียกว่า	to be called
rian (nangsĕuh) เรียนหนังสือ	to study
rîaprói เรียบร้อย	well-mannered, tidy, properly finished
róbkuan รบกวน	to bother
rôhk โรค	disease, illness
rôhk àyd โรคเอดส์	Aids
rohng năng โรงหนัง	cinema
rohng ngaan โรงงาน	factory
rohng phayaabaan โรงพยาบาล	hospital
rohng raem โรงแรม	hotel
rohng rian โรงเรียน	school
rói ร้อย	hundred
róo รู้	to know
róo rêuang รู้เรื่อง	to understand what is going on
róojàk รู้จัก	to know, i.e. be familiar with
rôop รูป	picture
rôop thài: รูปถ่าย	photograph
róosèuk รู้สึก	to feel
rót รถ	vehicle, car
rót bát รถบัส	bus
rót dohisăan รถโดยสาร	passenger vehicle
rót dùan รถด่วน	express
rót fai รถไฟ	train
rót jàk-krayaan รถจักรยาน	bicycle
rót mawtersai รถมอเตอร์ไซค์	motorcycle
rót phayaabaan รถพยาบาล	ambulance
rót pikàp รถปิคอัพ	pick-up truck
rót săwng thăeo รถสองแถว	communal taxi
rót tháeksêe รถแท็กซี่	taxi
rót thua รถทัวร์	air-conditioned inter-city bus
rót túk túk รถตุ๊กๆ	three-wheel taxi
rót yon รถยนต์	car (formal word)
ruam รวม	mixed, including
ruey รวย	rich

S

sà สระ	to wash (hair)

sà wâi: náam สระว่ายน้ำ	swimming pool
sa-àat สะอาด	clean
săakon สากล	international
săam สาม	three
săam liam สามเหลี่ยม	triangle, triangular
săam yâek สามแยก	T-junction
săamee สามี	husband
sâap ทราบ	to know (formal)
sàatsanăa ศาสนา	religion
sàatsanăa phút ศาสนาพุทธ	Buddhism
sabai: สบาย	well, comfortable, to feel good
sabai: dee สบายดี	to be well
sabai: jai สบายใจ	happy
sàdùak สะดวก	convenient
săen แสน	one hundred thousand
sài ใส่	to put on, wear, put in
sài bàat ใส่บาตร	offer food to monks
săi: สาย	wire, rope, telephone line
săi: สาย	late (not on time)
sái: ซ้าย	left (-hand side)
sàk สัก	tattoo
sák ซัก	to wash (e.g. clothes)
sàk khrôo สักครู่	a moment (formal)
samăi kàwn สมัยก่อน	in the past
sămkhan สำคัญ	important
sămràp สำหรับ	for, as for
sàmùt banchee สมุดบัญชี	passbook (for bank account)
sân สั้น	short (of things)
sanăam สนาม	field
sanăam keelaa สนามกีฬา	sports field, stadium
sanăambin สนามบิน	airport
sàng สั่ง	to order
sanùk สนุก	enjoyable, fun
săo: สาว	young woman
sàp-parót สับปะรด	pineapple
sàphaan สะพาน	bridge
sàt สัตว์	animal
sataang สตางค์	satang (one-(hundredth of a baht)
sathăanee สถานี	station
sathăanee tamrùat สถานีตำรวจ	police station

sathǎanthôot สถานทูต	embassy
sawàtdee สวัสดี	hello, goodbye, any polite greeting
sâwm ซ่อม	to repair
sǎwn สอน	to teach
sǎwng สอง	two
sǎwng thûm สองทุ่ม	8 p.m.
sàwp สอบ	to take an exam
sàwp dâi: สอบได้	pass an exam
sàwp tòk สอบตก	fail an exam
sàyt-takìt เศรษฐกิจ	economy
sèe สี่	four
sèe ซิ	sure!, really
sěe สี	colour, paint
sěe chomphoo สีชมพู	pink
sěe daeng สีแดง	red
sěe dam สีดำ	black
see dee ซีดี	CD
sěe fáa สีฟ้า	light blue
sěe khǎo: สีขาว	white
sěe khǐo สีเขียว	green

sěe lěuang สีเหลือง	yellow
sèe lìam สี่เหลี่ยม	square
sěe mûang สีม่วง	purple
sěe nám ngern สีน้ำเงิน	blue
sěe nám taan สีน้ำตาล	brown
sěe sôm สีส้ม	orange (colour)
sěe thao สีเทา	grey
sèe yâek สี่แยก	intersection (of four roads)
sen เซ็น	to sign
sên เส้น	thread
sèt เสร็จ	to finish, to complete doing
sêua เสื้อ	shirt, blouse, coat
sêua phâa เสื้อผ้า	clothes
sêua yêuht เสื้อยืด	T-shirt
séuh ซื้อ	to buy
séuh khǎwng ซื้อของ	shopping
sèuksǎa ศึกษา	to study (at college or university)
sǐa เสีย	broken, damaged, spoiled, to die
sǐa dai: เสียดาย	it's a pity
sǐa jai เสียใจ	to be sorry

sǐang เสียง	noise
sǐang dang เสียงดัง	noisy
sìng khǎwng สิ่งของ	things
sìp สิบ	ten
sìp èt สิบเอ็ด	eleven
sìp láw สิบล้อ	lorry
sìp mohng cháo สิบโมงเช้า	10 a.m.
sohfaa โซฟา	sofa
soi ซอย	side street
sôi khaw สร้อยคอ	necklace
sòk-kapròk สกปรก	dirty
sôm ส้ม	orange
sòng ส่ง	to send, take someone
sǒngsǎi สงสัย	to suspect, guess, doubt
sǒnjai สนใจ	to be interested in
sǒon ศูนย์	zero
sǒong สูง	tall (of people or things)
sòop สูบ	to smoke
sòt สด	fresh
sǔan สวน	park, orchard, garden

sùan mâak ส่วนมาก	mostly, most of the time
sǔan sàt สวนสัตว์	zoo
sǔey สวย	pretty
sùk สุก	ripe, cooked
sùk-khàphâap สุขภาพ	health
sùphâap สุภาพ	polite
sùphâap rîapróì สุภาพเรียบร้อย	polite
sùt thái: สุดท้าย	last

T

taa ตา	eye
tàang ต่าง	different
tàang prathâyt ต่างประเทศ	abroad, foreign
tàe แต่	but, only
tàek แตก	to break, i.e. shatter
taeng moh แตงโม	watermelon
tàeng ngaan แต่งงาน	to get married, be married
tàeng tua แต่งตัว	to get dressed
tâi ใต้	south, under
tai: ตาย	to die
tàlàat ตลาด	market

tàlàwt	ตลอด	all the time
tàlàwt pai	ตลอดไป	from now on
tambon	ตำบล	sub-district
tamrùat	ตำรวจ	police
tamrùat trùat khon khâo meuang	ตำรวจตรวจคนเข้าเมือง	immigration police
tâng tàe	ตั้งแต่	since
tao	เตา	stove
tàt	ตัด	to cut
tàt sǐn jai	ตัดสินใจ	decide to
tàw	ต่อ	per, extension
tàw raakhaa	ต่อราคา	to bargain
tawn bàì:	ตอนบ่าย	afternoon (early)
tawn dèuk	ตอนดึก	late at night
tawn klaang kheuhn	ตอนกลางคืน	night
tawn née	ตอนนี้	now, at the moment
tawn râek	ตอนแรก	at first
tawn yen	ตอนเย็น	afternoon (late)
tâwng	ต้อง	must, should
tâwngkaan	ต้องการ	to want (formal)
tàwp	ตอบ	to answer
tee nèung	ตีหนึ่ง	1 a.m.
tem	เต็ม	full
tên ram	เต้นรำ	to dance
tèuhn	ตื่น	wake up (of oneself)
tèuhn tên	ตื่นเต้น	excited
tèuk	ตึก	building
thâa	ถ้า	if
thâa yang ngán	ถ้ายังงั้น	in that case
thǎam	ถาม	to ask
thaan	ทาน	to eat (formal)
thaang	ทาง	way
thaang lèuak	ทางเลือก	alternative
tháe	แท้	genuine
thaen	แทน	replace, substitute
thǎeo	แถว	area, row
tháhǎan	ทหาร	soldier, military
thai	ไทย	Thai
thàì: àykasǎan	ถ่ายเอกสาร	to photocopy
thàì: rôop	ถ่ายรูป	take photographs

thaláw kan	ทะเลาะกัน	to argue
thalay	ทะเล	sea
tham	ทำ	to do
tham bun	ทำบุญ	to make merit
tham hâi	ทำให้	to make something happen
tham hâi sǐa	ทำให้เสีย	to break
tham hǎi:	ทำหาย	to lose
tham kàp khâo:	ทำกับข้าว	to cook (literally 'do food')
tham khwaam sa-àat	ทำความสะอาด	to clean
tham ngaan	ทำงาน	to work
tham phìt	ทำผิด	to make a mistake
tham-madaa	ธรรมดา	ordinary, usually
tham-mai	ทำไม	why
than	ทัน	to be in time
thanaakhaan	ธนาคาร	bank
tháng	ถัง	fuel tank
tháng	ทั้ง	all, both
tháng mòt	ทั้งหมด	altogether
thanǒn	ถนน	street
tháo	เท้า	foot
thâo kan	เท่ากัน	equal, exactly the same
thâonán	เท่านั้น	only
thâorài	เท่าไหร่	how much
thawn	ทอน	to give change
thǎwn	ถอน	to withdraw
thawng	ทอง	gold
tháwng	ท้อง	stomach
tháwng sǐa	ท้องเสีย	to have diarrhoea
thàwt	ถอด	to take off
thâwt	ทอด	deep fried
thayn-nít	เทนนิส	tennis
thêe	ที่	who, which
thêe	ที่	classifier for orders, places, seats
thêe	ที่	at, in
thêe láeo	ที่แล้ว	ago, last
thee lǎng	ทีหลัง	afterwards, later
thêe nǎi	ที่ไหน	where
thêe nǎi kô dâi:	ที่ไหนก็ได้	anywhere
thêe nêe	ที่นี่	here

thêe sùt ที่สุด — most
thêe tham ngaan ที่ทำงาน — office, place of work
thee wee ทีวี — television
thêe yòo ที่อยู่ — address
théem ทีม — team
thěuh ถือ — to carry
thěung ถึง — to arrive, reach, until
thîang (wan) เที่ยง (วัน) — midday
thîang kheuhn เที่ยงคืน — midnight
thíng ทิ้ง — to throw away
thîo เที่ยว — to go somewhere for pleasure
thîo bin เที่ยวบิน — flight
thîo dio เที่ยวเดียว — one-way (ticket)
thíp ทิป — tip
thoh โทร — to telephone
thoh klàp โทรกลับ — to call back, return a call
thoh maa hǎa โทรมาหา — to phone (incoming)
thoh pai hǎa โทรไปหา — to phone (outgoing)
thoh phìt โทรผิด — call the wrong number
thohrasàp โทรศัพท์ — telephone
thohrasàp meuh thěuh โทรศัพท์มือถือ — mobile phone
thòok ถูก — cheap
thòok ถูก — marker of passive voice
thòok tâwng ถูกต้อง — correct, proper
thûa ทั่ว — whole
thûey ถ้วย — cup
thúk ทุก — every
thúk thêe ทุกที่ — everywhere
thúk yàang ทุกอย่าง — everything
thǔng ถุง — sack, plastic bag
thǔng meuh ถุงมือ — glove
thǔng tháo ถุงเท้า — sock
thúrá ธุระ — business
tîa เตี้ย — short (of people)
tiang (nawn) เตียง(นอน) — bed
tìt ติด — stick, get stuck be addicted to, to catch a disease
tìt (kàp) ติดกับ — to be next to
tìt tàw ติดต่อ — to contact
tó โต๊ะ — table

toh โต — grown up
tòk ตก — to fall from something
tòk jai ตกใจ — to be startled
tòk rót ตกรถ — to miss a bus, train
tôm yam ต้มยำ — spicy soup
tônmái ต้นไม้ — tree
tôo ตู้ — cupboard
tôo praisànee ตู้ไปรษณีย์ — postbox
tôo thohrasàp ตู้โทรศัพท์ — phone box
tôo yen ตู้เย็น — fridge
trong khâam ตรงข้าม — opposite
trong nǎi ตรงไหน — where exactly
trong pai ตรงไป — straight ahead
trong waylaa ตรงเวลา — on time
trùat ตรวจ — to check, examine
tua ตัว — classifier for furniture, clothes, animals
tǔa ตั๋ว — ticket
tua yàang ตัวอย่าง — sample

U

ùbàt hàyt อุบัติเหตุ — accident
ùp-pàkawn อุปกรณ์ — equipment, utensil
ûwan อ้วน — fat

W

wǎan หวาน — sweet
waang วาง — to put down
wâang ว่าง — free, not occupied, not busy, empty
wâang ngaan ว่างงาน — unemployed
waang ngern mátjam วางเงินมัดจำ — to leave a deposit
wâen แว่น — glasses
wǎen แหวน — ring
wâen kan dàet แว่นกันแดด — sunglasses
wâen taa แว่นตา — glasses, spectacles
wái ไว้ — to put away, put in place, store
wǎi ไหว — to be able to (normally used in the negative)
wâi phrá ไหว้พระ — say prayers
wâi: náam ว่ายน้ำ — to swim
wairûn วัยรุ่น — teenager
wan วัน — day

wan aathít วันอาทิตย์	Sunday
wan angkhaan วันอังคาร	Tuesday
wan jan วันจันทร์	Monday
wan kèrt วันเกิด	birthday
wan née วันนี้	today
wan pháréuhàt วันพฤหัสฯ	Thursday
wan phrá วันพระ	holy day
wan phút วันพุธ	Wednesday
wan sǎo วันเสาร์	Saturday
wan sùk วันศุกร์	Friday
wan yùt วันหยุด	holiday
wǎng หวัง	to hope
wǎng wâa yang-ngán หวังว่ายังงั้น	I hope so
wát วัด	Buddhist temple
wát-tánátham วัฒนธรรม	culture
waylaa เวลา	time
wee dee oh วีดีโอ	video
weesâa วีซ่า	visa
wíchaa วิชา	subject
wîng วิ่ง	to run
wít-tháyaalai วิทยาลัย	college
wíu วิว	view

Y

yaa ยา	medicine
yàa อย่า	don't
yaa kan yung ยากันยุง	mosquito repellent
yaa sàyptìt ยาเสพติด	drugs
yaa sòop ยาสูบ	tobacco
yàak อยาก	to want
yâak ยาก	difficult
yàak róo yàak hěn อยากรู้อยากเห็น	to be curious
yaam ยาม	guard
yàang อย่าง	thing, kind, type
yâang ย่าง	barbecued
yàang dio อย่างเดียว	only
yàang nói อย่างน้อย	at least
yàangrai อย่างไร	how, what (formal)
yâe แย่	terrible
yâek แยก	to separate
yài ใหญ่	large
yam ยำ	spicy salad

yang ยัง	still
yang mâi ยังไม่	not yet
yang-ngai ยังไง	how
yao: ยาว	long
yêehâw ยี่ห้อ	make
yêepùn ญี่ปุ่น	Japan
yen เย็น	cool
yép เย็บ	to sew
yér เยอะ	a lot
yer-raman เยอรมัน	Germany
yeuhm ยืม	to borrow
yǐng หญิง	female
yòo อยู่	to be somewhere, stay, live
yòo (following a verb) อยู่	is doing something
yung ยุง	mosquito
yûng ยุ่ง	difficult, complicated
yùt หยุด	to stop

English–Thai glossary

A

about	**pramaan**	ประมาณ
about to	**kamlang ja**	กำลังจะ
abroad	**tàang prathâyt**	ต่างประเทศ
accident	**ùbàt hàyt**	อุบัติเหตุ
account	**banchee**	บัญชี
ache, to	**pùat**	ปวด
address	**thêe yòo**	ที่อยู่
admire, to	**chom**	ชม
advance, in	**lûang nâa**	ล่วงหน้า
afraid	**klua**	กลัว
after	**lăng (jàak)**	หลัง(จาก)
afternoon (early)	**tawn bài:**	ตอนบ่าย
afternoon (late)	**tawn yen**	ตอนเย็น
afterwards	**thee lăng**	ทีหลัง
again	**èek láeo, mài**	อีกแล้ว, ใหม่
age	**aayú**	อายุ
ago	**thêe láeo**	ที่แล้ว
agree, to	**hĕn dûey**	เห็นด้วย
Aids	**rôhk àyd**	โรคเอดส์
air	**aakàat**	อากาศ
air-conditioning	**ae**	แอร์
airport	**sanăambin**	สนามบิน
all	**tháng**	ทั้ง
allergic to	**pháe**	แพ้
alone	**khon dio**	คนเดียว
all right	**kô dâi:**	ก็ได้
already	**láeo**	แล้ว
also	**dûey**	ด้วย
altogether	**tháng mòt**	ทั้งหมด
America	**àmayríkaa**	อเมริกา
ancient	**bohraan**	โบราณ

and	**láe**	และ
and then	**láeo kô**	แล้วก็
angry	**kròht**	โกรธ
animal	**sàt**	สัตว์
ankle	**khâw tháo**	ข้อเท้า
annoying	**nâa bèua**	น่าเบื่อ
answer, to	**tàwp**	ตอบ
answer the phone, to	**ráp săi:**	รับสาย
anybody	**khrai kô dâi:**	ใครก็ได้
anything	**arai kô dâi:**	อะไรก็ได้
any time	**mêuarài kô dâi:**	เมื่อไหร่ก็ได้
anywhere	**thêe năi kô dâi:**	ที่ไหนก็ได้
April	**deuan maysăa(yon)**	เดือนเมษายน
area	**thăeo**	แถว
argue, to	**tháláw kan**	ทะเลาะกัน
arm	**khăen**	แขน
arrange, to	**jàt**	จัด
arrest, to	**jàp**	จับ
arrive, to	**thĕung**	ถึง
as for	**sămràp**	สำหรับ
Asia	**aysia**	เอเชีย
ask, to	**thăam**	ถาม
at	**thêe**	ที่
at least	**yàang nói**	อย่างน้อย
August	**deuan sĭnghăa(khom)**	เดือนสิงหาคม

B

bag	**thŭng, krapăo**	ถุง, กระเป๋า
banana	**klûey**	กล้วย
Bangkok	**krungthâyp**	กรุงเทพฯ
bank	**thanaakhaan**	ธนาคาร
barbecued	**yâang**	ย่าง
bargain, to	**tàw raakhaa**	ต่อราคา
bathroom	**hâwng náam**	ห้องน้ำ
be, to	**pen, kheuh**	เป็น, คือ
be able, to	**dâi:, pen**	ได้, เป็น
be somewhere, to	**yòo**	อยู่
because (of)	**phráw (wâa)**	เพราะ(ว่า)
bed	**tiang (nawn)**	เตียง(นอน)
bedroom	**hâwng nawn**	ห้องนอน
beef	**néua**	เนื้อ
beer	**bia**	เบียร์

before	**kàwn (thěung)**	ก่อนถึง
before	**kàwn**	ก่อน
begin, to	**rèrm**	เริ่ม
behind	**khâang lăng**	ข้างหลัง
believe, to	**chêua**	เชื่อ
believe in, to	**nápthěuh**	นับถือ
belt	**khěm khàt**	เข็มขัด
between ... and	**rawàang ... kàp**	ระหว่าง ... กับ
beware of	**ráwang**	ระวัง
beyond	**loei**	เลย
bicycle	**rót jàk-krayaan**	รถจักรยาน
bill (in a restaurant)	**chék bin**	เช็คบิล
bird	**nók**	นก
birthday	**wan kèrt**	วันเกิด
bite, to	**kàt**	กัด
black	**sěe dam**	สีดำ
blouse	**sêua**	เสื้อ
blue (dark)	**sěe nám ngern**	สีน้ำเงิน
blue (light)	**sěe fáa**	สีฟ้า
boat	**reua**	เรือ
book	**nangsěuh**	หนังสือ

bookshop	**ráan khăi: nangsěuh**	ร้านขายหนังสือ
bored, to be	**bèua**	เบื่อ
boring	**nâa bèua**	น่าเบื่อ
born, to be	**kèrt**	เกิด
borrow, to	**yeuhm**	ยืม
bother, to	**róbkuan**	รบกวน
bottle	**khùat**	ขวด
boxing	**muey**	มวย
boy	**phôochai:**	ผู้ชาย
boyfriend	**faen**	แฟน
break, to	**hàk, tàek**	หัก, แตก
break something, to	**tham hâi sĭa**	ทำให้เสีย
breakfast	**aahăan cháo**	อาหารเช้า
bridge	**sàphaan**	สะพาน
bring, to	**ao maa**	เอามา
bring back, to	**kheuhn**	คืน
broken	**sĭa**	เสีย
brothers and sisters	**phêe náwng**	พี่น้อง
brown	**sěe nám taan**	สีน้ำตาล
Buddhism	**sàatsanăa phút**	ศาสนาพุทธ

building	**tèuk**	ตึก
burn, to	**mâi**	ไหม้
bus	**rót bát**	รถบัส
business	**thúrá**	ธุระ
businessman, -woman	**nák thúrákìt**	นักธุรกิจ
busy	**mâi wâang**	ไม่ว่าง
but	**tàe**	แต่
buy, to	**séuh**	ซื้อ

C

called, to be	**rîak wâa**	เรียกว่า
calm	**jai yen**	ใจเย็น
camera	**klâwng thài: rôop**	กล้องถ่ายรูป
can	**dâi:, pen**	ได้, เป็น
canal	**khlawng**	คลอง
car	**rót, rót yon**	รถ รถยนต์
car repair shop	**òo**	อู่
careful, to be	**ráwang**	ระวัง
carry, to	**thěuh**	ถือ
cash	**ngern sòt**	เงินสด
cat	**maeo**	แมว

celebrity	**daaraa**	ดารา
certain	**nâe nawn**	แน่นอน
chair	**kâoêe**	เก้าอี้
change, to	**láek plìan, plìan**	แลกเปลี่ยน
change clothes, to	**plìan phâa**	เปลี่ยนผ้า
change one's mind, to	**plìan jai**	เปลี่ยนใจ
character	**nísăi**	นิสัย
cheap	**thòok**	ถูก
check, to	**chék, trùat**	เช็ค, ตรวจ
chef	**kúk**	กุ๊ก
Chiang Mai	**chieng mài**	เชียงใหม่
chicken	**kài**	ไก่
child	**dèk**	เด็ก
child, i.e. offspring	**lôok**	ลูก
China, Chinese	**jeen**	จีน
choose, to	**lêuak**	เลือก
cigarette	**bùrèe**	บุหรี่
cinema	**rohng năng**	โรงหนัง
civil servant	**khâarâachakaan**	ข้าราชการ
clean	**sa-àat**	สะอาด

clean, to	**tham khwaam sa-àat**	ทำความสะอาด
clear	**chát**	ชัด
clever	**chàlàat**	ฉลาด
close, to	**pìt**	ปิด
cloth	**phâa**	ผ้า
clothes	**sêua phâa**	เสื้อผ้า
clothes shop	**ráan khăi: sêua phâa**	ร้านขายเสื้อผ้า
cloud	**mâyk**	เมฆ
coat	**sêua**	เสื้อ
coconut	**mâphráo:**	มะพร้าว
coffee	**kaafae**	กาแฟ
cold	**năo:**	หนาว
cold, to have a	**pen wàt**	เป็นหวัด
collect, to	**kèp**	เก็บ
colour	**sěe**	สี
come, to	**maa**	มา
company	**bawrisàt**	บริษัท
complain, to	**bòn**	บ่น
contact, to	**tìt tàw**	ติดต่อ
convenient	**sàdùak**	สะดวก
cook, to	**tham kàp khâo:**	ทำกับข้าว
cooked	**sùk**	สุก
cool	**yen**	เย็น
correct	**thòok (tâwng)**	ถูก(ต้อง)
cost	**khâa**	ค่า
cotton	**phâa fâi:**	ผ้าฝ้าย
cough, to	**ai**	ไอ
country	**meuang, prathâyt**	เมือง, ประเทศ
crab	**poo**	ปู
crash	**chon**	ชน
credit card	**bàt khraydìt**	บัตรเครดิต
criminal	**khon rái:**	คนร้าย
crocodile	**jarákhây**	จระเข้
cross, to	**khâam**	ข้าม
cry, to	**ráwng hâi**	ร้องไห้
cup	**thûey**	ถ้วย
cupboard	**tôo**	ตู้
curious, to be	**yàak róo yàak hĕn**	อยากรู้อยากเห็น
customer	**lôok kháa**	ลูกค้า
cut, to	**tàt**	ตัด
cute	**nâa rák**	น่ารัก

D

dance, to	**tên ram**	เต้นรำ
dangerous	**antarai:**	อันตราย
daughter	**lôok săo:**	ลูกสาว
day	**wan**	วัน
day after tomorrow	**mareuhn née**	มะรืนนี้
December	**deuan thanwaa(khom)**	เดือนธันวาคม
decide, to	**tàt sĭn jai**	ตัดสินใจ
deep	**léuk**	ลึก
deep fried	**thâwt**	ทอด
degree	**prinyaatree**	ปริญญาตรี
delicious	**aròi**	อร่อย
dentist	**măw fan**	หมอฟัน
department store	**hâang**	ห้าง
deposit, to	**fàak**	ฝาก
diarrhoea, to have	**tháwng sĭa**	ท้องเสีย
dictionary	**phótjànaanúkrom**	พจนานุกรม
die, to	**tai:**	ตาย
different	**tàang**	ต่าง
difficult	**yâak, lambàak, yûng**	ยาก, ลำบาก, ยุ่ง
dirty	**sòk-kapròk**	สกปรก
disease	**rôhk**	โรค
disgusting	**nâa klìat**	น่าเกลียด
do, to	**tham**	ทำ
doctor	**măw**	หมอ
document	**àykasăan**	เอกสาร
dog	**măa**	หมา
dollar	**dawnlâa**	ดอลลาร์
door	**pràtoo**	ประตู
downstairs	**khâang lâng, chán lâng**	ข้างล่าง ชั้นล่าง
dress, to	**tàeng tua**	แต่งตัว
drink (noun)	**khrêuang dèuhm**	เครื่องดื่ม
drink, to	**dèuhm**	ดื่ม
drive, to	**khàp**	ขับ
driver	**khon khàp rót**	คนขับรถ
driving licence	**bai khàp khèe**	ใบขับขี่
drugs	**yaa sàyptìt**	ยาเสพติด
drunk	**mao**	เมา
dry	**hâeng**	แห้ง

E

early (before time)	**kàwn waylaa**	ก่อนเวลา
early (so soon)	**rayo**	เร็ว
early in the morning	**cháo**	เช้า
easy	**ngâi:**	ง่าย
eat, to	**kin (khâo)**	กิน(ข้าว)
egg	**khài**	ไข่
eight	**pàet**	แปด
elder brother	**phêe chai:**	พี่ชาย
elder sister	**phêe são:**	พี่สาว
electricity	**fai fáa**	ไฟฟ้า
elephant	**cháang**	ช้าง
eleven	**sìp èt**	สิบเอ็ด
embassy	**sathăanthôot**	สถานทูต
empty	**plào**	เปล่า
England, English	**angkrìt**	อังกฤษ
enjoyable	**sanùk**	สนุก
enough	**phaw**	พอ
enter, to	**khâo**	เข้า
equal	**thâo kan**	เท่ากัน
evening meal	**aahăan yen**	อาหารเย็น
every	**thúk**	ทุก
everything	**thúk yàang**	ทุกอย่าง
everywhere	**thúk thêe**	ทุกที่
exam, to take an	**sàwp**	สอบ
exchange, to	**láek, láek plìan**	แลก, แลกเปลี่ยน
excited	**tèuhn tên**	ตื่นเต้น
excuse me	**khăwthôht**	ขอโทษ
exercise, to	**àwk kamlang kai:**	ออกกำลังกาย
expenses	**khâa chái jài:**	ค่าใช้จ่าย
expensive	**phaeng**	แพง
expired	**mòt aayú**	หมดอายุ
explain, to	**athíbai:**	อธิบาย
express	**rót dùan**	รถด่วน
extension	**tàw**	ต่อ
eye	**taa**	ตา

F

face	**nâa**	หน้า
factory	**rohng ngaan**	โรงงาน
fail an exam	**sàwp tòk**	สอบตก

fall from something, to	**tòk**	ตก
family	**khrâwpkhrua**	ครอบครัว
fan	**phátlom**	พัดลม
far	**klai**	ไกล
farmer	**chao: naa**	ชาวนา
fast	**rayo**	เร็ว
fasten	**rát**	รัด
fat	**ûwan**	อ้วน
father	**phâw**	พ่อ
February	**deuan kumphaa(phan)**	เดือนกุมภาพันธ์
feel, to	**róosèuk**	รู้สึก
fetch, to	**ráp**	รับ
fever	**khâi**	ไข้
field	**sanăam**	สนาม
film (movie)	**năng**	หนัง
find, to	**jer**	เจอ
fine, to	**pràp**	ปรับ
finish, to	**sèt**	เสร็จ
finish, to (e.g. studies)	**jòp**	จบ
finished	**mòt**	หมด
first	**râek**	แรก
first, at	**tawn râek**	ตอนแรก
fish	**plaa**	ปลา
five	**hâa**	ห้า
flight	**thîo bin**	เที่ยวบิน
flood	**náam thûam**	น้ำท่วม
flower	**dàwk mái**	ดอกไม้
flu, to have	**pen khâi wàt yài**	เป็นไข้หวัดใหญ่
fly, to	**bin**	บิน
food	**aahăan, kàp khâo:**	อาหาร, กับข้าว
foot	**tháo**	เท้า
for	**hâi**	ให้
forbid, to	**hâam**	ห้าม
foreign	**tàang prathâyt**	ต่างประเทศ
foreigner	**chao: tàang prathâyt**	ชาวต่างประเทศ
forest	**pàa**	ป่า
forget	**leuhm**	ลืม
form	**bàep fawm**	แบบฟอร์ม
four	**sèe**	สี่
free (not busy)	**wâang**	ว่าง

fresh **sòt** สด

Friday **wan sùk** วันศุกร์

fridge **tôo yen** ตู้เย็น

fried **phàt** ผัด

friend **phêuan** เพื่อน

from **jàak** จาก

fruit **phŏnlamái** ผลไม้

full **tem** เต็ม

full (i.e. had enough to eat) **ìm** อิ่ม

fun **sanùk** สนุก

G

garden **sŭan** สวน

gate **pràtoo** ประตู

generous **mee náam jai** น้ำใจ

get, to **dâi** ได้

get stuck **tìt** ติด

ghost **phěe** ผี

girl **phôoyĭng** ผู้หญิง

girlfriend **faen** แฟน

give, to **hâi** ให้

give change, to **thawn** ทอน

glass **kâeo** แก้ว

glasses **wâen taa** แว่นตา

glove **thŭng meuh** ถุงมือ

go, to **pai** ไป

go down, to **long** ลง

go out, to **àwk** ออก

go somewhere for pleasure, to **(pai) thîo** เที่ยว

go up, to **khêun** ขึ้น

gold **thawng** ทอง

good **dee** ดี

good at something **kèng** เก่ง

goodbye **sawàtdee** สวัสดี

good-looking **làw** หล่อ

government **rát-thabaan** รัฐบาล

green **sěe khĭo** สีเขียว

grey **sěe thao** สีเทา

grown up **toh** โต

guard **yaam** ยาม

guest **khàek** แขก

H

hair **phŏm** ผม

half **khrêung** ครึ่ง

hand **meuh** มือ

happen, to **kért khêun** เกิดขึ้น

happy **dee jai, sabai: jai, mee khwaam sùk** ดีใจ, สบายใจ, มีความสุข

hard-working **khàyăn** ขยัน

hat **mùak** หมวก

have, to **mee** มี

he **kháo** เขา

head **hŭa** หัว

health **sùk-khàphâap** สุขภาพ

hear (about), to **dâi yin** ได้ยิน

heavy **nàk** หนัก

hello **sawàtdee** สวัสดี

help, to **chûey** ช่วย

here **thêe nêe** ที่นี่

hill tribes **chao: khăo** ชาวเขา

hire **châo** เช่า

holiday **wan yùt** วันหยุด

holy day **wan phrá** วันพระ

homework **kaan bâan** การบ้าน

hope, to **wăng** หวัง

hospital **rohng phayaabaan** โรงพยาบาล

hot **ráwn** ร้อน

hotel **rohng raem** โรงแรม

hot-tempered **jai ráwn** ใจร้อน

hour **chûamohng** ชั่วโมง

house **bâan** บ้าน

how **yang-ngai, yàangrai** ยังไง, อย่างไร

how many **kèe** กี่

how much **thâorài** เท่าไหร่

hundred **rói** ร้อย

hungry **hĭu khâo:** หิวข้าว

hurry, to **rêep** รีบ

hurt, to **jèp** เจ็บ

husband **săamee** สามี

I

I (female speaker) **chán** ฉัน

I (male speaker) **phŏm** ผม

ice	**náam khăeng**	น้ำแข็ง
idea	**khwaam khít**	ความคิด
if	**thâa**	ถ้า
ill	**mâi sabai:**	ไม่สบาย
illegal	**phìt kòtmăi:**	ผิดกฎหมาย
immigration police	**tamrùat trùat khon khâo meuang**	ตำรวจตรวจคนเข้าเมือง
import/export business	**bawrisàt imphàwt eksáphàwt**	บริษัทอิมพอร์ตเอ็กสพอร์ต
important	**sămkhan**	สำคัญ
in	**nai, thêe**	ใน, ที่
in front of	**nâa**	หน้า
indifferent	**chŏei chŏei**	เฉยๆ
inject, to	**chèet**	ฉีด
insect	**malaeng**	แมลง
insurance	**pràkan**	ประกัน
interested in	**sŏnjai**	สนใจ
interesting	**nâa sŏnjai**	น่าสนใจ
intersection (of four roads)	**sèe yâek**	สี่แยก
invite, to	**chern**	เชิญ

island	**kàw**	เกาะ
it	**man**	มัน

J

January	**deuan mókaraa (khom)**	เดือนมกราคม
joke, to	**phôot lên**	พูดเล่น
July	**deuan karakádaa (khom)**	เดือนกรกฎาคม
June	**deuan míthunaa (yon)**	เดือนมิถุนายน
just now	**phêrng**	เพิ่ง
just one	**dio**	เดียว
just right	**phaw dee**	พอดี

K

key	**kunjae**	กุญแจ
Khon Kaen	**khăwn kàen**	ขอนแก่น
kill, to	**khâa**	ฆ่า
kilogram	**kilohkram (loh, kiloh)**	กิโล, กิโลกรัม
kilometre	**kilohmáyt**	กิโลเมตร
kind	**jai dee**	ใจดี
kitchen	**hâwng khrua**	ห้องครัว

knee	**khào**	เข่า
know, to (formal)	**róo, róojàk, sâap**	รู้, รู้จัก, ทราบ

L

language	**phaasăa**	ภาษา
large	**yài**	ใหญ่
last	**sùt tháai:**	สุดท้าย
last night	**mêua kheuhn née**	เมื่อคืนนี้
late (not on time)	**săi:, cháa**	สาย, ช้า
late at night	**tawn dèuk**	ตอนดึก
law	**kòtmăi:**	กฎหมาย
lazy	**khêe kìat**	ขี้เกียจ
leather	**năng**	หนัง
leave, to	**àwk**	ออก
leave a deposit, to	**waang ngern mátjam**	วางเงินมัดจำ
left (-hand side)	**sái:**	ซ้าย
leg	**khăa**	ขา
lend, to	**hâi yeuhm**	ให้ยืม
lie, to tell a	**koh-hòk**	โกหก
light	**fai**	ไฟ

light (in weight)	**bao**	เบา
like, to	**châwp**	ชอบ
lime	**manao:**	มะนาว
lime juice	**náam manao:**	น้ำมะนาว
limit, to	**jamkàt**	จำกัด
liquor	**lâo**	เหล้า
listen, to	**fang**	ฟัง
little a	**nítnòi, nói**	นิดหน่อย, น้อย
live, to	**yòo**	อยู่
lock, to	**lók**	ล็อค
lonely	**ngăo**	เหงา
long	**yao:**	ยาว
long time, a	**naan**	นาน
look at, to	**doo**	ดู
look for, to	**hăa**	หา
look like, to	**doo mĕauan**	ดูเหมือน
loose	**lŭam**	หลวม
lorry	**sìp láw**	สิบล้อ
lose	**pháe**	แพ้
lose, to	**tham hăi:**	ทำหาย
lost, to get	**lŏng thaang**	หลงทาง

lot, a	**yér** เยอะ
loud	**dang** ดัง
love, to	**rák** รัก
luck	**chôhk** โชค
lunch	**aahăan klaang wan** อาหารกลางวัน

M

machine	**khrêuang** เครื่อง
make (noun)	**yêehâw** ยี่ห้อ
make a mistake, to	**tham phìt** ทำผิด
make an appointment, to	**nát** นัด
male, man	**phôochai:** ผู้ชาย
manager	**phôo jàt kaan** ผู้จัดการ
mango	**mamûang** มะม่วง
manual	**khôo meuh** คู่มือ
many	**lăi:** หลาย
March	**deuan meenaa(khom)** เดือนมีนาคม
market	**tàlàat** ตลาด
married, to get, to be	**tàeng ngaan** แต่งงาน
massage	**nûat** นวด
masseur/euse	**măw nûat** หมอนวด
May	**deuan phréutsaphaa (khom)** เดือนพฤษภาคม
maybe	**àat ja** อาจจะ
mean, to	**măi: khwaam wâa** หมายความว่า
meat	**néua sàt** เนื้อสัตว์
medicine	**yaa** ยา
meet, to	**jer, phóp** เจอ, พบ
meeting	**pràchum** ประชุม
menu	**maynoo** เมนู
message	**nóht** โน้ต
message, to take a	**jòt nóht** จดโน้ต
metre	**máyt** เมตร
midday	**thîang (wan)** เที่ยง (วัน)
middle	**klaang** กลาง
midnight	**thîang kheuhn** เที่ยงคืน
milk	**nom** นม
minute	**naathee** นาที
miss, to	**khít thěung** คิดถึง
miss, to (a bus, train)	**tòk rót** ตกรถ
mistake	**khwaam phìt** ความผิด

mixed	**ruam** รวม
mobile phone	**thohrasàp meuh thěuh** โทรศัพท์มือถือ
model	**naang bàep** นางแบบ
moment ago, a	**mêua kêe (née)** เมื่อกี้นี้
Monday	**wan jan** วันจันทร์
money	**ngern** เงิน
monk	**phrá** พระ
monkey	**ling** ลิง
month	**deuan** เดือน
mood	**aarom** อารมณ์
more	**kwàa, èek** กว่า, อีก
mosquito	**yung** ยุง
mosquito repellent	**yaa kan yung** ยากันยุง
most	**thêe sùt** ที่สุด
mostly	**sùan mâak** ส่วนมาก
mother	**mâe** แม่
motorcycle	**rót mawtersai** รถมอเตอร์ไซค์
mountain	**doi, phookhăo** ดอย, ภูเขา
museum	**phíphít-thaphan** พิพิธภัณฑ์
music	**dontree** ดนตรี
must	**tâwng** ต้อง

N

name	**chêuh** ชื่อ
narrow	**khâep** แคบ
near	**klâi** ใกล้
nearly	**kèuap** เกือบ
necessary	**jampen** จำเป็น
neck	**khaw** คอ
necklace	**sôi khaw** สร้อยคอ
new	**mài** ใหม่
news	**khào:** ข่าว
newspaper	**nangsěuh phim** หนังสือพิมพ์
next	**nâa** หน้า
next to	**tìt (kàp)** ติดกับ
nickname	**chêuh lên** ชื่อเล่น
night	**tawn klaang kheuhn** ตอนกลางคืน
nine	**kâo** เก้า
nobody	**mâi mee khrai** ไม่มีใคร
noise	**sĭang** เสียง
noisy	**sĭang dang** เสียงดัง
noodles	**kwŭey tĭo** ก๋วยเตี๋ยว
north	**něua** เหนือ

not really	**mâi khôi** ไม่ค่อย
not yet	**yang mâi** ยังไม่
nothing	**mâi mee arai** ไม่มีอะไร
notify	**jâeng** แจ้ง
November	**deuan phréutsajikaa (yon)** เดือนพฤศจิกายน
now	**tawn née** ตอนนี้
number	**ber, mǎi: lâyk** เบอร์, หมายเลข
nurse	**phayaabaan** พยาบาล

O

occasion	**khráng** ครั้ง
October	**deuan tulaa (khom)** เดือนตุลาคม
office	**thêe tham ngaan** ที่ทำงาน
often	**bòi** บ่อย
old (people)	**aayú mâak, kàe** อายุมาก, แก่
old (things)	**kào** เก่า
on	**bon** บน
on time	**trong waylaa** ตรงเวลา
one	**nèung** หนึ่ง
one-way (ticket)	**thîo dio** เที่ยวเดียว
only	**tàe, thâonán, yàang dio, ayng** แต่, เท่านั้น, อย่างเดียว, เอง
open, to be	**pèrt** เปิด
opinion	**khwaam khít hěn** ความคิดเห็น
opium	**fìn** ฝิ่น
opportunity	**ohkàat** โอกาส
opposite	**trong khâam** ตรงข้าม
or	**rěuh** หรือ
orange	**sôm** ส้ม
orange (colour)	**sěe sôm** สีส้ม
orange juice	**náam sôm** น้ำส้ม
order, to	**sàng** สั่ง
ordinary	**tham-madaa** ธรรมดา
other	**èuhn** อื่น
outside	**khâang nâwk** ข้างนอก
owner	**jâo khǎwng** เจ้าของ

P

papaya	**malakaw** มะละกอ
paper	**kradàat** กระดาษ
parents	**phâw mâe** พ่อแม่

park (a car), to	**jàwt** จอด
party	**ngaan líang** งานเลี้ยง
pass, to	**phàan** ผ่าน
pass an exam	**sàwp dâi:** สอบได้
passenger	**phôo dohisǎan** ผู้โดยสาร
passport	**pháasáphawt** พาสปอร์ต
pay, to	**jài:** จ่าย
pen	**pàak-kaa** ปากกา
pepper	**phrík** พริก
person	**khon** คน
petrol	**nám-man** น้ำมัน
petrol station	**pám nám-man** ปั๊มน้ำมัน
pharmacy	**ráan khǎi: yaa** ร้านขายยา
phone, to	**thoh** โทร
phone, to (incoming)	**thoh maa hǎa** โทรมาหา
phone, to (outgoing)	**thoh pai hǎa** โทรไปหา
photocopy, to	**thài: àykasǎan** ถ่ายเอกสาร
photograph	**rôop thài:** รูปถ่าย
photograph, to take a	**thài: rôop** ถ่ายรูป
photographer's (shop)	**ráan thài: rôop** ร้านถ่ายรูป
picture	**rôop** รูป
piece	**chín** ชิ้น
pineapple	**sàp-parót** สับปะรด
pink	**sěe chomphoo** สีชมพู
plane	**khrêuang bin** เครื่องบิน
plant, to	**plòok** ปลูก
plate	**jaan** จาน
play, to	**lên** เล่น
police	**tamrùat** ตำรวจ
police station	**sathǎanee tamrùat** สถานีตำรวจ
polite	**sùphâap rîapról** สุภาพเรียบร้อย
poor	**jon** จน
pork	**mǒo** หมู
post office	**praisànee** ไปรษณีย์
prawn	**kûng** กุ้ง
prefer, to	**châwp mâak kwàa** ชอบมากกว่า
present	**khǎwng khwǎn** ของขวัญ
pretty	**sǔey** สวย
price	**raakhaa** ราคา
print, to	**phim** พิมพ์
probably	**khong, àat (ja)** คงจะ, อาจจะ
problem	**panhǎa** ปัญหา

province	**jangwàt** จังหวัด
purple	**sĕe mûang** สีม่วง
put away, to	**wái** ไว้
put down, to	**waang** วาง
put on, to, put in, to	**sài** ใส่

Q

quiet	**ngîap** เงียบ
quit	**lêrk** เลิก

R

rain	**fŏn** ฝน
read, to (a book)	**àan nangsĕuh** อ่านหนังสือ
receipt	**bai sèt** ใบเสร็จ
receive, to	**ráp** รับ
recover, to	**hăi:** หาย
red	**sĕe daeng** สีแดง
reduce, to	**lót** ลด
religion	**sàatsanăa** ศาสนา
remember, to	**jam** จำ
rent	**khâa châo** ค่าเช่า
repair, to	**sâwm** ซ่อม
request, to	**khăw** ขอ
reserve	**jawng** จอง
rest, to	**phákphàwn** พักผ่อน
restaurant	**ráan aahăan** ร้านอาหาร
return	**klàp** กลับ
return a call	**thoh klàp** โทรกลับ
rice	**khâo:** ข้าว
rice field	**naa** นา
rich	**ruey** รวย
ride, to	**khèe** ขี่
right (-hand side)	**khwăa** ขวา
ring	**wăen** แหวน
ripe	**sùk** สุก
river	**mâe náam** แม่น้ำ
room	**hâwng** ห้อง
round	**klom** กลม
rubbish	**khayà** ขยะ
run, to	**wîng** วิ่ง

S

safe	**plàwtphai** ปลอดภัย
salary	**ngern deuan** เงินเดือน

sales person	**phánák ngaan khăi:** พนักงานขาย
same	**mĕuan(kan)** เหมือน(กัน)
Saturday	**wan săo** วันเสาร์
say, to	**bàwk** บอก
school	**rohng rian** โรงเรียน
sea	**thalay** ทะเล
seafood	**aahăan thalay** อาหารทะเล
seaside	**chai: thalay** ชายทะเล
season	**nâa** หน้า
seat (of a car)	**bàw** เบาะ
secretary	**laykhăanúkaan** เลขานุการ
see, to	**hĕn** เห็น
sell, to	**khăi:** ขาย
send, to	**sòng** ส่ง
separate, to	**yâek** แยก
September	**deuan kanyaa(yon)** เดือนกันยายน
seven	**jèt** เจ็ด
sew, to	**yép** เย็บ
she	**kháo** เขา
shirt	**sêua** เสื้อ
shoe	**rawng tháo** รองเท้า
shoe shop	**ráan khăi: rawng tháo** ร้านขายรองเท้า
shop	**ráan** ร้าน
shopping	**séuh khăwng** ซื้อของ
short (of people)	**tîa** เตี้ย
short (of things)	**sân** สั้น
shorts	**kaang kayng khăa sân** กางเกงขาสั้น
should	**tâwng** ต้อง
shoulder	**lài** ไหล่
shower, to	**àap náam** อาบน้ำ
side street	**soi** ซอย
sign, to	**sen** เซ็น
sign, notice	**pâi:** ป้าย
silk	**phâa măi** ผ้าไหม
silver	**ngern** เงิน
similar	**khlái (khlái)** คล้าย
since	**tâng tàe** ตั้งแต่
sincere	**jing jai** จริงใจ
sing, to	**ráwng phlayng** ร้องเพลง
singer	**nák ráwng** นักร้อง
sit, to	**nâng** นั่ง

sitting room	**hâwng ráp khàek**	ห้องรับแขก
six	**hòk**	หก
size	**khànàat**	ขนาด
skilled worker	**châang**	ช่าง
skin	**phĭu**	ผิว
skirt	**kraprohng**	กระโปรง
sky	**fáa**	ฟ้า
sleep, to	**nawn làp**	นอนหลับ
sleepy	**ngûang (nawn)**	ง่วงนอน
sleeve	**khăen**	แขน
slow(ly)	**cháa**	ช้า
small	**lék**	เล็ก
smell bad, to	**mĕn**	เหม็น
smell good, to	**hăwm**	หอม
smoke, to	**sòop**	สูบ
snake	**ngoo**	งู
snow	**himá**	หิมะ
sock	**thŭng tháo**	ถุงเท้า
sofa	**sohfaa**	โซฟา
soldier	**tháhăan**	ทหาร
something	**sìng**	สิ่ง
sometimes	**baang khráng**	บางครั้ง
son	**lôok chai:**	ลูกชาย
song	**phlayng**	เพลง
soon	**dĭo**	เดี๋ยว
sorry	**sĭa jai**	เสียใจ
sort	**bàep**	แบบ
sour	**prĭo**	เปรี้ยว
south	**tâi**	ใต้
speak	**phôot**	พูด
special	**phísàyt**	พิเศษ
spend	**jài:**	จ่าย
spicy	**phèt**	เผ็ด
spoon	**cháwn**	ช้อน
sport	**keelaa**	กีฬา
spouse	**faen**	แฟน
square	**sèe lìam**	สี่เหลี่ยม
stadium	**sanăam keelaa**	สนามกีฬา
staff	**phánák ngaan**	พนักงาน
station	**sathăanee**	สถานี
stay	**yòo, phák**	อยู่, พัก
steal, to	**khàmohi**	ขโมย

steamed	**nêung**	นึ่ง
still	**yang**	ยัง
stingy	**khêe nĭo**	ขี้เหนียว
stomach	**tháwng, kràpháw**	ท้อง, กระเพาะ
stop, to	**yùt**	หยุด
storm	**phaayú**	พายุ
stove	**tao**	เตา
straight ahead	**trong pai**	ตรงไป
strange	**plàek**	แปลก
street	**thanŏn**	ถนน
strong	**khăeng raeng**	แข็งแรง
stuck, to get	**tìt**	ติด
student (at college, university)	**nák sèuksăa**	นักศึกษา
student (at school)	**nák rian**	นักเรียน
study, to	**rian (nangsĕuh)**	เรียน(หนังสือ)
subject	**wíchaa**	วิชา
sugar	**nám taan**	น้ำตาล
suit	**chút săakon**	ชุดสากล
sunburn	**phĭu mâi**	ผิวไหม้
Sunday	**wan aathít**	วันอาทิตย์
sunglasses	**wâen kan dàet**	แว่นกันแดด
sunshine	**dàet**	แดด
suntan lotion	**khreem kan dàet**	ครีมกันแดด
sure	**nâe (jai)**	แน่ใจ
suspect, to	**sŏngsăi**	สงสัย
sweet	**wăan**	หวาน
swim, to	**wâi: náam**	ว่ายน้ำ
swimming pool	**sà wâi: náam**	สระว่ายน้ำ
swimsuit	**chút wâi: náam**	ชุดว่ายน้ำ

T

T-junction	**săam yâek**	สามแยก
T-shirt	**sêua yêuht**	เสื้อยืด
table	**tó**	โต๊ะ
take, to	**ráp, ao pai**	รับ, เอาไป
take off clothes, to	**thàwt**	ถอด
take someone, to	**phaa, sòng**	พา, ส่ง
take time, to	**chái waylaa**	ใช้เวลา
talk, to	**khui**	คุย
tall	**sŏong**	สูง
taste, to	**chim**	ชิม

tattoo	**sàk**	สัก
taxi	**rót tháeksêe**	รถแท็กซี่
tea	**chaa**	ชา
teach, to	**sǎwn**	สอน
teacher (school)	**khroo**	ครู
teacher (university)	**aajaan**	อาจารย์
telephone	**thohrasàp**	โทรศัพท์
telephone, to	**thoh**	โทร
telephone line	**sǎi:**	สาย
telephone number	**ber thohrasàp**	เบอร์โทรศัพท์
tell, to	**bàwk**	บอก
temple	**wát**	วัด
ten	**sìp**	สิบ
ten thousand	**mèuhn**	หมื่น
tenant	**phôo châo**	ผู้เช่า
terrible	**yâe**	แย่
Thai	**thai**	ไทย
Thailand	**meuang thai**	เมืองไทย
thank you	**khàwpkhun**	ขอบคุณ
that (adjective)	**nán**	นั้น
that (pronoun)	**nân**	นั่น
that over there (adjective)	**nóhn**	โน้น
that over there (pronoun)	**nôhn**	โน่น
there is/are	**mee**	มี
they	**kháo**	เขา
thick	**nǎa**	หนา
thief	**khàmohi**	ขโมย
thin (people)	**phǎwm**	ผอม
thin (things)	**baang**	บาง
thing	**yàang, khǎwng**	อย่าง, ของ
think, to	**khít**	คิด
thirsty	**hǐu náam**	หิวน้ำ
this (adjective), these	**née**	นี้
this (pronoun), these	**nêe**	นี่
this morning	**mêua cháo**	เมื่อเช้า
thousand	**phan**	พัน
three	**sǎam**	สาม
throat	**khaw**	คอ
throw away, to	**thíng**	ทิ้ง
Thursday	**wan pharéuhàt**	วันพฤหัสฯ

ticket	**tǔa**	ตั๋ว
tidy	**rîaprói**	เรียบร้อย
tight	**kháp**	คับ
time	**waylaa**	เวลา
tired	**nèuey**	เหนื่อย
today	**wan née**	วันนี้
together	**dûey kan**	ด้วยกัน
together with	**phráwm**	พร้อม
toilet	**hâwng náam**	ห้องน้ำ
tomorrow	**phrûng née**	พรุ่งนี้
too (excessive)	**kern pai**	เกินไป
tooth	**fan**	ฟัน
torn	**khàat**	ขาด
touch, to	**jàp**	จับ
tourist	**nák thâwng thîo**	นักท่องเที่ยว
town	**meuang**	เมือง
toy	**khǎwng lên**	ของเล่น
traffic light	**fai daeng**	ไฟแดง
train	**rót fai**	รถไฟ
translate, to	**plae**	แปล
travel, to	**dern thaang**	เดินทาง
travellers' cheque	**chék dern thaang**	เช็คเดินทาง
tree	**tônmái**	ต้นไม้
triangle, triangular	**sǎam lìam**	สามเหลี่ยม
trousers	**kaang kayng**	กางเกง
true	**jing**	จริง
try, to (i.e. test out)	**lawng**	ลอง
Tuesday	**wan angkhaan**	วันอังคาร
turn	**lío**	เลี้ยว
two	**sǎwng**	สอง

U

unbelievable	**mâi nâa chêua**	ไม่น่าเชื่อ
under	**tâi**	ใต้
understand, to	**khâo jai**	เข้าใจ
unemployed	**wâang ngaan**	ว่างงาน
unhappy	**mâi sabai: jai**	ไม่สบายใจ
university	**máhǎawít-tháyaalai**	มหาวิทยาลัย
until	**jon**	จน
upstairs	**chán bon, khâang bon**	ชั้นบน ข้างบน
urgent	**dùan**	ด่วน
use, to	**chái**	ใช้

used to, to get	**chin**	ชิน
useful	**mee pràyòht**	มีประโยชน์
usually	**pòk-katì**	ปกติ

V

vegetable(s)	**phàk**	ผัก
vegetarian food	**aahăan jay**	อาหารเจ
very	**mâak**	มาก
view	**wíu**	วิว
village	**mòo bâan**	หมู่บ้าน
visa	**weesâa**	วีซ่า
visit	**hăa**	หา

W

wait, to	**raw**	รอ
waiter (waitress)	**phánák ngaan sèrp**	พนักงานเสิร์ฟ
wake up	**tèuhn**	ตื่น
walk, to	**dern**	เดิน
wallet	**krapăo sataang**	กระเป๋าสตางค์
want, to	**yàak, tâwngkaan** (formal)	อยาก, ต้องการ
wash, to	**láang, sák** (clothes), **sà** (hair)	ล้าง, ซัก, สระ
washing machine	**khrêuang sák phâa**	เครื่องซักผ้า
watch, to	**doo**	ดู
watch, clock	**naalíkaa**	นาฬิกา
water	**náam**	น้ำ
water buffalo	**khwai:**	ควาย
waterfall	**námtòk**	น้ำตก
watermelon	**taeng moh**	แตงโม
way	**thaang**	ทาง
we	**ráo**	เรา
wear, to	**sài**	ใส่
weather	**aakàat**	อากาศ
wedding	**ngaan tàeng ngaan**	งานแต่งงาน
Wednesday	**wan phút**	วันพุธ
week	**aathít**	อาทิตย์
weight	**námnàk**	น้ำหนัก
well	**sabai: (dee)**	สบาย(ดี)
well-mannered	**rîapróì**	เรียบร้อย
Western, Westerner	**fàràng**	ฝรั่ง
wet	**pìak**	เปียก
what	**arai**	อะไร
what kind?	**bàep năi**	แบบไหน

what time is it?	**kèe mohng**	กี่โมง
what's it like?	**pen yang-ngai bâang**	เป็นยังไงบ้าง
what's the matter?	**pen arai?**	เป็นอะไร
when	**mêuarài, mêua**	เมื่อไหร่, เมื่อ
where	**(thêe) năi, trong năi**	(ที่)ไหน, ตรงไหน
which	**năi**	ไหน
which (relative pronoun)	**thêe**	ที่
white	**sĕe khăo:**	สีขาว
who	**khrai**	ใคร
who (relative pronoun)	**thêe**	ที่
why	**tham-mai**	ทำไม
wide	**kwâang**	กว้าง
wife	**phanráyaa**	ภรรยา
will	**ja**	จะ
win	**cháná**	ชนะ
wind	**lom**	ลม
with	**kàp**	กับ
woman	**phôoyĭng**	ผู้หญิง
wood	**mái**	ไม้
word	**kham**	คำ
work	**ngaan**	งาน
work, to	**tham ngaan**	ทำงาน
world	**lôhk**	โลก
worry, to	**pen hùang**	เป็นห่วง
wrist	**khâw meuh**	ข้อมือ
write, to	**khĭan**	เขียน
wrong	**phìt**	ผิด

Y

year	**pee**	ปี
yellow	**sĕe lĕuang**	สีเหลือง
yesterday	**mêua waan née**	เมื่อวานนี้
you	**khun**	คุณ
young	**aayú nói**	อายุน้อย
young woman	**săo:**	สาว
younger brother	**náwng chai:**	น้องชาย
younger person	**náwng**	น้อง
younger sister	**náwng săo:**	น้องสาว

Z

zero	**sŏon**	ศูนย์
zoo	**sŭan sàt**	สวนสัตว์

Index